

# THE GREAT CHRONICLE OF BUDDHAS

THE STATE BUDDHA SĀSANA COUNCIL'S VERSION  
VOLUME THREE

BY  
THE MOST VENERABLE MINGUN SAYADAW  
BHADDANTA VICITTASĀRĀBHIVAMSA  
TIPITAKADHARA DHAMMABHAṄḌĀGĀRIKA  
AGGA MAHĀPAṄḌITA  
ABHIDHAJA MAHĀRAṬṬHAGURU  
ABHIDHAJA AGGAMAHA SADDHAMMAJOTIKA

TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH BY  
U KO LAY



TI-NI PUBLISHING CENTER  
B.E. 2540, M.E.1358, C.E.1996.

# THE GREAT CHRONICLE OF BUDDHAS

THE STATE BUDDHA SĀSANA COUNCIL'S VERSION  
VOLUME THREE

BY

THE MOST VENERABLE MINGUN SAYADAW  
BHADDANTA VICITTASĀRĀBHIVAMSA  
TIPITAKADHARA DHAMMABHAṄḌĀGĀRIKA  
AGGA MAHĀPANDITA  
ABHIDHAJA MAHĀRAṬṬHAGURU  
ABHIDHAJA AGGAMAHA SADDHAMMAJOTIKA

TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH  
BY  
U KO LAY



TI-NI PUBLISHING CENTER  
B.E. 2540, M.E.1358, C.E.1996.

# THE GREAT CHRONICLE OF BUDDHAS

THE STATE BUDDHA SĀSANA COUNCIL'S VERSION

VOLUME THREE

BY

THE MOST VENERABLE MINGUN SAYADAW

**BHADDANTA VICITTASĀRĀBHIVAMSA**

TIPIṬAKADHARA DHAMMABHAṄḌĀGĀRIKA

AGGA MAHĀPAṆḌITA

ABHIDHAJA MAHĀRAṬṬHAGURU

ABHIDHAJA AGGAMAHA SADDHAMMAJOTIKA

TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH

BY

U KO LAY



TI-NI PUBLISHING CENTER

B.E. 2540, M.E.1358, C.E.1996.

**First Edition July, 1996**

**2000 Copies**

**Dhammadāna**

**Copyright © Ti-Ni**

Printed at the Ti-Ni Press  
by U Maung Maung Gyi  
(Publisher's Regd. 3692, Printer's Regd. 03165)  
Secretary of the Ti-Ni Main Ministrative Body,  
12, Zagawar Road, Dagon Township,  
Yangon, Myanmar.

**Binding by Yin Myo (Hla Kyi)**

THE GREAT CHRONICAL OF BUDDHAS  
CONTENTS

PAGES

Preface

CHAPTERS

CHAPTER SIXTEEN	THE ARRIVAL OF TWO WANDERING SCETICS UPATISSA AND KOLITA (FUTURE CHIEF DISCIPLES) AT THE FEET OF THE FULLY-SELF-ENLIGHTENED.	1-4
	Wanderer Kolita's attainment of <i>Sotapanna</i>	5
	Upatissa and Kolita went to see the great teacher and his disciples	6
	All the wandering ascetics becoming <i>Ehi-bhikkhus</i> and <i>Arahats</i>	7
	Attainment of Arahathship by 250 followers	8
	Attainment of Arahathship by Moggallana	8
	Attainment of Arahathship by Sariputta	8
	Differences in the speed of practice and attainments between the two Chief Disciples	11
	The single occasion of the Disciples' meeting	12
	Three occasions of the Buddha's teaching	13
	The single occasion of <i>Savaka Sannipata</i>	14
	The two forms of <i>Patimokkha</i>	14
	King Suddhodana sending his ministers to invite the Buddha to the Royal City.	18
	Sending Kaludayi a birth-mate (of the Tathagata)	19
	Kaludayi requesting the Buddha by reciting sixty verses to visit the royal city of Kapilavatthu	20

THE GREAT CHRONICAL OF BUDDHA

CONTENTS

CHAPTERS

PAGES

CHAPTER		PAGES
SEVENTEEN	The Tathagata making the journey to Kapilavatthu accompanied by twenty thousand Arahats	47-63
	Throughout the journey, the Tathagata satisfied himself with the food sent from the royal palace of King Suddhodana	47
	The Tathagata's display of the Twin Miracle to subdue the royal relatives' pride of high birth	49
	Obeisance made by the royal father King Suddhodana for the third time	51
	Creation of the Jewelled Walk and teaching the Dhamma	51
	The arrival of the Venerable Sariputta and five hundred Arahats.	53
	The Tathagata's exposition of his own attributes.	54
	Venerable Sariputta's request for the expounding of <i>Buddhavamsa</i>	59
	APPENDIX TO CHAPTER SEVENTEEN	64-72
	Explanatory note concerning Gotama Buddhavamsa	64
	The first great occasion of Dhamma teaching	64
	The second great occasion of Dhamma teaching	65
	The third great occasion of Dhamma teaching	65
	The first occasion of the Disciples' meeting ( <i>Savaka sannipata</i> )	66

THE GREAT CHRONICAL OF BUDDHA

CONTENTS

CHAPTERS		PAGES
	Services rendered by the Buddha	66
	Place of birth, name of parents, Chief Disciples etc.	68
	Two stanzas of <i>Samvega</i>	71
CHAPTER EIGHTEEN	SHOWERS OF LOTUS LEAF RAIN AT THE ASSEMBLY OF THE ROYAL FAMILIES	73-92
	Buddha accompanied by twenty thousand Arahats entering Kapilavasthu for alms-round	74
	Ten 'Narasiha Stanzas (in praise of the beautiful body of the Buddha)	76
	The royal father King Suddhodana attaining the first Path	79
	The royal father became an <i>Anagami</i> and step- mother Mahapajapati Gotami attained <i>Sotapanna</i>	82
	Recounting the <i>Candakinnari Jataka</i>	81
	Ordination of Buddha's younger brother Prince Nanda	83
	Initiation of son Rahula to novicehood	85
	A rule of training prescribed by the Tathagata at the request of King Suddhodana	87
	King Suddhodana attained the <i>Anagami phala</i> after hearing the discourse on <i>Mahadhammapala Jataka</i>	89
	Step-mother Maha Pajapati Gotami offered a set of robes wove by herself to the Buddha	90

THE GREAT CHRONICAL OF BUDDHA

CONTENTS

CHAPTERS

PAGES

CHAPTER NINETEEN	ONE THOUSAND SAKYAN PRINCES RECEIVED ORDINATION FROM THE TATHAGATA	95-102
	Ordination of the six Sakyan Princes and the barber Upali	96
	Prince Anuruddha who did not know the term 'not have'	97
	Anuruddha and other princes are ignorant of the source of food	99
	Prince Anuruddha became tired of the world	100
	Six Sakyan Princes together with Upali, the barber, renounced the world and became bhikkhus	103
	The Tathagata left for the Veluvana monastery, Rajagaha, to observe the second rains-retreat	104
	List of rains-retreat observed by the Buddha in serial order	105
CHAPTER TWENTY	EACH ONE OF SIX PRINCES ACHIEVED THE HIGHEST SUPRAMUNDANE ATTAINMENTS	109-112
	The Venerable Ananda	111
	The Venerable Bhagu and Kimila	111
	The Venerable Devadatta	111
	Preaching the <i>Ambalatthika Rahulovada Sutta</i>	111
	Story of the wealthy man Anathapindika	119



THE GREAT CHRONICAL OF BUDDHA

CONTENTS

CHAPTERS

PAGES

The wealthy man of Rajagaha, Merchants' Association and King Bimbisara offered to render their services	127
Construction of temporary monasteries at every yojana between Rajagaha and Savatthi	128
The selection and purchase of the site for Jetavana monastery by Anathapindika	129
Prince Jeta donated an archway for the monastery	130
Construction of Jetavana monastery by Anathapindika	130
The site of the monastery	131
<i>Samvega</i> (sense of religious urgency)	132
Buddha's journey to savatthi	132
Ten kinds of persons who should not be worshipped	136
Ruling relating to occupation of pavilions, temporary sheds by monks according to seniority	138
Ruling concerning decorated furnishings at the alms-house in the village	139
Tathagata being conducted by Anathapindika to the Jetavana monastery holding a grand reception ceremony	139
Princess Sumana	140
The pomp and grandeur of Anathpindika's own welcoming arrangements	141

THE GREAT CHRONICAL OF BUDDHA

CONTENTS

CHAPTERS		PAGES
	The pomp and grandeur of Anathpindika's own welcoming arrangements	141
	Donation of the Jetavana Monastery to the Sangha from the four directions	142
	Five verses of appreciation for donation of the Monastery	143
	Nine-month long celebrations for the successful dedication of the Monastery	145
	Helping his brother, bhikkhu Nanda, attain Arahatship by diverting his thoughts on his betrothed Janapada Kalyani to celestial maids	146
	Bhikkhu Nanda's supplication to the Tathagata	150
	Discourses relating the story of Kappata	153
CHAPTER TWENTY-ONE	STORY OF SUMANA, FLOWER-SELLER OF RAJAGAHA	159-163
	Buddha's utterance of prophecy	164
	Removing the wrong views of one thousand hermits headed by Aggidatta, former court Brahmin of King Kosala	166
	The story of the naked ascetic Jambuka	173
	Jambuka's demeritorious deeds of the past	176
	Jambuka's suffering in the present life	176
	His parents sent Jambuka to an <i>Ajivaka's vihara</i>	176

## CONTENTS

### CHAPTERS

### PAGES

Jambuka expelled from Ajivaka's vihara 177

Jambuka suffering for fifty five years 179

Emancipation of the naked ascetic Jambuka 179

### CHAPTER TWENTY- TWO

FOUNDING OF VESALI 187-190

Buddha gave protection and peace to the city  
by teaching *Ratana Sutta*, 191

King Bimbisara's preparation for a ceremonial  
send off 193

*Pokkharavasa* rain fell as soon as the Buddha  
stepped a shore 195

Preventive measures taken by the Venerable  
Ananda by the recitation of *Paritta* 196

The Buddha expounded the *Ratana Sutta* at  
the Legislative Assembly Hall of the city 197

The Tathagata continued to expound the  
*Ratana Sutta* for seven days 198

The fundamental principle of administering  
*Paritta* recitation 199

(a) Failure and Success of one who administers  
*Paritta* 201

(b) Four accomplishments of a listener 201

Failure and Success of one who listens to *Paritta*  
recitation 202

THE GREAT CHRONICAL OF BUDDHA

CONTENTS

CHAPTERS

PAGES

<i>Parittas</i> that possess unique power	203
Discourse on the life of the Bodhisatta Brahmin Sankha	208
The story of richman's son Uggasena, the acrobat	214
Uggasena, son of a richman	215
Richman's son Uggasena followed the actress	216
Uggasena became an acrobatic artiste	217
Richman's son Uggasena appeared on the mental screen of the Buddha	217
Exhortation by the Buddha	219
Bhikkhus asked Uggasena whether he was afraid or not	220
An account of Uggasena's past deeds	221
Young actress also attained Arahatsip	223
War between the Sakyans of Kapilavatthu and the Sakyans of Koliya over dispute about sharing of Rohimi river waters	223
Royalties of the two countries abandoned their arms	226
Discourse on end of strife	226
Discourse on <i>Phandana Jataka</i>	227
Discourse on <i>Duddubha Jataka</i>	232
Discourse on <i>Latukika Jataka</i>	233
Discourse on <i>Rukkha Dhamma Jayaka</i>	237

## CONTENTS

### CHAPTERS

### PAGES

Discourse on <i>Vattaka Jataka</i> ( <i>Sammodamana Jataka</i> )	240
Discourse on <i>Attadanda Sutta</i>	243
Five hundred bhikkhus not feeling happy in the Sasana	244
Tathagata taught <i>Kunala Jataka</i>	244
Five hundred bhikkhus became Sotapanas	247
Five hundred bhikkhus attained Arahatship	248
The occasion of the great Assembly ( <i>Mahasamaya</i> ) ( <i>Mahasamaya</i> )	
Two qualities of Arahats	249
Expounding of <i>Maha Samaya Suttas</i>	250
The gathering of Devas and Brahmas	250
Devas and Brahmas as well as the Tathagata forced ideas of their own	256
Creation of an image with the true likeness of the Buddha	258
Varying views held by Devas and Brahmas	259
Large numbers of Devas and Brahmas achieved emancipation	261
Venerable Sayadaw U Buddh's note of clarification	261
<i>Mahasamaya Sutta</i> is held in high esteem by Devas and Brahmas	262

THE GREAT CHRONICAL OF BUDDHA

CONTENTS

CHAPTERS		PAGES
<b>CHAPTER TWENTY- THREE</b>	<b>THE TATHAGATA RESIDED AT VESALI FOR THE FIFTH LENT</b>	267
	Two forests with the name of Mahavana	267
	Royal father King Suddhodana attained Arahatship	267
	Permission given for ordination of women at the request of Maha Pajapati Gotami	268
	Victory over the wandering Ascetic Saccaka	275
	The Venerable Sariputta's feat of Intellectual power	277
	The story of wandering ascetic Saccaka	279
	Licchavi Prince Dummukha's statement	294
	Offering of alms-meal to the Buddha by wanderer Saccaka	298
	Expounding of Maha Saccaka Sutta	301
	King Tissa listened to the discourses	303
	Infinite attributes of the Buddha	304
<b>CHAPTER TWENTY- FOUR</b>	<b>BUDDHA TOOK RESIDENCE AT MT. MAKULA DURING THE SIXTH LENT</b>	307
	Two kinds of journey	307
	Three circumferential dimensions of the Buddha's journeys	308
	A sandal-wood bowl of a richman of Rajagaha	319

CONTENTS

CHAPTERS

PAGES

Six sectarian teachers	312
Venerables Maha Moggallana and Pindola	316
Venerable Pindola Bharadvaja obtained the sandal-wood bowl by means of supernormal psychic powers	317
People came rallying round (the Venerable Pindola)	317
The Buddha prescribed a ruling prohibiting demonstration of miracles	318
The impudent and arrogant boasts of the heretic sects	318
Buddha's declaration to perform miracles	319
The sectarians' schemes and pretences	320
The Buddha left Rajagaha for Savatthi	321
An account of Kandamba white mango tree	322
The pavillion of the sectarians blown down and destroyed by wind gods	324
The sectarian teacher Purana Kassapa put a noose round his neck and drowned himself	324
Addresses made by the Buddha's disciples at the feat of miracles	325
An address by Gharani, a female lay devotee	326
Cula Anathapindika's address	327
A seven year old samaneri Cira's address	327
A seven year old Arahat Samanera Cunda's address,	328
The Venerable Maha Moggallana's statement	
Creation of a walk	330

THE GREAT CHRONICAL OF BUDDHA

CONTENTS

CHAPTERS		PAGES
	<i>Lokaviverana patihariya</i>	333
	Miraculous display of iridescence in six colours	335
	The Tathagaa delivered discourses while walking on the Walk	336
	Creation of Buddha's own doubles	337
	Twenty crores of men, devas and Brahma gained emancipation	337
	Buddha's ascension to Tavatimsa	338
	Sakka's erroneous ideas	338
	Devas and Brahmas from ten thousand world systems gathered round the Tathagata	341
	Biographies of Ankura Deva and Indake Deva	341
<b>CHAPTER TWENTY-FIVE</b>	<b>KEEPING THE SEVENTH VASSA AND PREACHING THE ABHIDHAMMA AT TAVATIMSA</b>	<b>351</b>
	Keeping the body well-maintained while teaching the Abhidhamma	352
	The Venerable Sariputta preached the Abhidhamma to five hundred bhikkhus who had been bats in a previous existence	353
	People shifted from Savatthi to the town of Sankassa	354
	Descent at the gate of Sankassa by triple stairways	355
	Preaching of Sariputta Sutta	357



## CONTENTS

CHAPTERS	PAGES
The four <i>Avijahitathana</i>	357
Devas and men are filled with adoration for the Fully Self-Enlightened Buddhas	359
The Tathagata revealed the attributes of the Venerable Sariputta	360
Expounding of the <i>Parosahassa Jataka</i>	360
Expounding of the Sariputta Sutta	362
<i>Sariputta Sutta</i> (Abridged form)	363
Four causes of lamentation	366
Buddha was calumniated by female wandering ascetic named Cincamanavika	369
Cincamana's wily tactics	370
Foul accusations in front of four kinds of audience	371
Sakka descended to solve the problem	372
Cincamana swallowed up by a fissure appearing in the earth	372
Propounding of <i>Maha Paduma Jataka</i>	373
<i>Maha Paduma Jataka</i> of Dvadassa Nipata	
The king, out of anger, ordered the execution of Prince Maha Paduma.	375
Power of Bodhisatta's <i>metta</i>	379
The king returned to the country and punished the queen	383
The original cause of wicked Cincamana's accusation	384

THE GREAT CHRONICAL OF BUDDHA

CONTENTS

CHAPTERS		PAGES
	An account Female wandering ascetic Sundari	385
	The Citizens began to see the truth	391
	The murder case of the heretics brought to light	391
	Buddha's utterance of joy	392
	Past misdeed as the cause of accusation by Sundari	393
CHAPTER TWENTY- SIX	EIGHTH VASSA KEPT AT THE TOWN OF SUSUMARAGIRA	
	Wealthy man Naki lapitu & wife attained <i>Sotapatti</i>	395
	The Story of Prince Bodhi	396
	Prince Bodhi caused the construction of a palace known as Kokanda	398
	Prince Bodhi invited the Buddha and Sangha to the inauguration of the Turretted Palace	400
	Prince Bodhi took Refuge in the three Gems	403
	Five Elements of effort ( <i>Padhaniyanga</i> ) required of those who practise meditation	404
	Prince Bodhi attained <i>Sotapatti</i>	409
	Mara entered the belly of the Venerable Moggallana	412
	Maha Moggallana's unwholesome life of the past	414
	Mara Dusi's heinous acts	416
	An Account of the lay devotee Brahmin Pancagga	425

## CONTENTS

CHAPTERS		PAGES
	Buddha's three visits to Sri Lanka	428
	Buddha gave a handful of hair to Maha Sumana deva at his request	430
	Buddha's visit to Nagadipa Island	430
	A Request by Dragon King, Maniakkhika	432
	Buddha's Third Visit to Sihala Island	433
<b>CHAPTER TWENTY- SEVEN</b>	<b>AN ACCOUNT OF RICHMAN GHOSAKA OF KOSAMBI COUNTRY</b>	<b>435</b>
	Brutal acts of the richman of Kosambi	439
	One's own malice brings about one's own ruin	441
	Buddha kept the ninth vassa in Kosambi	446
	The Buddha helped brahmin Magandhi and wife attain emancipation	450
	Young woman Magandhi harboured resentment	453
	Brahmin Magandhi and wife attained Arahatsip after becoming <i>Anagamis</i>	453
	Buddha accepted the offering of three monasteries	454
	Magandhi's evil acts	455
	Extraordinary volitional efforts of the three richmen of Kosambi	455
	Eruption of a great dispute amongst the Sangha	456
	Buddha exhorted the partisan bhikkhus of the rival groups	458

THE GREAT CHRONICAL OF BUDDHA

CONTENTS

CHAPTERS

PAGES

Expounding on two <i>nana samvasa</i> and two <i>samana samvasa</i>	462
Conduct of Bhikkhus in dispute	464
Discourse on the story of Dighavu	464
King Kosala's doctrine of peace	468
Prince Dighavu's clever arrangement	469
Prince Dighavu was appointed as an inmate of the palace	470
Prince Dighavu regains his father's kingdom	474
Buddha's exhortation	475
Ten <i>Stanzas</i> of Exhortation	476

\*\*\*\*\*

## PREFACE

Veneration to the Exalted One, the Homage-Worthy, the Perfectly  
Self-enlightened

This book forms the English rendering of Volume three of the Great Chronicle of Buddhas, the State Buddha Council's version, by the Most Venerable Mingun Sayadaw, Bhaddanta Vicittasarabhivamsa, Tipitakadhara Dhammabhandagarika, Agga Mahapandita, Abhidhaja Maharathaguru, Abhidhaja Saddhammajotika.

The Author started dealing with the subject of the Buddha Ratana, the Jewel of the Buddha, in volume Two of his work; this is continued in this volume and in the fourth and the first half of the fifth volume.

This book consists of twelve chapters, from chapter sixteen to chapter twenty-seven. Chapter sixteen opens with an account of the arrival of two wandering ascetics, Upatissa and Kolita, future Chief Disciples, at the feet of the Fully Self-Enlightened One. It describes the attainment of Arahatsip by the Venerables Moggallana and Sariputta, the differences in the speed of practice and attainments between the two Chief Disciples, the single occasion of *Savaka Sannipata* and the two forms of *Patimokkha*. It concludes with accounts of King Suddhodana sending his ministers to invite the Buddha to the Royal City of Kapilavatthu; of Minister Kaludayi, one of the Buddha's birthmates, delivering the royal father's message by reciting sixty verses.

Chapter seventeen gives an account of the Tathagata's journey to Kapillavatthu accompanied by twenty thousand Arahats. It then deals with the Tathagata's display of the Twin Miracle to subdue the royal relatives' pride of high birth and how all the members of the royal family paid homage to the Tathagata when the royal father King Suddhodana himself could not but pay homage to the Tathagata after watching the strange spectacle of the Twin Miracle. It goes on to

describe the creation of a Jeweled Walk in the sky from which the Tathagata delivered discourses to his royal relatives. It was then that the Chief Disciple the Venerable Sariputta accompanied by five hundred Arahats arrived from Rajagaha; the Tathagata was at that time expounding his own attributes while walking to and from on the Jeweled Walk. While paying his respects to the Tathagata, the Venerable Sariputta made a request for an exposition of the Buddhavamsa.

Chapter eighteen recounts what happened after the Tathagata descended from the Jeweled Walk up in the sky. As all the members of the royal family assembled before the Tathagata, showers of lotus-leaf rain, *pokkharavasa* rain fell heavily. But the next morning, because the members of the royal family failed to invite the Tathagata to the morning meal, the Tathagata accompanied by twenty thousand Arahats entered Kapilavatthu for alms-round.

King Suddhodana was shocked and agitated when he heard from his daughter-in-law, Queen Yasodaya, that the Tathagata was going round the royal city for alms-food in the company of twenty thousand Arahats. He at once left the palace and went after his Exalted son whom he beseeched to allow him offer meals for the Sangha from that day onwards. The Tathagata explained to the king that the practice of receiving alms from door to door had always been the means of livelihood of all Buddhas.

Chapter eighteen goes on to describe how the Tathagata daily visited the palace for meals and how the royal father became *Sotapanna* and then an *Anagami* at the conclusion of discourse given by the Tathagata after each meal at the palace. It also described how the Tathagata went to see Queen Yasodaya in her chamber accompanied by his father and the two Chief Disciples. It was a very touching scene, this meeting for the first time of the Tathagata and Queen Yasodaya after his renunciation of the world. King Suddhodana addressed the Bhagava praising the wonderful and extraordinary virtues of loyalty and dignity on the part of Yasodaya during the Tathagata's long absence. It was then that the Tathagata recounted the story of *Candakinnari* which brought to light the faithfulness and virtues of the queen even when she was born a *Kinnari* in a past existence.

Chapter eighteen concludes with the account of ordination of Buddha's younger brother Prince Nanda and initiation of son Rahula to novicehood.

Chapter nineteen gives an account of the Tathagata's return from Kapilavatthu to Rajagaha and how, while he was breaking the journey at the Anupiya Mango Grove, he was presented by his royal father King Suddhodana with one thousand princes of the royal families to be ordained and to attend upon the Buddha. It also describes the ordination of the six princes who were not included in the first batch of one thousand princes but who later joined them. In conclusion, it gives a list of rains-retreats observed by the Buddha in serial order.

Chapter Twenty opens with an account of how the six princes excepting Ananda and Devadatta achieved the highest supramundane achievements. Venerable Bhaddiya became a *Tevijja Arahat* first, followed by the Venerable Anuruddha and Venerables Bhagu and Kimila. The Venerable Ananda became a stream-winner, gaining only *Sotipattiphala* at that time. The Venerable Devadatta failed to become an *Ariya* and remained only an ordinary *putthujana* bhikkhu but one endowed with eight mundane Jhanic attainments.

This chapter continues to describe how the Tathagata preached his son novice Rahula quite a number of discourses, the most important of which is the *Amblalathika Rahulovada sutta*. It gives an account also of the wealthy man Anathapindika of Savatthi, who heard of the appearance of Buddha in the world for the first time when he visited his brother-in-law, the wealthy man of Rajagaha. After his meeting with Buddha, he invited the Tathagata to visit his town of Savatthi. On the Buddha's acceptance of his supplication, he went back to Savatthi to make necessary arrangements. The rest of the chapter is made up of accounts of the selection and purchase of the Jetavana monastery donated by the wealthy man Anathapindika, the pomp and grandeur of Anathapindika's grand reception ceremony, donation of the Jetavana monastery to the Sangha from the four directions and discourses which led Bhikkhu Nanda to Arahatsip.

Chapter twenty-one deals first with the story of Sumana the flower-seller of Rajagaha. In connection with Sumana's offer of flowers

with full devotional faith in him, the Buddha exhorted the citizens the nature of faultless and wholesome act which is worth acting, for which the doer has no bitter regret but only joy and gladness. We also find in this chapter the account of assistance given by the Buddha in removing the wrong views of one thousand hermits, headed by Aggidatta, former court Brahmin of King Kosala and also the story of Naked ascetic Jambuka whose misdeeds of the past made him suffer for fifty five years and of his final emancipation.

Chapter twenty two opens with a description of the founding of Vesali, how it grew into a thriving and prosperous city like its contemporaries of Rajagaha and Savatthi and how it eventually fell victim to disasters such as drought, poor harvest, shortage of food, famine, etc. It goes on to tell the story of how the Buddha gave protection and peace to the city by teaching Ratana sutta, how the Venerable Ananda was asked by the Buddha to take preventive measures by going round between the three walls of the city, reciting Ratana Sutta rhythmically, with correct intonation, pronunciation, accent and punctuation. This chapter deals extensively with fundamental principle of administering *paritta* recitation, giving notes on failure and success of one who administers *paritta* recitation, on failure and success of who listens to *paritta* recitation together with an account of *parittas* that possess unique powers.

Chapter twenty-two also gives an account of the life of the Bodhisatta Brahmin Sankha, Richman's son Uggasena, the acrobat, and most important of all the account of the war between the Sakyans of Kapillavatthu, and the Sakyans of Koliya over dispute about sharing of Rohinini river water. This was the occasion when the Buddha advised the royalties of the two countries to abandon their armed hostilities by giving many discourses on end of strife.

Chapter twenty-two continues to describe how, after peace was restored, the Sakyans families presented the Buddha with two hundred and fifty princes to attend upon him after being ordained as bhikkhus, how they were unhappy at first leading the life of bhikkhus, how the Buddha taught them *Kunala Jataka* and how they finally attained arahatship. This chapter concludes with an account of how the Buddha taught the *Maha Samaya Sutta* and *Sammaparibbajaniya Sutta* etc. at



a gathering of devas and brahmas, how the devas and brahmas who achieved emancipation thereby, held *Maha Samaya Sutta* in high esteem.

Chapter twenty-three gives an account of the fifth rains-residence which the Tathagata spent at Vesali after paying a short visit to Kapilavatthu where he helped his ageing old royal father attain Arahathship just before he made his *parinibbana*. This chapter records the circumstances under which women were permitted to enter the Buddha's order as bhikkhunis at the fervent request of step-mother Mahapajapati and through eloquent pleadings of the loveable Venerable Ananda. The last portion of the chapter is made up with the account of the Buddha's victory over the wandering ascetic Saccaka as detailed in the *Maha Saccaka Sutta*.

Chapter twenty-four gives a description of the Buddha's sixth vassa at Mount Makula and his sojourn at Veluvana monastery of Rajagaha after the lent. We find here the open challenge made by the Sectarial teachers, namely, Purana Kassapa, Makkhali Gosala, Ajita Kesa-kambala, Pakudha Kaccayana, Nigantha Nataputta and Sancaya Belatthaputta. The challenge was taken up by the Venerable Pindola at the instance of the Venerable Maha Moggallana. The Venerable Pindola took down the sandal-wood bowl of the richman of Rajagaha placed at the top of a bamboo pole sixty cubits high. The richman had offered it to anyone who claimed himself to be an Arahath able to make his passage in the sky by means of supernatural powers. None of the Sectarials who had claimed to be Arahaths was able to avail themselves of the offer.

The concluding portions of this chapter deals with the Buddha's journey to Savatthi where at the Kandamba white mango tree, the Sectarials were utterly destroyed by the Buddha's display of feats of miracles consisting of Twin Miracle, of issuance of fire and water, miracle of unveiling of the universe and display of iridescence in six colours, while he was walking to and fro on the Jeweled Walk in the sky. After the display of miracles, the Buddha ascended to Tavatimsa to spend the seventh vassa there to teach the *Abhidharima*.

Chapter twenty-five describes how the Buddha spent his vassa in Tavatimsa, how he preached the *Abhidhamma* there, how he maintained himself on alms food presented by devas at the Anotatta lake, how he had left a created Buddha to continue on teaching the *Abhidhamma* in his absence, how he recounted what he had taught the devas of Tavatimsa to the Chief Disciple Sariputta, how Sariputta in turn taught the *Abhidhamma* to his five hundred bhikkhu followers who had been bats in a previous existence, how the Tathagata, after the rains-retreat, descended to earth at the town of Sankassa where he was welcomed and paid homage by a huge crowd of devotees headed by the Venerable Sariputta who had travelled from Savatthi to Sankassa, and how the Tathagata brought out the attributes of his first Chief Disciple by teaching *Sariputta Sutta* and *Parosahassa Jataka*.

The chapter goes on to tell the story of Cincamanavika who, at the instance of heretical sectarians, made malicious, slanderous charge against the Buddha. She made foul accusations in front of a huge audience and Sakka had to come down to solve the problem. As a consequence of her great misdeed, Cincamanavika was swallowed up by a fissure appearing in the earth. The Buddha then taught the *Maha Paduma Jataka* to show that Cincamanivika had made false accusation against the Buddha in a previous existence too.

The chapter concludes with the account of a female wandering ascetic Sundari, a good looking heretic woman employed by sectarians outside the teaching in their attempt to slander the Buddha again. Their plot which was more heinous than the previous one led to the death of Sundari and total destruction of heretics in Savatthi.

Chapter twenty-six gives an account of the eighth vassa kept by the Tathagata at the town of Susumaragira. It opens with the story of the wealthy man Nakulapitu and his wife Nakulamatu, who had been the Tathagata's parents or aunts and uncles in numerous past existences. It goes on to give the story of Prince Bodhi in delivering which the Buddha touched upon various Dhamma points which will be of interest to yogis actually engaged in practice. Prince Bodhi wanted to know how long it would take for the attainment of Fruitional stage of Arahatship for one who had the Tathagata as his teacher. In answer,

the Buddha explained five elements of effort, *Padhaniyanga*, required of those who practise meditation and the four modes of *Saddha* forming a constituent of *Padhaniyanga*.

The chapter concludes with the account of pain in the stomach suffered by the Venerable Maha Moggallana, of how the Maha Thera found out the cause of his pain, how he exhorted the Mara who was the culprit to stop giving trouble to the disciples of the Buddha and an account of the Buddha's three visits to Sri Lanka.

Chapter twenty-seven deals with the ninth vassa spent by the Tathagata at Kosambi where he accepted the offering of three monasteries made by the three wealthy men of the town. It includes stories of richman Ghosaka, whose own malice brought about his own ruin, and of the family of Brahmin Magandhi whose young daughter Magandhi harboured resentment on the Tathagata for refusing to accept her as his cohort.

The main interest in this chapter lies in the account of quarrelsome bhikkhus of Kosambi who could not be pacified by the exhortations of the Tathagata. When his attempts at pacification bore no fruit, the Tathagata left all alone to the seclusion of the village of Balakalonaka, declaring, "one should strive, single handed after Ultimate Goal, like a bull elephant of Matinga breed which roams the forest all alone."

Since the inception of the project to translate the six volumes in eight books of the Great Chronicle of Buddhas, I have been ably assisted by U Tin Lwin, formerly Professor of Pali, Department of Oriental Studies of the Yangon and Mandalay Universities. Together we have edited and published the first two volumes or three books of the Sayadaw's works. Since March 1994, after bringing out the second volume in English, we have decided to work separately, each one taking the responsibility of editing separate books of the remaining volumes. This new arrangement was agreed upon between us hoping to hasten the completion of the whole project. Thus I have made use of the translation manuscript of volume three by U Khin Maung Gyi and have edited and prepared it ready for publication. U Tin Lwin is

engaged likewise attending to editing the translation manuscript of volume four by U Aye Maung.

This book will be presented to the Nine Ovadacariya Sayadaws of Mingun on the first waning moon of the second Waso, the 31<sup>st</sup> of July 1996 as a meritorious deed of Dhamma Dana in memory of our revered Mingun Sayadaw, the most Venerable Bhaddanta Vicittasarabhivamsa

**U Ko Lay,**

Dated, Yangon,

The ninth waning moon of Kasone 1358 M.E.

10<sup>th</sup> May 1996.

THE GREAT CHRONICLE OF BUDDHAS  
THE STATE BUDDHA SASANA COUNCIL'S VERSION

VOLUME THREE

THE CHRONICLE OF BUDDHA GOTAMA

*Nāmo Tassa Bhagavato Arahato Sammā-Sambuddhassa*

THE JEWEL OF THE BUDDHA

CHAPTER SIXTEEN

THE ARRIVAL OF TWO WANDERING ASCETICS,  
UPATISSA AND KOLITA, (FUTURE CHIEF DISCIPLES),  
AT THE FEET OF THE FULLY SELF-ENLIGHTENED.

[Having heard the news of the arrival of the Buddha at Rājagaha King Suddhodana sent a number of ministers, each accompanied by one thousand attendants, to invite the Buddha to his Royal City. This event took place at thousand or about the waning moon of *Phussa* (Pyatho). (It will be noted that) if we treat this episode as the starting point of this chapter, it will not be easy for the inclusion of the story of the two Chief disciples<sup>1</sup> hereafter; hence the exposition of the relevant account of the two Chief disciples in abridged form is given here by way of introduction.]

The time was about the first waxing moon of *Māgha* (Tabodwe) when the Buddha had been in Rājagaha for about half a month. At that time the great teacher of the wandering ascetics, Sanjaya, was residing at Rājagaha with two hundred and fifty followers. During that period the

---

<sup>1</sup>The biographies of Venerables Sāriputta and Mahā Moggalana will be mentioned in the chapter on the Jewel of the Sangha.

wandering ascetic Upatissa, the future Chief Disciple Venerable Sariputta and wandering ascetic Kolita, the future Chief Disciple Venerable Mahā Moggallana happened to be undergoing training in the ascetic practices under the great teacher Sanjaya.

The two ascetics, Upatissa and Kolita, who were childhood friends, found out, on completion of the course of training within two or three days, that the ascetic teacher's doctrine did not contain any element whatsoever of Deathless Nibbāna.

"My friend, this ascetic teacher's doctrine is fruitless; it is without essence; we will make solemn vow that, from now on the one who realises first the Deathless Nibbana should tell about it to the other who is still after it".

On that day of about the first waxing moon of *Phagguna*(Tabaung), Venerable Assaji, one of the Pancavaggis, after rearranging his robe and taking an alms bowl and upper robe, set out for Rajagaha to receive alms-food. His deportment was dignified and inspired confidence, whether in going forward or back, looking forward or side-way, with eyes cast down confining the range of vision to a radius of four hands' lengths.

When ascetic Upatissa, the future Sariputta, saw Venerable Assaji entering Rajagaha-departing himself with dignity and grace, he thought to himself:

"I am certain this bhikkhu must be one of those in the world who have attained the *Arahatta-maggaphala*. It might be well to approach him and ask: "Friend, under whom have you gone forth? Who is your teacher? Whose teaching have you accepted?" But then he continued to consider thus:

"This is not the proper time to ask this bhikkhu; he is on his alms-round in the city. We two friends have so desired the Deathless State of Nibbana, having deduced that "If there is death, there must also be the State of Deathlessness". For me who has been seeking to realize this inferred objective of Nibbana, it would be well to dog the footsteps of this monk".

Accordingly he followed closely behind the Venerable Assaji.

When Assaji had finished his alms-round, Upatissa sensed his desire to take a seat for his meal. He therefore laid out a short-legged stool he had carried all along the way and offered some water from his jug when the Thera had had his meal. Having thus fulfilled the duties that a pupil would do to a teacher, he entered into courteous, cordial conversation with the Thera and said:

"Friend, your faculties are fully clear and serene; your complexion is clear and bright and unblemished. Friend, under whom have you gone forth? Who is your teacher? Whose teaching have you accepted?"

Venerable Assaji replied, "Friend, I have gone forth under the Perfectly-Self Enlightened Buddha, a scion of the unbroken Sakya dynasty, who renounced the world and became a recluse. He is my teacher; I am the one who accepted his teaching." Upatissa then asked, "Friend, What does your teacher Buddha profess? What does he teach?"

Venerable Assaji contemplated: "These wandering ascetics hold views which are antagonistic to the *Sasana*; and I must show this wandering ascetic Upatissa clearly the deep and subtle nature of the teaching" and gave this reply. "Friend, I am but a junior member of the Order, having come into the *Sasana* quite recently. I will not be able to explain the Dhamma extensively; I will be able to tell you its essential meaning only in brief."

The wandering ascetic Upatissa, the future Sariputta thought of informing Venerable Assaji, "I am Upatissa, a wandering ascetic and an intellectual; please teach me to the best of your ability either little or in extensio. It is my responsibility to try and understand your discourse by extending it in a hundred or thousand ways," but said only:

"So, be it, friend. Please teach me a little or much; (and in doing so) please preach me only the essential meaning. I wish to listen only to the essential meaning for what avails it me if you teach many matters of letters, versification and such others?"

Thereupon, the Venerable Assaji, taught the Dhamma which is complete with the essential meaning of the Four Noble Truths:

*Ye dhammā hetuppabbhavā,  
Tesaṃ hetuṃ Tathāgato āha;  
Tesañca yo nirodho,  
Evaṃ vādi Mahāsamano.*

"Friend, the five-fold aggregate otherwise known as the Truth of Suffering (*Dukkha Sacca*) owe their origin to craving (*tanha*) or the Truth of origin of suffering (*Samudaya Sacca*). Our Teacher, the Enlightened One has told the truth of Suffering (*Dukka Sacca*) and the Truth of origin of Dukkha (*Samudaya Sacca*). He has also taught the Truth of Cessation of Dukkha (*Nirodha Sacca*) and the Truth of the Path leading to the Cessation of Dukkha (*Magga Sacca*). Such is the pure doctrine held by the Great Samana, our Master who expounds these Four Noble Truths in analytical detail.

After hearing the first half of the above discourse, the wanderer Upatissa attained the Fruition stage of *Sotapanna*; he finished hearing the remaining half of the discourse when he had already become a *Sotapanna*.

The future Sariputta then said:

*Eseva dhammo yadi tāvadeva,  
paccavyyatha padamasokaṃ;  
aditṭhaṃ abbatṭitaṃ,  
bahukehi kappanahutehi.*

"This is the very teaching, the Truth we, the two friends, have been searching for, even though it has enabled me to attain personally and realise only the Fruition of the First Path. (*Sotapattiphala*). You, Venerable Sir, have attained and realised the State where there is no sorrow, the Nibbana, Because we have not seen this Truth, the Nibbana, we have suffered a great loss, wasting innumerable world cycles.

After saying thus, it occurred to the wanderer Upatissa that there should be some things more special in this supermundane matter, even before he had achieved the higher stages of it. He therefore requested the Venerable Assaji thus: "Let things stand where they are for the time being; do not continue to teach the higher stages of the doctrine. Let



me beseech you to tell me where our teacher, the Enlightened One, is now residing. "Friend, the Tathagata has been residing at the Veluvana Monastery", replied the Venerable Assaji. Thereupon, the Wanderer Upatissa said, "If so, Venerable Sir, please go ahead; I have a friend to whom I have the bounden duty to show the knowledge of the Deathless I have acquired before him. After fulfilling my promise to him, I shall follow with my friend in your wake to the presence of the Blessed One". He then respectfully made obeisance to the Thera circumambulating three times about him as a gesture of gratitude and made his way towards the residence of the Wanderers.

### Wanderer Kolita's Attainment of Sotapanna

When wanderer Kolita saw wanderer Upatissa coming even from a distance it occurred to him, "My friend's face looks entirely different from that of previous days; it seems certain that he has realised the Deathless Nibbana". So he asked wanderer Upatissa thus: "Friend, your faculty of senses is fully clear and serene; your complexion is clear, bright and unblemished. How is that, my friend? Have you acquired the knowledge of the Deathless Nibbana?" "Yes, friend, I have indeed realized Nibbana that is free from death". On being questioned by wanderer Kolita under what circumstances he had attained the Deathless Nibbana, Upatissa told him in detail what had transpired during his meeting with the Venerable Assaji and repeated the verse "*Ye dhammā hetuppabbhavā*" etc. After hearing the verse in full length, Kolita attained *Sotapattiphala* and asked "Friend, Upatissa, where is our Master, the fully Enlightened One now residing?". Upatissa replied, "Our Master Tathagata is residing at Veluvana Monastery, according to Venerable Assaji". Upon this, Kolita, (being an impulsive person) said, "If so, friend, let us go to the Tathagata right away; the Glorious Buddha, the Enlightened One is our Master, our benefactor."

### Upatissa and Kolita went to see the great teacher Sanjaya and his disciples

Upatissa, the future Sariputta, who with a kindly disposition had regard for the feelings of their followers, suggested with the patience and foresight, "Friend, those two hundred and fifty wandering ascetics have been depending upon us, have always looked up to us, and have lived in the ascetic precincts, always watching our behavior and disposition; let us also inform those 250 wanderers; only if we inform them can they act as they wish!" and also as one who always had profound respects for teachers he went on to point out, "let us also acquaint our teacher Sanjaya with what we have learnt about Nibbana that is void of death; If he is intelligent and wise, he will believe us and surely go along with us to the Tathagata. On hearing the teaching by the Tathagata, he might realise the Path and Fruition through penetrative knowledge". So saying the two friends first went to the two-hundred followers and told them, "We are going to the Tathagata, the Glorious Buddha, the Enlightened One who is our Master, our benefactor".

All the two hundred and fifty disciples responded, "All of us have been living here depending solely upon you and watching your behavior and disposition. Should you decide to go to the Tathagata and practise the holy life in the presence of the Blessed One, all of us will also follow suit".

Then the two friends went to the great teacher Sanjaya and made three vain attempts to persuade him to go to the Tathagata with them. Finally the great teacher asked, "Young men, in this world, are there many who are unwise, or many who are wise?". When they replied, "Master, in this world there are many who are unwise, and few who are wise", the great teacher Sanjaya made this final remark, "Young men, if that be the case, wise men will go to the recluse Gotama, the wise, and those who are unwise will come to me, the unwise. You may go ahead; I can not, in any case, accompany you". So the two friends, accompanied by their two hundred and fifty followers made their way to Veluvana Monastery where the Blessed one was residing.

As the two friends Upatissa and Koliya led away the two hundred and fifty wandering ascetics to the Veluvana Monastery, the entire precincts of the great teacher Sanjaya became absolutely lifeless and silent. His followers had dispersed, and looking upon the silent and deserted scene, the lonely teacher Sanjaya felt so desolate that under pressure of the raging flame of grief within, boiling blood bubbled forth from his mouth.

At that time, the Tathagata was sitting in a stately manner amidst an audience (of Sanghas) and delivering a discourse. When the Tathagata saw from a distance the two ascetic friends and their 250 followers coming towards Veluvana Monastery, he drew the attention of the bhikkhus who were listening to his discourse, saying,

"Bhikkhus, yonder come Kolita and Upatissa, the two friends of boyhood; these two are destined to become the pair of Chief Disciples on my Left and Right".

The two friends and their 250 disciples approached the presence of the Blessed One bowing their heads at the feet of the Tathagata, in profound respect.

#### All of them becoming Ehibhikkhus

Having made their obeisance to the Blessed One, they requested the Buddha that they may be ordained as monks thus: "Glorious Buddha! Glorious Buddha, may we have lower and higher ordinations in your presence". The Buddha stretched out his golden hand and called out (in the same way as before) thus: "*Etha Bhikkave* etc". Bhikkhus, come! receive the lower and higher ordinations you have asked for, my dear sons. The Dhamma has been well taught by me; strive to undergo noble training in its three aspects so as to bring about the end of the round of suffering". No sooner had the Buddha uttered thus than the two friends together with their two hundred and fifty disciples instantly turned into full-fledged bhikkhus like senior Theras of sixty years standing, readily dressed up and equipped with eight supernaturally created requisites each in its proper place, paying homage to the Buddha with due respect. The appearance of laymen vanished miraculously as they were transformed into bhikkhus: (The very utterance by the Buddha "Come

bhikkhus" meant a process for them to become established bhikkhus. There was nothing to do with the procedure in an ordination hall.)

### Attainment of Arahatsip by 250 followers

After they had thus become 'ehibhikkhus', the Buddha proceeded to expound an appropriate discourse in harmony with the intellectual level and disposition of the 250 followers of the two friends. (With the exception of the two Agga Savakas), these 250 bhikkhus attained Arahatsip at that one sitting.

As regards the two Chief Disciples, they had not yet become accomplished in the three higher Paths, because, of the three *Savaka Nanas*, conditions for attainment of *Agga Savaka Parami Nāṇa* surpass those of the other two namely, *Maha Savaka Parami Nāṇa* and *Pakati Savaka Parami Nāṇa* and are more extensive.

### Venerable Maha Moggallana's Attainment of Arahatsip

After his ordination the Venerable Maha Moggallana started to practise earnestly the holy life in a forest depending for his sustenance on a small village, called Kalavalaputta, in the country of Magada. Making a strenuous effort in his practice, walking up and down the path for full seven days, he felt tired and weak on the seventh day and sat down at the end of the path dozing, being overcome by torpor. The Tathagata roused him from the fit of torpordity with teaching and instruction and he eventually overcame it. On hearing the Buddha's instruction on the meditation on the Elements (*Dhātū Kammatṭhana*) he became perfected in the three higher Paths and achieved the height of the *Savaka Parami Nāna*.<sup>2</sup>

### Venerable Sariputta's Attainment of Arahatsip

Half a month (15 days) from the date of his ordination, (on the Fullmoon day of Magha), Venerable Sariputtara while staying with the Buddha in the Sukarakhata cave (dug by pigs) on mount Gijjhakuta, in

---

<sup>2</sup> For more particulars, reference may be made to 8- *Pacalayamana Sutta*, 6- *vyyakata vagga*, *Sutta nipata*, *Anguttara Nikāra*, and relevant Commentaries.

Rajagaha, heard the Tathagata's discourse on the *Vedanapariggaha Sutta* also known as *Dīghanakha Sutta* (of 3-Paribbajaka Vagga, Majjhima Pannasa, Majjhima Nikaya.) given to the Sariputta's own nephew, wanderer Diganakha. While following the discourse intently, the Venerable Sariputta practised the meditation on feeling (*vedana kamatthana*) thereby developing penetrating insight. As a result he became an Arahat achieving the highest stage of the *Sāvaka Parami Nana*. He may be likened to one who enjoys the food laid in readiness for another person. He also penetratingly discerned the sixteen states of knowledge.

(Herein, a question might arise: why did Venerable Sariputta, possessed of great wisdom, attained Arahatship after the Venerable Maha Moggallana? The answer in brief is: The preliminary steps taken by the Venerable Sariputta, in the matter of meditation practices, were wider or greater than those of the Venerable Maha Moggallana. Here is an example: When ordinary common people contemplate travelling, they can do so quickly because they have a limited amount of kit or paraphanelia to carry whereas kings cannot set out quickly because arrangements have to be made for regiments of elephants, horse-men, charioteers, infantry etc. to accompany them on a grand scale. As the saying goes, 'It takes the cooking time of a boat load of white beans for a king to appear before his audience.'

Further explanation: Future Buddhas or *Sammā-Sambodhisatta*, Future Private Buddhas or *Pacceka Bodhisatta*, and Future Disciples of a Buddha or *Sāvaka Bodhisatta* all have, as their object of Insight meditation, the aggregate of conditioned formations or mental and physical phenomena. This aggregate which forms the object of Insight Meditation is known as *Sammasanacara* which means the practising ground for development of knowledge of impermanence, unsatisfactoriness and insubstantiality (*anicca, dukkha, anatta*). It is also called *Vipassanā Bhūmi* meaning, the aggregate of

mental and physical phenomena which form the basis of developing the Insight, *Vipassanā Nāna*.

Of these Bodhisattas,

(1) Future Bodhisatta contemplate the *anicca, dukkha, anatta*, characteristics of the internal aggregate of conditioned existence, that is to say, mental and physical phenomena occurring continuously in sentient beings, as well as of external inanimate objects that have no power of sense-perception, that exist within the compass of one hundred crores of world Universe.

(2) *Pacceka-Bodhisattas* contemplate the *anicca, dukkha, anatta*, characteristics of conditioned mental and physical phenomena occurring in oneself, of those in the continuum of sentient beings in the Mgiijhima region as well as of external inanimate objects that have no power of sense-perception.

(3) *Sāvaka Bodhisattas* (Future Chief Disciples, Future Great Disciples, Future Ordinary Disciples), contemplate the *anicca, dukkha anatta* characteristics of conditioned mental and physical phenomena without distinguishing as occurring in the continuum of oneself or in those of others, taking them as one whole external phenomena.

Venerable Maha Moggallana did not contemplate to the fullest extent the impermanent, unsatisfactory, insubstantial characteristics of each and every conditioned phenomenon occurring in the continuum of himself and in those of others; he selected only some of the conditioned phenomena for his contemplation. Venerable Sariputta, however in contemplating the three characteristics of conditioned phenomena developed Vapassana Insight by being more thorough than the Venerable Moggallana, attending individually to each phenomenon.

Venerable Maha Moggallana may be likened to a person who touches the earth only with the tip of his walking stick as he walks along. He has only touched a (negligible) small area of ground leaving a greater portion untouched. This implies that in the time he utilized in contemplating the object of Insight meditation and attaining the Arahathship after seven days, he had meditated on only a portion of the aggregate of the conditioned phenomena. Venerable Sariputta, on the

other hand, during the fifteen days before he attained the Arahattaphala, took the complete course of *Sammasana* practice reserved for the disciples (not giving attention to those reserved for the *Samāsambodhisattas* and *Paccekabodhisattas*) so that there was nothing left untouched in the matter of contemplating salient features of the conditioned phenomena. Having realized the *Arahataphala*, he perceived with dauntless confidence that, excepting the Fully Enlightened Buddhas and Pacceka Buddhas, there was no one who could rise to the intellectual level that he had systematically attained. He found none his equal.

Here is an analogy... There were two men who wanted bamboo staffs. The first man, having found a cluster of bamboos, thought it would take time to clear the bushes to get a good staff. So he cut a length of bamboo within reach of his hand, by thrusting his hand to his arm's length into the cluster of bamboos. Although this man acquired bamboo staff first, he did not get a good, straight, strong one. The second person, who also found the cluster of bamboos thought he would not get a staff of his choice unless the binding clusters and creepers were removed. He then girded his loins and with a sharp knife removed the tangled growth and then cut a straight, strong staff of his choice for himself and went off. Although this person acquired a bamboo staff later, he got a good, strong straight one. Venerable Maha Moggallana may be likened to the first person who cut and acquired a bamboo staff first, but not a good, straight strong one; Venerable Moggallana also attained the Arahatsip first but not the highest stage of the *Sāvaka Pārami Nāna*. Venerable Sariputta may be likened to the second person who patiently took pains to get later a staff that was straight and strong. Venerable Sariputtara attended patiently to his meditation work for fifteen days to earn his Arahatsip later but reaching the pinnacle of *Sāvaka Pārami Nāna*.

#### Differences in the speed of practice and attainments between the two Chief Disciples

Venerable Moggallana's *paṭipadā* for the three lower Paths is of *Sukhapāṭipadā dandabhīṃṃā* type (after having removed the *nivaraṇas* easily, *Vipassanā Nānas* are tardily developed to attain the three lower

*Magga Nānas*.) His *paṭipadā* for the attainment of *Arahatamagga* is of *Dukkhaṭṭipadākhippabhiñña* type (After having been able to remove the five *nivaranas* by practising strenuously and with difficulty, *Vipassanā Nānas* are developed sharply and quickly to attain the *Arahatamagga*.)

The *paṭipadā* of the Venerable Sariputta, the Supremo of Dhamma, for the three lower Paths is *Sukhaṭṭipadādandhābhiñña* (the same as that of the Venerable Maha Moggallana). But his *patipada* for the attainment of *Arahatamagga* is of *Sukhaṭṭipadakhippabhinna* type (After having removed the five *nivaranas* without trouble and with ease, *Vipassana Nanas* are developed sharply and quickly to attain the *Arahattamagga*).

This is the difference between the *paṭipadās* of the two Theras (Exposition on the 7th, 8th Suttas of *Patipada Vagga* of the *Anguttara Commentary*).

### The Single occasion of the Disciples' meeting (*Sannipāta*)

After delivering the discourse entitled '*Vedanāpariggaha Sutta* or *Dīghanakha sutta*, the Buddha descended from the mount *Gijjhaguta* before dusk and went to the *Veluvana* monastery. There occurred then the great event of the Disciples' meeting, *Sannipata*, which was characterised by four features:

- (i) It was the full-moon of the month of *Magha*.
- (ii) The Congregation took place without any body's invitation, as a natural course of event, with the coming together of 1250 bhikkhus (made up of one thousand bhikkhus headed by the *Uruvela Kassapa* brothers and two hundred and fifty belonging to the two Chief Disciples' group.
- (iii) All the 1250 participants were *Ehibhikkhus*.
- (iv) All these participants were winners of *Chalabhinna* (Six fold Higher Knowledge).

It was at this congregation of the Disciples, *Sāvaka Sannipāta* that the Tathagata conferred the title of *Agga sāvaka* on the two Chief



Disciples, the Venerables Sariputta and Maha Moggallana. On the same day, the Buddha gave instructions on the obligations of a bhikkhu, *Ovāda Pāṭimokkha*, which no Buddha fails to offer.

**Three occasions of the Buddha's teaching.**  
(*Dhammābhisamaya*)

As described before (in the first volume), in the Chapter on twenty four Buddhas, the three great occasions on which Buddhas of the past delivered great sermons, also took place in the time of our Supremely Enlightened Gotama Buddha. These memorable occasions which deserve to be recorded are:

- (1) As stated before, the Tathagata, after his attainment of Enlightenment, taught for the first time the *Dhammacakkapavattana Sutta* in the Deer Park when the Venerable Kondanna Thera and eighteen crores of Brahmas became established in the *Sotapattiphala*.

(This is the first occasion, the first *Dhammābhisamaya* at which the Four Noble Truths were first made known to humans, Devas and Brahmas.)

- (2) Then on the great auspicious Maha Mangala day, the Tathagata taught the Mangala Sutta amidst the assemblage of humans and Devas from ten thousand worlds; innumerable humans and Devas discerned the Four Noble Truths and attained emancipation.

(This is the second occasion, the second *Dhammābhisamaya* at which the Four Noble Truths were made known to the humans, Devas and Brahmas.)

- (3) Again, when the Tathagata taught Cula Rahulovada Sutta (Majjh 3, 324 and Sam-2, 324) to Venerable Rahula, thousands of Devas together with the Venerable Rahula, came to understand the Four Noble Truths and attained emancipation.

(This is the third occasion, the third *Dhammabhīsamaya* at which the Four Noble-Truths were made known to the humans, Devas and Brahmas.)

### The single occasion of the Disciples' meeting, *Sāvaka Sannipāta*

As stated above, our Gotama Buddha, the Self-Enlightened One had only one occasion when the disciples gathered together in an assembly characterised by four features.

It was on this occasion that the Buddha gave instructions for the first time on the obligation of a Bhikkhu, *Ovāda Pāṭimokkha*.

### The Two forms of *Pāṭimokkha*

Brief exhortations and code of discipline laid down by the Buddhas is called *Pāṭimokkha* because they keep away those, who observe and follow them, from the danger of falling into states of woe. The *Pāṭimokkha* is of two forms (a) *Ovāda Pāṭimokkha*, (b) *Ānā Pāṭimokkha*.

Of those two forms, the *Patimokkha* for exhortation, *Ovāda Pāṭimokkha* is taught by Fully Self-Enlightened Buddhas exclusively. *Ovāda Patimokkha* consists of three stanzas beginning with: "*Khanti Paramam tapo titikkhā*". Every one of the Buddhas gave their exhortation only with these three stanzas; there has been no deviation from them; however as regards the occasions and time intervals when they were delivered, there had been differences as explained below:

Vipassī Buddha taught *Ovāda Pāṭimokkha* once in every seven years; the exhortation held good for seven years. Sikkhī and Vessabhū Buddhas taught it every six years, Kakusana and Konaguna Buddhas every year and Kassapa Buddha every six months, as his exhortations lasted for six months.<sup>3</sup>

We will describe here also what comes in the introduction to section on *Verañja* in the first volume of the Vinaya Commentary in connection with this *Ovāda Pāṭimokkha*.

<sup>3</sup> This is as mentioned in the Introduction to *Ānandatherapanna vatthu of Dhammapada Commentary (vol. II)*.

All the Buddhas of the past taught *Ovāda Pātimokkha* only. (But the *Ovāda Pātimokkha* was then not taught once in every half month). To explain further: Vipassi Buddha taught *Ovāda Pātimokkha* once every six years and he recited it himself. The bhikkhu disciples did not recite the *Pātimokkha* within the precincts of their own monastery. All the bhikkhus within the entire region of Jambudipa gathered together to hold the *Uposatha* service only in the precinct of the monastery where Vipassi Buddha resided. The monastery was situated in the garden of Khema, a sanctuary for animals near the country of Bandhumati.

During the days of Vipassi Buddha, there used to be eighty-four thousand monasteries, and within each monastery there dwelt ten thousand to twenty thousand bhikkhus, keeping themselves pure by staying away from individuals with whom they have nothing in common (*visabhāga puggala*); they also observe more austere practices. Devas who had taken up the duty of announcing the *Uposatha* days went round the monasteries where bhikkhus resided (once every year) to address them "Your Reverence, who have a peaceful life, a year is past, two years, three years, four years, five years have past. This is the sixth year and the coming full-moon day is the day when you should all approach the Buddha to pay homage and to hold the *Uposatha* service; it is now time for you all to assemble in the presence of the Buddha."

Bhikkhus possessed of supernormal powers found their own way to the monastery in the Khema Sanctuary where the Vipassi Buddha was residing. Bhikkhus who possessed no supernatural power went to the place of homage with the assistance of the Devas in this manner: The powerless bhikkhus were then living in monasteries situated near the shores of the east, west, north and south oceans. Before they proceeded to the Assembly, they performed the bounden duties of setting beds and dwelling places in order; then taking the necessary bowls and robes, they willed, 'Let us be off' and instantaneously they found themselves (with the aid of the Devas) sitting in the presence of Vipassi Buddha in the Observance Hall, and paying respect to him.

When the full Assembly of bhikkhus had congregated, Vipassi Buddha, recited the *Ovāda Pātimokkha* as follow:

- (1) *Khantī paramam tapo titikkhā*  
*Nibbānam paramam vadanti Buddhā.*  
*Na hi pabbajito parupaghāti*  
*Na Samano hoti param vihetthayanto*

Forbearing patience (*Khanti: Adhivasana Khanti*)<sup>4</sup> is the most excellent moral practice. Buddhas proclaim "Nibbana which is freedom from craving, is supreme". He who injures, kills others is not one who has gone forth. One who harms others is not a noble bhikkhu who has extinguished all defilements.

- (2) *Sabbapāpassa akāranam,*  
*Kusalassa Upasampadā.*  
*Sacitta pariyodapanam,*  
*Etam Buddhāna Sāsanam.*

Not to do anything evil (to refrain from evil), to cultivate faultless meritorious deeds pertaining to four realms<sup>5</sup>, to purify ones mind by discarding the five-fold hindrances which defile it - these are the instructions, exhortations, advices given by each and every Buddha. (One should endeavor to refrain from demeritorious deeds by observing moral precepts; to perform meritorious deeds pertaining to four realms through practice of Concentration and Insight meditations of both mundane and supramudane levels; and bring about complete purification of one's mind through attainment of Arahattaphala. This is the expressed exhortation, instruction laid down by all the Buddhas.)

- (3) *Anupavādo anupaghāto*  
*pātimokkhe ca saṅvaro*  
*mattaññutā ca bhattasamin*  
*pantañca sayanāsanam*  
*adhicitte ca āyogo*  
*etam Buddhāna sāsanam.*

<sup>4</sup> *Adhivasana khantī*-means exertion or putting forth energy to bear patiently blames and accusations made by others, forbearance to withstand cold or heat without the slightest sign of discomfort.

<sup>5</sup> Four planes:

Not to accuse others or cause others to accuse (meaning vocal restraint) ; not to ill-treat others or cause others to kill or ill treat others (bodily restraint), to observe the chief moral precepts and guard them from being stained or blemished (meaning observance of *Pātimokkhasaṅvara sīla* and *Indriyasaṅvara sīla*)<sup>6</sup>

Knowing the right measure in the matter of food (referring to *Ājīvaparissuddhi Sīla* and *Paccayasammissita Sīla*), dwelling in places of seclusion (*sappāya senāsana*), constant application to develop the eight attainments (*samāpatti*) which serve as the basis of Insight Nana (*Vipassanā Nāna*); this set of six precepts (dhamma) constitute the exhortation, instruction and advices of all the Buddhas. (given by every Buddha).

(This stanza gives an abridged exposition of the three trainings namely, *adhi sīla*, *adhi citta* and *adhi paṇṇā*)

In this manner only, Sikhī Buddha and all other Buddhas taught and recited the *Ovāda pātimokkha*; there are no differences as special teaching or verse recited by them. As stated above, the Dhammapada commentary mentions only differences in time factor.

Only these three verses form the *Ovāda Pātimokkha* stanza recited by all the Buddhas. Buddhas with longer span of life recited them all throughout their life time; Buddhas of shorter life span recited them for the earlier portion of their lives (*Paṭṭhama bodhi*); from the time they started laying down the training rules they stopped teaching, reciting the *Ovāda Pātimokkha*. Only their disciples recited the Vinaya disciplinary rules, also called the *Ānā Patimokkha*. once every fortnight. (Buddhas never recited the *Ānā Patimokkha*).

Therefore, our own Gotama Buddha, the Enlightened One, taught the *Ovāda Pātimokkha* only in the first twenty years of his Buddhahood, known as the *Paṭṭhama Bodhi*. (Cf. Vinaya Commentary First book etc.)

<sup>6</sup> Silas: see Anudipani. Volume 1. Part 1. page 177.

### King Suddhodana sending his ministers to invite the Buddha to the Royal City

It was during the waning moon of *Phussa* in the 103rd year of the Great Era. (as already mentioned in Chapter 15) the Buddha was then residing at the Veluvana Monastery, in Rajagaha, administering the Deathless Elixir of Dhamma to humans, devas, and Brahmas who came to his presence. He had helped some sentient beings to be established as firm believers of the Three Gems. others were able to gain the Path and Fruition in accordance with their aspirations and resolve; while some people of good families from Anga and Magadha countries were granted ordination with attainment of the Path and Fruition. While this great festival of emancipation was being held daily thus, King Suddhodana, heard the news that his son had attained the most Exalted Buddhahood after undergoing a strenuous course of practice for six years and that having preached the first Sermon of Dhammacakka, he was residing in great and noble glory at Veluvana Monastery, Rajagaha, like the moon amidst the stars in the sky.

Hearing these news, the King sent for a minister and said to him, "O Minister! go you now, with one thousand attendants, to the city of Rajagaha and address my son, the Enlightened One, in these words of mine, 'Glorious Buddha, your father King Suddhotdana is desirous of paying homage to you' and invite him to come here."

"Very well, Your Majesty", replied the minister and went off, without delay, carrying the royal message and in the company of one thousand attendants to Rajagaha which was 60 yojanas from Kapilavatthu. He arrived there at a time when the Buddha was teaching Dhamma in the midst of an audience at the Veluvana Monastery.

The minister thought to himself, "I might listen to the discourse before delivering the King's message" While standing and listening to the discourse from the far end of the audience, he and his one thousand attendants, as a consequence, attained Arahathship even as they stood there. They therefore, approached the Bhagava and made the request, "Glorious Buddha, may we receive admission to the Order and ordination as bhikkhu in your presence" Thereupon, the Blessed One stretched out his hand (as before ) and said: "*Etha Bhikkhu*" etc.

Instantly with the call of "*Etha Bhikkhu*" the minister and the one thousand royal attendants turned into full-fledged bhikkhus like senior Theras of sixty year's standing, readily dressed and equipped with eight supernaturally created requisites each in its place, paying homage to the Buddha with due respect. Their state of minister and royal attendants miraculously disappeared as they were transformed into bhikkhus.

(N.B. From the moment of attainment of *Arahattaphala*, noble persons, as a matter of course, become indifferent to mundane affairs; as such, the minister did not convey the King's message to the Buddha, simply passing his time enjoying the bliss of *Arahattaphala*.)

Finding that the minister who was sent did not return in due time and no news was even heard, the King was anxious to know the reason of their silence; so he sent again another minister on the same mission and in the same manner. This minister, too, having gone to Veluvana Monastery in Rajagaha with his attendants, attained Arahathship after hearing the discourse given by the Tathagata and became Ehi Bhikkhus. They neither addressed the Tathagata with the royal message nor did they send back any report to the king. They remained there enjoying the Fruits of Arahathship.

King Suddhodana sent altogether nine ministers each with one thousand royal attendants on the same mission; all the nine ministers with their attendants attained Arahathship after hearing the discourse given by the Tathagata and became Ehi Bhikkhus. They neither addressed the Tathagata with the royal message nor did they send back any report to the king. They remained there enjoying the Fruits of Arahathship.

### Sending Kaludayi, a birth-mate (of the Tathagata)

When King Suddhodana came to know that none of the ministers and attendants had returned and come into his presence to tell him anything, he thought "So many as nine thousand and nine persons have not come back to my presence even to give a report, because they have no close affection and regard for me at all". He wondered, "who will carry out my orders with due speed and without delay". His searching mind began to work and scrutinising carefully, at last he saw, Minister

Kaludayi. As an administrative official, he was charged with managing general affairs of the court being one nearer and dearer to the Royal family. Thus as a trustworthy confidant, the King picked out Kaludayi. Who was also his son's birth-mate, born on the same day. They were playmates since their infancy and intimate friends.

Therefore, the King told Kaludayi; "My son, Kaludayi, I being desirous of paying homage to my son, Tathagata, sent nine ministers each accompanied by one thousand attendants, but not even one of them has turned up with any news. One cannot know with certainty what danger there is to one's life. I wish to see and worship my son while I am still living. Dear son Kaludayi, will you be able to strive your utmost to undertake this task so that I may see my son?" Kaludayi replied "Your Majesty, it would be possible for me to do so if I am granted permission to enter monkhood."

Then the King said "Dear son. Kaludayi, whether you enter monkhood or not, do try your utmost to undertake the task so that I may see my son". "Very well" promised Kaludayi who then set out for Rajagaha accompanied by one thousand attendants, carrying the King's message for the Bhagava. (As stated before) arriving there while the Buddha was delivering a discourse, they stood listening to it from the far end of the audience; as a consequence, Kaludayi and his one thousand attendants attained *Arahattaphala* and became *Ehi bikkhus*.

#### **Kaludayi requesting the Buddha by reciting sixty verses to visit the royal city of Kapilavatthu**

(After his Enlightenment, the Buddha spent his first rains-retreat at Isipatana, Migadaya; at the end of the retreat and having performed the *pavāraṇā* ceremony, he set out for the Uruvela forest where he stayed for the whole of three months teaching and instructing the three hermit brothers and their one thousand followers till they attained Arahatship. Then, accompanied by the one thousand Arahats who were former hermits, the Buddha made his way to Rajagaha where he arrived on the Fullmoon day of *Phussa*, residing there for fully two months. The Buddha taught and instructed over ten thousand young men of good families from Anga and Magadha countries so as to become Arahats



and ordained as bhikkhus. Thus five months had passed since Buddha departed from Baranasi; the cold winter months were over and it was spring, the Fullmoon day of *phagguna*. And it was a week after Kaludayi Thera had arrived at the presence of the Tathagata.)

On that Fullmoon day, Kaludayi Thera thought to himself: "The cold season is over; spring has arrived. Cultivators and farmers have finished gathering their harvests and they have opened up pathways leading to all destinations; the great earth is verdant, covered with luxurious growth of green grass. In the surrounding woods, forest trees have shed their old leaves and look resplendent in their new leaves, bearing flowers and fruits. Neither too cold nor too hot, it is a good time for travelling, it is time now for the Buddha to visit the royal relatives and give them his Blessings". Having thought thus, he approached the Bhagava and addressed him with the following sixty verses supplicating to make a visit to the royal city of Kapilavatthu.

(1) *Angārino dāni dumā bhadante  
phalesino chadanam vippahāya  
ta acchimantova pabhāsanti  
samayo Mahāvīra añgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great benefactor, winter has gone and spring has set in, all the trees have shed their decayed leaves and as if to acquire fresh fruits have sprouted tender leaves and flower buds of glowing ember-red. Stimulated by the changing weather, these colorful trees are shining bright.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapillavatthu, the country of your birth.

(2) *Dumā vicittā dami duma bhadante  
rattañkureheva ca pallavehi  
ratamujjalamaṇḍapasannibhāsā  
samayo Mahāvīra añgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great benefactor, all the trees wearing their coral-red sprouts and tender emerald-green leaves are wondrously and

delightfully beautiful, resembling pavillions shining with jewel-like brilliancy.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapillavatthu, the country of your birth.

- (3) *Supupphitaggā kusumehi bhūsitā  
manuññabhuta sucisādhu gandhā  
rukkhā virocanti ubhosu passesu  
samayo Mahāvīra āṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, on either side of the roadway all kinds of trees and seasonal plants are crowded with blossoms to the very top. Adorned with flowers in full bloom every tree stands lovely; the clear air is filled with fragrant odour and the environs amazingly beautiful to behold.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapillavatthu, the country of your birth.

- (4) *Phalehi nekehi samiddhibhūtā  
vicittarukkḥā ulnatovakāse  
khuddaṃ pipāsampi vinodayanti  
samayo Mahāvīra āṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, on on either side of the road-way, all kinds of trees have borne assorted fruits; wayfarers, both bhikkhus and laity alike, can satisfy their hunger and quench their thirst.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapillavatthu, the country of your birth.

- (5) *Vicittamāla sucipallavehi  
susajjitā morakalāpasannibha  
rukkhā virocanti. Ubhosu passesu  
samayo Mahāvīra āṅgīraasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, now that on either side of the road-way, seasonal shrubs and plants are adorned with the most

fascinating sprigs and decoratively set with delicate leaves free from dirt and dust, looking like bouquets of peacock's tails, they make all the environs (present) a splendid and wonderful scene.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapillavatthu, the country of your birth.

- (6) *Virocamānā phalapallavehi  
susajjitavāsānivāsabhuta  
tosenti addhānakilanasatte  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, seasonal trees and plants are adorned with young fruits and delicate leaves; the whole environs not only present a fascinating sight at every turn but also, like welcoming home and rest houses they refresh and delight the heart of weary traveling bhikkhus and lay men.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapillavatthu, the country of your birth.

- (7) *Suphullitaggā vanagumbhanissitā  
latā anekā suvirajamāna  
tosenti sattu manimandhapāva  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, numerous species of creeping plants in full bloom enveloping the bushy plants afford a fine and splendid sight. Assuming the form of a big pavilion, studded with a variety of precious jewels, it gladdens the heart of travelers, bhikkhus and laity alike.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapillavatthu, the country of your birth.

- (8) *Latā anekā dumanissatīva  
piyehi saddhiṃ sahitā vadhuva  
palobhayanī hi sugandhagandhā  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, like the daughters and daughters-in-law of good birth embracing their beloved husbands, just so numerous species of beautiful creeping plants keep clinging to the trees as parasites and emitting sweet odours seem to be seductively attracting the delight of both bhikkhus and laity.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapillavatthu, the country of your birth.

- (9) *Vicittanīladimanūñña vaṇṇa  
Dija samantā abhikūjamānā  
tosenti māñjussaratāraṭṭhi  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, from all directions, multiparous birds strangely beautiful with bright darkly bluish plumage can be seen flying, dancing, singing sweet and loud, mingling among themselves in couples in jubilant celebration, much to the joy and delight of the traveling bhikkhus and laity.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapillavatthu the country of your birth.

- (10) *Miga ca nānā svirājamānā  
uttuṅgakaṇṇa ca manūññanetta  
disa samantā mabhidhavayanti  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, numerous species of beasts gamboling and running can be seen trotting joyfully to and fro in groups or pairs with pricked-up ears and lovable wide eyes.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapillavatthu, the country of your birth.

(11) *Mamūññabhūta ca mahī samantā  
virājamānā haritāva saddalā  
supupphirukhā molinivalāñkata  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, mother earth, on all sides, everywhere vastly covered with lush and Bermuda grass affords a fine and delightful scene. The trees richly adorned with lovely blossoms are like a maiden's well-embellished tapering coiled hair. (This translation is according to the ancient Nissaya)

Stretches of land every where affords delightful scene. These stretches of land are covered with green Bermuda grass. The trees with flowers and full blossom atop them resemble a charming maiden wearing a well-embellished curled hair.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapillavatthu, the country of your birth.

(12) *Susajjitā muttamayāva vālukā  
susandita cārusuphassadātā  
virocayanteva disā samantā  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, fine silvery sands resembling brilliant white pearls of even size orderly arranged by skillful smiths, lie in stretches for travelers to tread upon with ease and comfort and lend colour and beauty to the environs.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(13) *Samāṃ suphassāṃ sucibhūmi bhāvāṃ  
manūññapupphodayagandhavāsitam  
virājamānaṃ sucimañja sobhaṃ  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, mother earth is free from dirt, the whole stretch of land is void of knoll and trench, unbroken and even, affording a smooth and gentle sense of touch. The air is charged with sweet scents from lovely flowers. The whole spectacle is beautiful, all is clean and pleasant making traveling most enjoyable and appropriate.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(14) *Susajjitam nandanakānanamva  
vicittanānādhumasaṇḍamaṇḍitam  
sugandhabhutaṃ pavanaṃ surammaṃ  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, beautified by the presence of fascinating trees and atmosphere laden with sweet and exotic scents of flowers, the woodland passage between Rajagaha and Kapillavatthu has the appearance of Nandavana garden as if Devas have transformed it into a stage for tumultuous celebration of the festival of Devas.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(15) *Sarā vicittā vividhā manoramā  
susajjitā pañkajapuṇḍarika  
pasammasitodakacarapuṇṇā  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, the ponds along the route full of clear, clean and cool water, and decorated with five varieties of lotus thriving from the silt, are wonderfully beautiful to the view and fill the heart with delight.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

- (16) *Saphullanāṅṅavidhapaṅkajehi  
virājamānā sucigandhagandhā  
pamodayanteva narāmara nām  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānam*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, full-blown lilies dancing on the surface of the ponds afford scenes of beauty, fragrant with the clean sweet smell of the flowers. The lovely ponds greatly delight the approaching men and Devas.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

- (17) *Suphallapaṅkeruhasannisinnā  
dijā samantā mabhinādayantā  
modanti bhariyahi samaṅgino te  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānam*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, buds of varying hue, drunk with nectar from the proudly-blooming full-blown lilies on which they have alighted, sing loud and melodiously from all round. Together with their true and lovely mates, they fly about in joyous delight.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

- (18) *Suphullapupphehi rajam gahetvā  
atī vidhavanti vikūjamānā  
maduhmi gandho vidisaṃ pavāyati  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānam.*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, the bees and bumble bees buzz noisily and ceaselessly as they swarm about sipping sweet and juicy nectar from the flowers in full bloom. These bees big and small, fly about the entire area, diffusing the whole region with the sweet scent of nectar.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

- (19) *Abhiññānādā madavāraṇa ca  
girīhi dhavanti ca vāridhārā  
savanti najjo suvirājītāva  
samayo Mahāvīra āṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, huge elephants in must trumpet with voices as clear as those of singing cranes; great volumes of water rushing down from the hills and majestic rivers flowing swift and strong, are beautiful to behold.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

- (20) *Girī samantāva padissamānā  
mayūragīvā iva nīlavanṇā  
disarajindāva virocayanti  
samayo Mahāvīra āṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, in all eight directions everywhere we look, ranges of towering mountain, dark green and distinct as the colourful ring round the neck of a peacock, resembling the grand spectacle of *Eyavat*, one of the eight species of royal *Disagaja*<sup>7</sup> elephants.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

- (21) *Mayūrasaṅghā girimuddhanasamin  
naccanti nārihi samaṅgibhūtā  
kujanti nanamadhurassarehi  
samayo Mahāvīra āṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, on all hilltops on either side of the road, many peacocks, each with its own true and dear mate, struts about back and forth, with their tails raised fan-wise gorgeously, wings outstretched, and heads uplifted, dancing in emulation of human kind.

<sup>7</sup> See Verse no 30 of Magadha Abhidhana.



With melodious voices of varying notes, in Magadha they joyously crow and sing, "Oway, Oway".

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(22) *Suvadikānekadī jā manūñña  
vicittapattehi virajamānā  
garihmi thatvā abhiññadayanti  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, numerous lovely birds each with the variegated and exotic plumage of species are perching on the hill-tops on either side of the route and singing sweet songs.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(23) *Suphullapupphakaramābhikiñña  
sugandhananadalalankatā ca  
gīrvīrocanti disā samantā  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, on either side of the route, there are ranges of mountains with flowering trees of rare specimen emitting sweet-scents and presenting a delightful scene.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(24) *Jalāsāyānekasugandhagandhā  
surindauyyānajalāsāyava  
savanti najjo suvirā jamānā  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord of Great Benefactor, all the lakes and ponds, like those in the gardens of Sakka, the ruler of the Devas, permeated with sweet scents and the rivers flowing swiftly with strong currents make a whole fascinating scene

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(25) *Vicittatitthehi atankatā ca  
mamiñanananāmiḡapakḡhipāsā  
nājjo virocanti susandamānā  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, rows of fascinating riverine towns adorn the rivers along their course, and like traps, these rivers attract various delightful birds of passage. Flowing swiftly and ceaselessly, they are beautiful to behold.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu the country of your birth.

(26) *Ubosu passesu jalāsayesu  
supupphitā cārusugandharukkḡhā  
vibhūsitaggā surasundarīva  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, the trees on the banks of lakes and ponds on either side of the route are in full blossom and the whole region is permeated with sweet scents. With the fresh and decorative sprigs and leaf shoots gorgeously adorning their tops they look like gracious maidens of the world of celestial beings.

Venerable Lord, of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(27) *Sugandhanānādumajalakiñṇam  
vanāṃ vicittāṃ suranandanāṃva  
manobhirāmaṃ satatāṃ gatīnam  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, the woody section of the road permeated with sweet scent from the fragrant trees is wonderful like

the Nandavana of the celestial world; it is a perpetual source of joy, a locality of peace and tranquility for the travelling bhikkhus and the laity.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(28) *Sampanna nanāsuciāmapānā  
savvyāñjanā sādurasena yuttā  
pathesu gāme sulabha manmuñña  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānam*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, the section of the road between Rajagaha and Kapillavathu is lined up with villages where varieties of hygienic food-stuff, sweet-meats, delicacies of the season are easily available at this time of harvesting

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(29) *Virājita āsi mahī samantā  
vicittavannā kusumāsānassa  
rattindagopehi alaṅkatīvā  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānam*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, the land above the flowing woodland is beautiful indeed. In the depths of night, as if with Indira's help, a fantastically splendid scene is created; the land glows with reddish lights reflected from red flying insects, red as drops of betel juice.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(30) *Visuddhasaddhadigunehi yuttā  
sambuddharajam abhipaṭṭhayanā  
bahūhi tattheva jānā samantā  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānam*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, along the route from Rajagaha to Kapilavatthu at the intermediate stations, all the virtuous people from the neighbourhood, with pure and holy faith, have been waiting with ardent expectation: The Lord of the three worlds, the Omniscient, the Monarch of the Dhamma, will surely come past our place, along this very route.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(31) *Vicittraārāmasupokkharāñño  
vicittranānāpadumehi channā  
bhisehi khīraṃva rasam pavāyā ti  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, the clear, clean ponds within the magnificent gardens are covered to full capacity by lilies of the choicest quality; the delicious juice from the stalks and projecting roots of the lilies is as delicious as milk and the whole area is permeated with their fragrance.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(32) *Vicittranilalicchānenalaṅkata  
manuññarukkha ubhatovakāse  
samuggatā sattasamuhabhūtā  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, on either side of the route all the trees are thickly covered with lush, extra-ordinary decorative foliage of dark-green, jutting out splendidly to great heights and resemble throngs of human beings.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

- (33) *Vicittaranilabbhanaivayātam vanam  
surindaloke iva nandanam vanam  
sabbotukam sadhusugandhapuppham  
samayo Mahāvira aṅgīrasānam*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, like a streak of wonderful dark brown clouds, the long and narrow woodland route between Rajagaha and Kapilavatthu stretches, fresh and green, resembling a covered passage of emerald, like the garden of Nandavana in the celestial abode of Sakka; the weather is fair and temperate at all seasons, and groves of various flowers emit sweet scents.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu the country of your birth.

- (34) *Subhāñjasam yojanayojanesu  
subhikkhagāmā sulabha mamūñña  
janabhikinnā sulabhannapānā  
samayo Mahāvira aṅgīrasānam*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, every yojana of the route is beautiful and delightful. To please the heart are affluent, alms-offering villages easy of access. These villages at each stop are dense with villagers and abundant alms food and drink, ungrudgingly offered, is available without much effort.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

- (35) *Pahūtachayūdakarammabhūtā  
nivasānam sabbāsukhappadātā  
visālasālā ca sabhā ca bahū  
samayo Mahāvira aṅgīrasānam*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, all along the route, there are spacious rest-houses, and assembly halls providing ample shade and water to travelling bhikkhus and laity who take shelter, to refresh and delight and give every comfort of body and mind.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

- (36) *Vicittanānāduma-saṇḍamanditā  
manuññāyyanasipokkharanno  
sumāpitā sādhusnugandhagandha  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, all along the route between Rajagaha and Kapilavatthu, virtuous and pious people have constructed ponds and garden and planted with trees of exotic varieties and the whole region is filled with sweet scents.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

- (37) *Vāto mudusitalasādhurupo  
nabhā ca abbhā vigatā samantā  
disā ca sabbāve virocayanti  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, the gently blowing breeze is soft and cool, the sky above is free from dark, brown and black threatening rain clouds and the the whole environs in all direction is clear, bright, and beautiful to view.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

- (38) *Pathe rajonuggamanatthameva  
rattiṃ pavassanti ca mandaviṭṭhī  
nabhe ca suro mudukava tāpo  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, along the route between Rajagaha and Kapilavathu, wafted by gentle breeze, only light showers fall at night, just enough to prevent the dust from arising, and during the day the sun shines softly, with tolerable brightness and heat.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(39) *Madappabāhā madahatthisangha  
kareṃsanghehi sukīlayanti  
disā vidhāvanti ca gajjayantā  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, full-grown male elephants in must, and thus strongly intoxicated, run hither and thither in the company of their true mates and merrily enjoy themselves trumpeting aloud with voices resembling the crowing of the cranes; they run where they wish out of joy and jollity.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(40) *Vanāṃ sunilāṃ abhidāssaniyaṃ  
nilabbhakūṭāṃ iva rammabhutaṃ  
vilokītānaṃ ativimhaniyaṃ  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, the route of lush, dark green woodland between Rajagaha and Kapilavatthu is really a splendid and attractive spectacle resembling masses of dark brownish clouds in the sky. To the travelling bhikkhus and laity, its charm and great beauty is a source of wonder and delight.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(41) *Vissuddhamabbhaṃ gaganāṃ surammaṃ  
maṇimayehi samalaṅkatāva  
disā ca sabbā atirocayanti  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, the sky is filled with masses of clear, silvery clouds, joyful and delightful to view. As though adorned

with precious ornaments set with emeralds, the environs are extremely beautiful to behold.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(42) *Gandhabbavijjadharakinnara ca  
sugītiyantā madhurassarena  
caranti tasmin pavane suramṇe  
samayo Mahāvīra āṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, this delightful woody part of the route between Rajagaha and Kapilavatthu is the haunt of many heavenly musicians (*Gandhabba*), beings possessed of supernatural powers (*Vijjadhara*) and mystical winged beings, Kinnaras (having the body of a bird but with a human face) who sing with melodious notes as they move or fly about.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(43) *Kilesasaṃghassa bhitāsaktehi  
tapassisanghehi nisevitam vanam  
vihāraārāmasamiddhibhutaṃ  
samayo Mahāvīra āṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, the woody route between Rajagaha and Kapilavathu abounds with abodes that are suitable for permanent residence of the hermits and monks who greatly dread the oppression of enslaving defilements.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.



(44) *Samiddhinānāphalino vanantā  
anākulā nīccamanobhirammā  
samadhipīṭim abhivaḍḍhayanti  
sāmayo Mahāvīra āṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, groves of fruit trees with various plump fruits are free from disturbance and ever delightful. The resulting tranquility of the five senses greatly promotes the development of joyful satisfaction (*piṭi*) and concentration (*samadhi*) for the travelling bhikkhus and laity.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(45) *Nisevitaṃ nekadijehi nīccāṃ  
gamena gāmaṃ satatam vasantā  
pure pure gāmavarā ca santi  
sāmayo Mahāvīra āṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, numerous birds of varying feathers take refuge in the woody tract between Rajagaha and Kapilavatthu. Every town has its own hamlet fief with villagers shifting from place to place in groups of common interest at their will and pleasure where bhikkhus can go for alms.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(46) *Vatthannapānaṃ sayanāsanāṇca  
gandhaṇca malaṇca vilepanaṇca  
tāhim samiddhā janatā bhāhu ca  
sāmayo Mahāvīra āṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, all along that route, there are numerous hamlets where commodities or consumable goods, such as food and clothing, also lodging and sweet-scents, different specimens

of flowers, perfumes of all grades, mild or strong are readily available; the whole region has many rich people of the commercial world.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(47) *Puññiddhiya sabbayasaggapattā  
janā ca tasmīn sukhītā samiddhā  
pahūtabboga vividhā vasanti  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, all along the woody tract at the many villages, there are virtuous people (enjoying the fruits of their past meritorious deeds) at the height of wealth and high reputation, and leading a life of ease and comfort. With ample wealth and numerous accessories for use, they live a luxurious life in diverse ways.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(48) *Nabe ca abbhā suvisuddhavaṇṇā  
disā ca cando svirājīto va  
rattīṇca vāto mūchisītalo ca  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, the clouds in the sky are clean and clear, the moon shines with all its brightness keeping the environs illuminated; at night, mild breeze, cool and gentle, blows softly in contrast with the biting wind of winter.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(49) *Canduggame sabba janā pahathā  
sakaṅgane cittarakata vadantā  
piyehi saddhim abhimodayanti  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, when the moon rises, the happy, merry people on mother earth sit on the floors of the verandhas of their houses; and enter into conversation. Together with their loved ones, they are full of joy.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(50) *Candassa raṁsīhi nabhaṁ viroci  
mahī ca saṁsuddhamanīññavaynā  
disā ca sabbā parisuddharupā  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānaṁ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor the silvery rays of the moon keep the sky becomingly bright. The earth also appears delightfully clean, and the environs in all directions is cool and clean.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(51) *Dure ca disvā varacanderaṁsinī  
pupphimsu puphāni mahīalasmim  
samanto gandhagunatthikānam  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānaṁ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, for the benefit of those lovers of sweet scents, various species of flowers all over the earth are in blossom through contact with the beams of the moon shining at great distance in the sky.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(52) *Candassa raṁsihi vilimpitāva  
mahī samantā kūsumen'laṅkatā  
viroci sabbaṅgasumālinīva  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānaṁ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, the entire surface of the earth looks splendid as though it has been besmeared with the cool, clear, silvery beams of the moon, and beautified and adorned with various night-blooming flowers; it resembles a fair maid profusely and becomingly decked with flowers.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(53) *Kucanti hatthīpi madena mattā  
vicitapiñcha ca aijā samantā  
karonti nādañ pavane suramme  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānañ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, all along the route from Rajagaha to Kapilavatthu, elephants in must trumpet with their voices resembling that of the sweet sounds of cranes. Multiparous birds with strange wonderful plumage sing sweetly and merrily from all directions.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(54) *Pathañcha sabbam patipajjanakkhamam  
iddham ca ratham sadhanam sabhogam  
sabbathutam sabbasukhappadānam  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānañ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, winter has gone and the summer has just set in; it is the most opportune time to go on a journey. The countryside is rich and prosperous and replete with the seven characteristics, is worthy of praise and capable of giving comfort to mind and body.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(55) *Vanāñca sabbañ suvicittarūpañ  
sumāpitañ nandanakānananva  
yatīna pītiñ satatañ jenetī  
samayo Mahāvīra āṅgīrasānañ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, the stretch of road ahead is wonderfully beautiful resembling the enchanted garden of Nandavana created by the virtue of Devas; To monks travelling through the woodland it is ever a source of innocent delight in the beauty of wood and forest, in contrast to those associated with the five objects of sensual pleasures.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(56) *Alaṅkatañ devapurañva rammañ  
Kapilavatthum iti namameyyañ  
kulanagarañ idha sassirikañ  
samayo Mahāvīra āṅgīrasānañ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, the residential capital of your royal parents, relatives and their descents, Kapilavatthu, so named for being established on the site of the monastery of Kapila, a holy hermit, is as delightful as Tavatimsa, the beautiful abode of celestials.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(57) *Mamaññāattavicittarūpañ  
suphullapañkeruhasaṅdamāṇḍitañ  
vicittaparikhāhi purañ surammañ  
samayo Mahāvīra āṅgīrasānañ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, the city of Kapilavatthu is majestic with turrets, bastions and tiered-roofed structures. Fields of lovely lilies in full bloom adorn it and wonderful moats make it extremely delightful.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(58) *Vicittapākārañca toraṇāñca  
subaṅgaṇaṃ devanivāsabūtaṃ  
mamunnavīthi suralokasannitaṃ  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, the royal capital city of Kapilavatthu has a magnificent wall around it, a strong, reinforced gateway, with the surface of the ground even as the face of a drum. The seat of the descendents of the ruling monarchs, with a delightful and clean and broad road-way, it is like the city of Tavatimsa, the abode of the celestials.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(59) *Alaṅkata sākiyāra japuttā  
virajamānā varabhūsanehi  
surīṅdaloke iva devaputtā  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, the princes, scion of the unbroken dynasty of monarchs of Kapilavatthu, being bedecked with best, radiant costumes, are as graceful as their counterparts of the Kingdom of Tavatimsa where Sakka rules supreme.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(60) *Suddhodano munivaraṃ abhidassanāya  
amaccaputte dasadhā apesayi  
balenaṃ saddhim mahatā muninda  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānaṃ*

Venerable Lord and Great Benefactor, Most Exalted Chief of the Munis. Your father, King Suddhodana, being desirous of seeing and paying homage to you, his son, the most Exalted of noble Munis, in consideration of lengthy separation and in view of his ripe old age, had sent ten groups of ministers for ten times, each group accompanied by one thousand attendants charged with the responsibility of inviting you to the Royal City.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(61) *Nevāgatam passati neva vacam  
sokābhībhūtam naravīrasetham  
to setumicchāmi narādhipattam  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānam*

Most Exalted Chief of the Munis, (In spite of his efforts) your old father King Suddhodana has pathetically not yet seen you come nor has he even heard the news whether you will or will not make the visit.

The supreme valorous monarch; your father, is depressed by anxiety and sorrow; my ardent prayer is that the desire of the gracious King be joyously fulfilled by the vision of your face.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(62) *Tam dassanenabbhuta pītirāsi  
udikkhāmanam dvipadānamindam  
to sehi tam munīnda gunasetham  
samayo Mahāvīra aṅgīrasānam*

Most Exalted Chief of the Munis, It is certain that your old gracious father, King Suddhodana will be extraordinarily moved with joy by your presence before him. Let the ardent wish of the gracious ruler, King Suddhodana, the praiseworthy benefactor providing sustenance to all human beings, who have been awaiting your coming be joyously fulfilled by the vision of your face.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(63) *Āsāya kassate khettaṃ  
bijaṃ āsāya vappati  
āsāya vāṇija yanti  
samuddaṃ dhanahāraḱā  
yāya āsāya tiṭṭhami  
sā me āsā samijjhatu.*

Most Exalted Chief of the Munis, a farmer ploughs the field many times with the expectation of securing crops and grains; having furrowed the field repeatedly, he proceeds to sow the seeds with great effort with the expectation of procuring a good harvest. People of commercial world go, carrying their goods in big ships across the ocean rife with dangerous fish, tortoise, huge crabs, at the risk of their lives and with the expectation of securing wealth. So also, I, Kaludayi, your birth mate, have arrived at your feet (in the Veluvana monastery) with the good wish and expectation that you will visit the royal city and grant your gracious permission to the Royal family to pay homage to you. May my good and sincere wish be fulfilled without delay.

Venerable Lord of Mighty Diligence, Mahavira, with lustrous body, the time is opportune to (pay a) visit to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.

(64) *Nātisītam natiuhnaṃ  
nātidubbhikkhachātakam  
saddalā haritā bhūmi  
esa kalo Mahāmuni*

Most Exalted Chief of the Munis, at this transitional period from winter to summer, the weather is neither very cold nor very hot. At this time of harvesting and fair weather, food is abundant and there is no problem of hunger and privation. The whole earth is emerald-tinted and verdant with tender Bermuda grass and this special period of the late winter-early summer is the most opportune time to travel to Kapilavatthu, the country of your birth.



This is how Kaludayi Mahathera addressed the Tathagata with sixty beautifully composed stanzas of praise, persuading him to visit the Royal City of Kapilavatthu.

(N.B. Herein it should be noted especially that, although the actual total number of stanzas is sixty four, commentaries and Sub-commentaries count them as sixty; thus there is a slight difference of four stanzas as in the case of Atthasalini Mula Tika where *kilesas* are counted in like manner, allowing such negligible numbers to go unheeded on the strength of canonical saying "*appakam hi unam adhikam va gananupagam na hoti*-such small shortage or excess should be neglected.")

On such a presentation being made by Kaludayi Mahathera, Tathagata responded, "Son Kaludayi, why do you urge me to visit Kapilavatthu by presenting such words of praise and in such a sweet tone?" Kaludayi Mahathera answered: "Most Exalted One, your old father, King Suddhodana wishes so much to pay homage to you and the Sangha. I pray that you may do honour to the royal relatives by your visit". Then the Tathagata granted his request in these words: "Your request is granted, son, Kaludayi. You may give intimation to the Sangha of my forth coming visit to Kapilavatthu to do honour to the royal relatives, and they will perform usual, formal rites as demanded by this occasion". "Very well, my Lord", replied Kaludayi Mahathera and duly informed the 2000 bhikkhus as he was bid.

This is the end of the chapter on Kaludayi Mahathera's presentation to Tathagata of sixty verses of invitation to the royal city of Kapilavatthu.

End of Chapter Sixteen



## CHAPTER SEVENTEEN

### **Tathagata making the journey to Kapilavatthu accompanied by twenty thousand Arahats.**

The Tathagata left Veluvana monastery, Rajagaha, for Kapilavatthu accompanied by twenty thousand Arahats made up of ten thousand Arahats who came from the good families of Anga and Magadha and ten thousand Arahats who came from the good families of Kapilavatthu, (on the waning moon of *Phagguna* (Tabaung) 103, Great-Era), travelling at the rate of one yojana per day hoping to cover the distance of sixty yojanas to Kapilavatthu within two months. Such a mode of travel, which is not too fast, is termed '*aturita*'.

### **Throughout the journey, the Tathagata satisfied himself with the food sent from the royal palace of King Suddhodana**

As the Tathagata left for the royal city of Kapilavatthu adopting the *aturita* mode of travelling, Kaludayi Mahathera thought to himself: "I might go ahead to inform King Suddhodana of the Tathagata's departure for Kapilavatthu", and he proceeded to the royal city through the air by supernatural power (*Iddhividha abhiñña*) and descended in the royal palace. King Suddhodana was moved with joy when he saw Kaludayi Mahathera and greeted him with words of warm welcome. "Welcome, beloved Kaludayi, take your seat on the royal throne (a seat befitting noble personalities) and he offered Kaludayi Mahathera a bowl of specially delicious food prepared for himself, filling the alms-bowl to capacity.

When Kaludayi Mahathera showed signs of preparing for departure, King Suddhodana said, "Please take your meal on the throne"; the Mahathera replied, "Noble King, I will take this food only in the presence of the Tathagata". Then the King inquired, "Beloved Kaludayi, where is the Tathagata?". Kaludayi Mahathera replied, "The Tathagata, accompanied by twenty thousand Arahats is on his way to see you", The king was extremely glad to hear this welcome news and said, "I pray thee then, take your meal which I have just offered at the

palace and please do come every day to fetch food for the Tathagata up to the time of his arrival here". Kaludayi Mahathera gave his assent by keeping silent.

Having completed feeding the Mahathera at the palace, King Suddhodana caused his bowl to be cleaned with scented powder before filling it with delicious soft and hard food and handed it to the Mahathera, saying, "Please offer it to the Tathagata". Kaludayi Mahathera sent up the bowl into the air ahead of him, and rising up himself made his way through the air while the officials and courtiers were looking on. He then made his offering of the alms-bowl to the Tathagata who partook of the meal brought thus by Kaludayi from his royal father. Kaludayi Mahathera went every day to the King's palace and brought food for the Tathagata who satisfied himself with the food thus offered by his royal father throughout the whole journey.

Venerable Kaludayi used to announce every day after his meal at the golden palace of Kapilavatthu, by saying, "The Tathagata has covered this much of the journey today". With this preface, he told the whole of royal family the glorious attributes of the Tathagata. He did this with the object of sowing the seed of devoted faith in the hearts of his royal relatives even before they get the chance of seeing the Tathagata.

(It is for this reason that the Tathagata said, at a subsequent "Etadagga" conferring ceremony, "*etadaggaṃ bhikkhave mama sāvakanāṃ bhikkhūnaṃ kulappasādakānaṃ yadidaṃ Kaludāyi*" meaning, "Bhikkhus, Kaludayi excels others in the matter of promoting faith and devotion of the royal relatives towards me".)

This was how the Tathagata and twenty thousand Arahats arrived at the city of Kapilavatthu, safe and sound, in two months' time, on the first waxing moon of *Vesakha* (Kasone) in the year 104 of the Great Era, after covering a distance of sixty yojanas by adopting the *Aturita* method of travelling one yojana per day.

**Tathagata's display of the Twin Miracle to subdue the royal relatives' pride of high birth.**

All the members of the Sakyan clan headed by King Suddhodana gathered together to consider how they should pay respect to the Buddha, their noble blood relative, on his arrival at the city of Kapilavatthu. (The first item on the agenda was) to consider the question of accommodation for the Tathagata, and they eventually came to the unanimous decision, that the park of the Sakyan Prince Nigrodha is delightful and the most suitable spot, being replete with every convenience, such as, shady trees, sources of water, proximity to the town, adequate and easy means of communication, and above all, seclusion- the five necessary provisions that would please Buddhas. And then they kept the park in reserve for the accommodation of the Buddha. When all the preparations had been made, they left in the following order, each holding flowers to welcome the Tathagata.

- (a) Fully dressed boys and girls (sons and daughters of the common towns people) took the lead in procession.
- (b) They were followed by the princes and princesses in their full ceremonial dresses.
- (c) The rest of the Sakyan clan came next holding offerings of flowers and aromatic powder, which they made to the Tathagata. The long procession of welcome headed for the Nigrodha park.

On arrival at the Nigrodha Park accompanied by twenty thousand Arahats, the Buddha seated himself on the Dhamma Throne prepared and kept in readiness for him.

Being stern and haughty through pride of birth, the Sakyan family members thought to themselves, "Prince Siddhattha is very junior to us in respect of age, being our young brother, young nephew, young son, grand son"; so they told the young princes, "You, young folks, may pay homage. As for us, we will sit behind you". On seeing this Tathagata realized the inner feeling and strong pride of birth of the Sakyans and thus considered and decided: "My haughty relatives have grown old in years profitlessly and thus do not make reverence to me. My conceited

relatives are totally ignorant of "the real nature of a Self-Enlightened Buddha; the might and glory of Buddhas; They do not know such is the nature of a Self-Enlightened One; and such is the might and glory of the Buddhas." Now I will let them know the real might and glory of a Buddha by the demonstration of Twin Miracle involving simultaneous streaming forth of water and fire from various parts of my body, and will create at the same time a Walk in the sky extending to ten thousand world systems on which I shall walk to and fro, pouring down the Dhamma rain on those beings who are gathered here according to the varying degrees of their inner disposition." For this decision of the Tathagata, all the Devas and Brahmas in the ten thousand universes proclaimed instantly, "Sadhu, Sadhu" in praise of the Exalted Buddha.

Immediately after the thought and decision, the Buddha entered into the Fourth Jhana which had white colour (*Odāta kasina*) as its object of meditation, and arising therefrom he willed that "Ten thousand world systems be illuminated" and the ten thousand world systems became illuminated instantly much to the delight of men, Devas and the Brahmas. While they were thus exulting, the Tathagata went up the sky through supernormal power derived from the Fourth Jhana attainment and demonstrated the Twin Miracle of streaming alternately water and fire from twelve different sites of the body'

(1) upward and downward; (2) front and back of the body; (3) left and right eyes, (4) ears; (5) nose; (6) shoulders; (7) hands; (8) sides of the body; (9) legs; (10) fingers and toes and spaces in between them; (11) every hair of the body; (12) pores of every hair of the body.

The Twin Miracle of fire-water in pairs springing from those parts or limbs of the body and producing alternately different patterns was a matter for endless praise and admiration and it looked as if showers of particles from the soles of the Tathagata were scattered on the heads of the Sakyan royalty -- a strange and wonderful spectacle witnessed by men, Devas and Brahmas.

**Obeisance made by the royal father King Suddhodana  
for the third time.**

When King Suddhodana saw this strange and awesome spectacle of the Twin Miracle, he bowed solemnly and addressed the Tathagata "Glorious, Exalted son, on the day of your birth, as I tried to raise the clasped hands towards Kaladevila hermit so as to show him respect, I saw your pair of feet being raised up and placed firmly on the head of the hermit. That was the occasion when I made obeisance to you for the first time. And on the day of performing the Ploughing Ceremony, we kept you in an excellent spot under the cool shade of a Eugenia tree; (although the shades of other trees shifted with time) the shade of that Eugenia tree kept on protecting you without changing position with the passage of time; that was when I paid homage at your feet for the second time. Now that I have witnessed the never-before seen, extraordinarily strange spectacles of the Twin Miracle, I bow at your feet in homage for the third time.

When the royal father King Suddhodana made obeisance to the Tathagata, all the members of the royal family without exception, could not help but pay homage to the Tathagata.

**Creation of the Jewelled Walk and teaching the Dhamma**

After subduing the pride of the royal relatives, with the demonstration of the Twin Miracle in the sky and after duly considering the workings of the mind of the people, as the Buddha desired to teach them the Dhamma according to their mental disposition, while he walked to and from, he created a Jewelled Walk finished with all kinds of gems, extending east and west even beyond the ten thousand universes.

The following is a brief sketch of the magnitude of the Walk. With this Universe as the center, ten thousand Meru mountains belonging to the ten thousand universes formed the mainstay of the entire structure of the Walk and the whole file of posts was made to shine golden yellow like golden posts. Above this was created the clean and broad surface of the Jewelled Walk; the eastern perimeter of the walk rested

on the eastern edge of the eastern most universe, and in the same way the western perimeter rested on the edge of the western most universe.

The bordering surfaces on either side of the Walk were golden in colour; the middle portion of the entire walk was filled with earth of rubies, and the rafters, beams, purlins were finished with various kinds of shining gems; the roofing was of gold and the balusters lining the Walk were of gold; ruby and pearl grains were spread like sand on the entire surface of the structure, the walk resembled a rising sun lighting up all the ten directions.

The Tathagata with peerless grace and glory, characteristic of Self-Enlightened Buddhas, paced slowly up and down the walk. The Devas and Brahmas from ten thousand Universes gathered together bringing *Mandārava* flowers, *Padumā* lilies and flowers of Indian coral tree (*Erythrina Indica*) and scattering them on the Walk made their offerings and homage.

(N.B. As regards the *Erythrina Indica* tree, it should be mentioned here that, while the thirty three lads of virtue headed by the youthful Magha were performing meritorious deeds in the human world, they planted such a tree, so that people might take shelter with ease and comfort. As a result of that good deed, an *Erythrina Indica* tree appeared in Tavatimsa Deva realm (where they were reborn); the sweet fragrance of its seasonal flowers permeated the whole of ten thousand yojana extent of that celestial world.)

As the Tathagata walked to and fro on the Jewelled Walk, some celestial beings paid homage from their abodes, while others out of joy gathered at various places. All those in the world of men, Devas and Brahmas, together with Nagas, Garudas, and Kinnaras joyously worshipped the Tathagata walking to and fro on the Jewelled Walk, looking like a moon at full waxing. (With the exception of *Assaṃṣa* Brahmas and Formless Brahmas) all the Brahmas in the fifteen *Rupāvacara Brahma* worlds, in their immaculately white garments paid their homage with clasped hands uttering such words of praise as: Victor of the five Maras, Promoter of well-being of all beings, Protector of interests of all beings, One who has compassion for all



beings. Flowers of brown, yellow, red, white, dark-green colour mixed with powdered sandal-wood were thrown into the air in volumes in worship. Like pennants flown in the sky they also briskly waved their Brahmana scarves as an act of worship.

(N.B. There are twenty stanzas uttered by the Brahmas in praise of the Buddha in the Pali Canon; for particulars, readers may refer to Buddhavamsa Pali Text.)

### The arrival of the Venerable Sariputta and the five hundred Arahats

After the demonstration of the Twin Miracle and the creation of the Jewelled Walk, while the Buddha was being paid homage by Devas and Brahmas as he walked to and fro on the Walk, Venerable Sariputta and his five hundred disciples were residing on the slopes of Mount Gijjakutta in Rajagaha. Venerable Sariputta, saw through his supernatural powers (*Dibbacakkhu Abhiñña*) the Tathagata taking his walk on the Jewelled Walk in the sky above the city of Kapilavatthu. He thought of approaching the Buddha immediately and supplicating him to reveal in full the life story of a Buddhisatta, (his many existences and stages of development before his last birth and Enlightenment). He immediately collected round him the five hundred co-resident Arahats and said:

"Venerable Sirs, the Exalted Buddha is performing the Twin Miracle together with the demonstration of supernatural power of unveiling the world (*lokavivarana Abhiñña*) to be admired and revered by the whole world. We will go to see the demonstrations of these miraculous powers and make homage to the Tathagata. Come, Venerable Sirs, we will all go to the presence of the Buddha and make the request to recount the course of practices for Enlightenment under taken in the past as a Bodhisatta so as to dispel any doubt we may have regarding this matter."

(N.B. With regard to the words of the Venerable Sariputta, "so as to dispel any doubt", *kañkham vinodayissāma*, it might be asked, "why should the Venerable Sariputta say so as it is a fact that Arahats who have rid themselves of all *asavas* are free from

doubts?" The answer is: Sixteen forms of doubt *vicikicchā* are completely eradicated at the stage of the Stream-Winner, (*Sotapatti Magga*). Therefore Arahats no longer entertain any doubt (about the Buddha, Dhamma and Sangha or about their own past, present or future lives. The doubt, *kankha*, mentioned here by the Venerable Sariputta does not refer to the mental concomitant, (*vicikicchā*). He meant here the lack of knowledge in full about the previous existences of Bodhisatta who had become Enlightened Buddhas during the past four *asankheyyas* and a hundred thousand aeons, details concerning the world cycle in which they made their appearances, their names, clans, families, the order of their appearances, and duration of their Dispensations, etc. To state further, Venerable Sariputta wanted to request the Buddha for an account of the whole lineage, clan, family, tradition, etc., (*Buddhavamsa*) which could be given only by a Buddha; it is the province of a Buddha only, not of a Pceekabuddha, nor of a disciple. Not being within his province, Sariputta said, "Let us dispel the doubt by approaching the Buddha with this request". (As explained in *Buddhavansa Commentary*.)

On being urged thus by the Venerable Sariputta, five hundred co-resident Arahats quickly gathered round him, carrying robes and alms bowls in readiness.

Then the Venerable Sariputta accompanied by the five hundred Arahats travelled through the air by means of supernormal psychic powers (*Iddhividha Abhiññā*) and paid homage to the Buddha who was still pacing up and down the Jewelled Walk. The five hundred Arahats also paid homage in silence without coughing or sneezing but with deep veneration. Along with Venerable Sariputta were the senior Theras Maha Moggallana, Maha Kassapa, etc. who also remained in the sky making obeisance to the Buddha.

#### Tathagata's exposition of his own attributes

As the Tathagata was aware of the intense enthusiasm and devotional faith springing in the five hundred Arahats headed by the Venerable

Sariputta, he proceeded to expound his own attributes and attainments, beginning with the verse:

*Cattaro te asancheyyā  
Koti yesam na nāyati . . . .*

Dear son, Sariputtara, there are four 'Immensities' which are innumerable, incalculable; their beginning and the end are unknowable, unfathomable. They are (1) beings in general (2) wide open spaces (3) universes (4) *Sabbānṃuta Nāna* of Fully-Enlightened Buddhas.

(At this time, the minds of Devas and men were full of wonder of the Buddha's miraculous creation. As if he were urging the Devas and men, "there are still things that excel the wonderful miracles I have just created. Listen also to the revelation of those exceedingly wonderful miracles", the Buddha went on expansively.)

"Sariputta, besides the foregoing miraculous creations, there are many exceedingly wonderful things which have never occurred before, and which when revealed will surely cause your hairs to stand on end. (To recount them briefly:)

"After my death as King Vesantara, (having fulfilled Perfections (*pāramī*), sacrifices (*cāga*) and virtues through practice (*cariya*), while I was waiting the time of attainment of Buddhahood) as a celestial being called Santusita, enjoying the divine bliss in the Tavatimsa realm of devas, for fifty seven crores and six million years reckoned in terms of human life, Devas and Brahmas from ten thousand world systems, gathered in my presence and made the supplication:

O! Bodhisatta Deva, freed from all suffering, you have already fulfilled ten *pāramīs* extended into thirty categories<sup>1</sup>, three kinds of *cariyā*<sup>2</sup> and ten kinds of *cāga*<sup>3</sup>, not with the desire to gain the bliss of a 'Wheel-turning' Monarch, or of Sakka, the ruler of Devas, or of Maras or of Brahma; you had fulfilled these Perfections aspiring only after Buddhahood in order to liberate the multitude of sentient beings. O!

<sup>1</sup> *Pāramī* - See f.n. page 15, Vol. I, Part I.

<sup>2</sup> *Cariya* - See f.n. page 15, Vol. I, Part I

<sup>3</sup> *Cāga* - See f.n. page 15, Vol. I, Part I.

Bodhistta Deva, freed from all suffering, the propitious time you have longed for to attain Buddhahood has come!

O! Energetic Bodhisatta Deva, the time is now ripe for you to become an Omniscient Buddha; may you take conception in the womb of the royal mother Maya. Rescuing all beings including Devas from the current of *samsara*, may you realize the Deathless Nibbana." Thus they made their supplication.

"I did not, however readily give my consent to their supplication. I first made five great investigations as following:

(1) appropriate time for the appearance of a Buddha (2) appropriate island continent for the appearance of a Buddha (3) appropriate country for the appearance of a Buddha, (4) clan or family into which the Bodhisatta would be reborn (5) the span of life of the Bodhisatta's mother. I gave my consent only after making these five great investigations, "My friends, Devas and Brahmas, the time is indeed ripe for me to become a Buddha (as you have said)". Having lived the full life-term in the Tusita Deva realm, I entered the womb of my royal mother, Maha Maya, a descent of the unbroken line of the Sakyan rulers.

As I took conception in the womb of my mother with mindfulness and comprehension, ten thousand universes trembled and quaked.

Without forsaking mindfulness and comprehension, I came out of my mother's womb, standing erect, with arms and legs stretched straight, like a preaching bhikkhu descending from the Dhama throne or a man coming down the stairway at the entrance of a pagoda, without any trace of unwholesome filth besmearing my body, (on Friday, the Full-moon of Vesakha, in the year 68, Great Era.) At that time also, ten thousand Universes trembled and quaked (as if to cheer the occasion)

"My son, Sariputta, there is none to equal me as a Bodhisatta, in the manner of taking conception and of coming out from the mother's womb (At the moment of descending into the mother's womb, during ten months in the mother's womb, and at the moment of birth, on all the three occasions, he remained mindful with full comprehension; hence such an utterance.) (Again *Arahatta-magga Nāna* of certain

disciples results in *Arahatta-phala Nana* only; that of some disciples gives rise to three *Vijjās* only and that of some others produces six forms of *Abhinnā*, whereas some disciples achieve *Patisambhida Nāna* through *Arhatta magga*, others gain only *Savaka Parami Nāna*, and *Pacceka Buddhas* attain only *Pacceka Bodhi Nāna* for their achievement of *Arahatta-magga Nāna*. The *Arahatta-magga Nāna* of all Buddhas, however, brings the advantage of being instantaneously accomplished in all the attributes of Fully-Enlightened Ones. Therefore), in the matter of attainment of *Arahatta-magga Nāna*, there is none my equal; as regards *Desana Nāna* also, I am supreme. Thus the Tathagata gave an exhaustive exposition of his own attributes.

At that time, there occurred a violent earth quake as at the moment of taking conception. The ten thousand world-systems trembled and quaked in the following six modes; (1) the earth surface rose up in the east and sank down in the west; (2) it rose up in the west and sank down in the east (3) it rose up in the north and sank down in the south (4) it rose up in the north and sank down in the north; (5) it rose up in the center and sank down along the circumference; (6) it rose up along the circumference and sank down in the center. A great expanse of light, beyond the power of Devas and Brahmas, was shining with unsurpassed brilliance.

Devas and Brahmas, witnessing the awesome phenomena and also coming to know from the Tathagata's teaching that these phenomena only occurred on such occasions as the taking conception of the Bodhisatta, recited a stanza in praise thereof:

*Aho acchariyam loke  
Buddhānam gunamahantatā  
dasasahassi lokadhātu  
chappakāram pakampatha  
obhāso ca mahāāsi  
accheram lomahamsanam*

O! friend, Devas and Brahmas, Glories and attributes of Buddhas have caused earth tremors to rock ten thousand Universes and the surface of the earth rises and fall in

alternating directions: east-west, north-south and center and at the edges. A broad ray of light surpassing the power of the Devas and Brahmas has also illuminated these worlds. The wonder of this awesome phenomena has made us snap our fingers in awe and praise and our hairs to stand on end. Oh, the greatness of the many attributes of the Tathagata indeed warrants our snapping our fingers in wonder and admiration.

At that time, the Buddha was displaying the Twin Miracle and walking to and from on the Jewelled Walk by means of supernatural power. And while he was thus pacing up and down the Walk, he was expounding the Dhamma like a mighty lion king roaring, seated on a slab of red orpiment, like a thundering sky, like a man swimming across the river of the sky. With a voice of eight features, in various ways and minute details, he taught the sermon of the Four Noble Truths leading to the salient characteristics of impermanence, unsatisfactoriness and insubstantiality.

Although the Jewelled Walk covered the whole length of the ten thousand worlds, Tathagata walked to one end of it quickly and then turned back from it as if he was making the walk on a path measuring only four cubits; he actually walked on the Jewelled Walk from end to end, not turning round without reaching the end.

[(Here it might be asked: Did the Tathagata, through his power, cause the shortening of such an immensely long Walk? or did he create his own body to a size corresponding to that of the Walk? (That is, Is that the work of supernormal psychic power? *iddhi visaya*?)

Here is the answer: No, It is not a creation by means of supernormal psychic power, *iddhi visaya*. The power possessed by the Omniscient One, *Buddhavisaya*, is inconceivable, beyond human imagination. It being so, the Tathagata could walk to and fro on the Jewelled Walk as he would do on a walk measuring four cubits.

It was due to this inconceivable power of the Buddhas that the whole spectacle could be witnessed right from *Akanittha Brahmas* realm to the *Avici* plane of miseries without

obstruction whatsoever. All the world systems involved became as a vast open plain adjoining one another uninterrupted, so that men could see Devas and Brahmas and vice versa. They all could see the Tathagata walking to and fro on the long walk as they would see him walking on a simple ordinary walk. The Tathagata preached as he walked, and having complete mastery over the mind, (*cittissariya*), he was absorbed in *Phalasamāpatī* during the infinitesimal fraction of time intervals while the audience was saying, 'Sadhu, Sadhu'.]

**Venerable Sariputta's request for the expounding  
of *Buddhavamsa***

The Venerable Sariputta, after paying homage to his heart's content to the Tathagata who was walking to and from with peerless grace, preaching the sermon of the Four Noble Truths, to gathering of men, Devas and Brahmas from ten thousand universes, thought to himself, "Such a united gathering of men, Devas and Brahmas from the ten thousand world systems is an unprecedented one; it should be an occasion for a great Dhamma Exposition. A discourse on the *Buddhavamsa* especially would be greatly beneficial promoting faith and devotion towards the Tathagata. It would be well if I should request the Tathagata for an exposition of his life story and the Perfections he had fulfilled from the time of receiving the definite Prophecy of becoming a Buddha." He then approached the Tathagata after slipping one end of his robe over the left shoulder and with his hands raised, made this request in three stanzas beginning with "*Kedisote mahavira,...* etc., (reproduced below in both Pali and vernacular) to expound a full discourse on the *Buddhavamsa* together with an account of the practices, he had cultivated in the past.

*Kidiso te Mahāvīra  
 abhinhāro naruttama  
 kamhi kāle tayā dhīra  
 pattiā Bodhimuttamā.*

Veneration to the Exalted One, who has exercised the Four Great Exertions (*sammappadhāna*), one who is nobler than men, superior to Devas and excels the Brahmas, the Crown of the three worlds! In what world-cycle and in what aeon, did you aspire for and resolve to attain Perfect Self-Enlightenment which excels *Pacceka Bodhi* and *Savaka Bodhi*?

*Danam Silanca nekkhamam  
 panna viriyanca kidisam  
 khanti saccamadhitthanam  
 mettupekkha ca kidisa*

Veneration to the Exalted Omniscient One, Crown of the three worlds. How should we understand and regard your Perfections such as Perfection of Alms-giving, Perfection of Morality, Perfection of Renunciation, Perfection of Wisdom, Perfection of Energy? How should we understand and regard your Perfections of Forbearance, Truthfulness, Resolution, Loving-Kindness and Equanimity?

*Dasa Pārami tayā dhīra  
 kīdisī lokanāyaka  
 kathaṃ upapāramī pumā  
 parmatthapāramī kathaṃ*

Veneration to the Exalted Omniscient One, Lord of the three worlds. May you enlighten us as to how you had fulfilled these Perfections, how you had acquired higher and higher stages of these Perfections and attained full maturity thereof? Likewise with the ten higher Perfections (*upaparami*) and the ten highest Perfections (*paramattha Parami*) in what way, in what manner had you cultivated them to acquire their maturity at the higher level of development?

N.B. (With regard to Perfection of Alms-giving, *Dāna Pāramī*, gift of external properties is ordinary *Dāna Pāramī*, gift of one's own limbs, big and small is *Dāna-upapāramī*, gift of life is



*Dāna-paramattha Pāramī*. The same principle of classification applies to nine other Perfections. Thus, observance of morality at the sacrifice of external properties is ordinary *Sīla Pāramī*; observance of morality regardless of loss of one's limbs is *Sīla-upapāramī* and observance of morality regardless of losing one's own life is *Sīla-paramattha Pāramī*. This is how they should be differentiated and noted.)

For innumerable existences, the Budhisatta had fulfilled Dana and other Paramis, of which the following are of special interest:

- (1) When he was born as a wise hare, he mistook Sakka, who was in the guise of a Brahmin, as a genuine Brahmin going round for collecting alms. So he caused a blazing bonfire to be made and offered himself by jumping into it. Such a *Dāna* is *Dāna-paramattha Pāramī*. (As told in 7-Sasa Pandita Jataka, 2-Pucimanda Vagga of Catukka Nipata.)
- (2) When he was born as Naga-king Sankhapala he endured the agony of wounds resulting from a ruthless attack by sixteen hunters with spears at eight places on his body after being impaled on a stake. Without showing resentment he offered his life and maintained the observance of his precepts. Such a *sīla* comes under the category of *Sīla-paramattha Pāramī*. (As told in Sankhapala Jataka of Catalisa Nipatta)
- (3) When he was King Cula Sutasoma, he abdicated the throne of the country of Sudassana (ancient Baranasi) without fear of danger to his life and without attachment to the luxury of kingship and abnegated himself. Such an act of renunciation is called *Nekkhamma-paramattha Pāramī*. (Culasoma Jataka, Cattalisa Nipata)
- (4) When he was born as a wise man by the name of Senaka, he saved the life of a Brahmin by revealing, as if he had seen with his eyes, the presence of a cobra in the leather bag containing the Brahmin's food. Such an exhibition of wisdom which had saved the life of the owner of the leather bag; comes under the

category of *Paramattha Pañña Pāramī*. (Sattubhasthe Jataka of Sattaka Nipata).

- (5) When he was born as a Prince named Janaka, his undaunted effort to swim across the ocean in the face of odds and without despair, while his fellow travelers were perishing and meeting with destruction, reflects Prince Janaka's great perseverance. Such a remarkable persevering effort belongs to the category of *Paramattha Vīriya Pāramī*. (The Maha Janaka Jataka of Maha Nipata)
- (6) When he was a hermit named Khantivadi, King Kalabu of the country of Kasi, cut off his hands and feet with a sharp axe. He was unmoved and bore the suffering as though he were a piece of log that lacked sensation and consciousness; he also showed no resentment to the king. Such an act of forbearance comes under the category of *Paramattha Khantī Pāramī*. (3-Khantivadi Jataka, 2-Pueimanda Vagga of Catukka Nipata).
- (7) When he was King Maha Sutasoma, he gave his word of honor "I will certainly return tomorrow", to the cannibal Poṇisada. He stood by his word, regardless of his own life, thereby saving the lives of one hundred and one kings. Such a righteous and truthful vocal deed (*vacisacca*) comes under the category of *sacca Paramattha Pāramī*. (Maha Sutasoma Jataka, Asiti Nipata)
- (8) When as a Bodhisatta, he was Prince Temi, he pretended to be deaf and a mute and persisted with this practice at the risk of his life up to the time of his renunciation. Such an act of resolution comes under the category of *Sacca Paramattha Adhiṭṭhāna Pāramī*. (Mugapakkha (Temiya) Jataka, Maha Nipata).
- (9) When he was a hermit by the name of Suvannasama, he cultivated loving-kindness (*mettā*) at the risk of his life. Such an act of loving-kindness comes under the category of *Paramattha Mettā Pāramī*. (Suvannasama Jataka nipata).
- (10) When he was an ascetic practicing austerities, as described in Lomahamsa Jataka, 10-Litta Vagga of Ekakanipata, he did not

allow himself to be swayed either by the perverted, corrupted demeanor of young villagers or by the various acts of reverence and homage done by the wise, thereby safe-guarding himself entirely from ill-will and greed. Such equanimous attitude of the Bodhisatta exemplifies *Upekkhā Paramattha Pāramī*.

(For full particulars of this category of *Paramattha Pāramī*, reference may be made to Cariyapitaka Commentary and other relevant Jataka Commentaries.)

On such a supplication being made by the Venerable Sariputta, Tathagata expounded two verses as if he was pouring down the Elixir of Deathlessness to keep the minds of all sentient beings in peace, urging them (1) first to listen with reverent attention to the discourse on the Chronicle of Buddhas, which will cause joy and gladness to the audience of men and Devas, eradicate the pricking sorrow in their disturbed minds and let them achieve various attainments, and (2) secondly to strive earnestly, to follow and practice the noble Path to Buddhahood which will destroy all forms of pride, vanity, which will remove various kinds of grief, sorrow, save beings from the cycle of rebirths and extinguish all suffering.

Then, in order to encourage the assembled men and Devas to become enthusiastic to aspire after Perfect Self-Enlightenment, the Tathagata gave a discourse on the Chronicle of Buddhas, adorned with nine hundred and fifty one stanzas beginning with

*Kappe ca satasahasse  
caturō ca asaṅkhiye  
amaraṃ nāma nagaraṃ  
dassaneyyaṃ manoramaṃ*

The discourse was well received and highly appreciated by the great audience of men and Devas.

At the end of the discourse on the Chronicle of Buddhas ten million crores of men, Devas and Brahmas became Arahatas having eliminated all traces of *asavas*; and innumerable beings became established in the lower stages of the Path.

(Here it should be noted that there are nine hundred and fifty one stanzas which deal wholly with the *Buddhavamsa*. In *Nidanakatha*, there are eighty one stanzas comprising a mixture of words of the *Mahātheras* who participated in the Council (*Saṅgītikāra*ka), words of the Venerable *Sariputta* and those of the *Tathagata*; and thirty eight stanzas in *Pakiṇṇaka* section and *Dhatubhājaniya kathā*, being words of the *Saṅgītikāra*ka *Mahā Theras*, thus totaling one thousand seventy stanzas in the whole of *Budhavamsa Pali Text*.)

**End of Chapter Seventeen.**

## APPENDIX TO CHAPTER SEVENTEEN

### Explanatory note concerning Gotama Buddhavamsa.

We have so far described the name, clan, family etc. of the twenty-four Buddhas, from Dipankara Buddha to Kassapa Buddha in one piece as mentioned in the Buddhavamsa Pali Text and relevant Commentaries in chronological order.

For the Gotama Buddhavamsa which we are dealing with presently also, an attempt has been made to compile it as complete as possible on the basis of the Buddhavamsa Pali Text and Commentary as well as relevant extracts from other Pali Texts and Commentaries.

Concerning this Gotama Buddhavamsa, the learned readers may wish to read the chronology that deals exclusively with the Gotama Buddha as originally delivered by himself; we will therefore render those twenty-four stanzas in plain Myanma.

Gotama Buddha (on the request made by the Venerable Sariputta), having expounded exhaustively the part of the Buddhavamsa concerning the twenty-four Buddhas from Dipankara to Kassapa, pouring forth the discourse like the sky river overflowing, proceeded to expound the facts concerning himself, from the Jewelled Walk up in the sky, in twenty-four stanzas as follows:

#### The first great occasion of Dhamma teaching

- (1) *Ahametarahi Sambuddho*  
*Gotamo Sakyavaddhano*  
*padānaṃ padahitvāna*  
*patto Sambodhimuttāmaṃ*

Dear son, Sariputta, I, a descendent of the Gotama lineage which has made the Sakya royalty thrive, after six years of energetic effort at meditation (*padhana*) attained the Exalted State of Omniscience.

- (2) *Brahmunā yācito santo*  
*Dhammacakkaṃ pavattayim*  
*attharasannaṃ koṭṭināṃ*  
*patthamābhisamayo ahu*

Dear son, Sariputta, at the request of Sahampati Brahma in the eighth week after my Enlightenment, I had delivered the Sermon of *Dhammacakka* in the Deer park, at Isipathana, Baranasi. On that occasion, (for the first time) eighteen crores of Brahmas headed by Kondanna Thera realised the Four Noble Truths and achieved liberation.

**The second great occasion of Dhamma teaching.**

(3) *Tatho parañca desente  
naradevasamāgame  
ganañāya na vattabbo  
dutiyaḅbisamayo ahu*

Dear son, Saraputta, subsequent to my teaching of the *Dhammacakka*, when I deliver the discourse of *Mangala Sutta*, at the assembly of men and Devas debating the question of the beatitudes, *Mangala*, it will be the second occasion of innumerable men, Devas and Brahmas coming to realize the Four Noble Truths and achieving liberation.

(This second great occasion of Dhamma teaching will take place subsequent to the discourse on the *Buddhavamsa*. This also applies to the stanzas that follow.)

**The third great occasion of Dhamma teaching**

(4) *Idhevāham etarahi  
ovadiṃ mama atrajaṃ  
ganañāya na vattabbo  
tatiyaḅbhisamayo ahu.*

(Thirteen years after my attainment of Buddhahood, I will exhort my son young bhikkhu Rahula by delivering the discourse of *Cula Rahuiovada* in the *Andhavana* Grove of Savatthi. (At that time also,) innumerable men, Devas, and Brahmas will come to realize the Four Noble Truths and achieve liberation.

**The first occasion of the Disciples meeting. (*Savaka sannipata*).**

(5) *Ekosi Sannipāto me  
savakānaṃ mahesinaṃ  
addhatelasatānaṃ  
bhikkhūnāsi samāgamo*

Dear son, Sariputta, a congregation of disciples had been held (on the last Full-moon day of Magha) for the first time; it was an assemblage of one thousand two hundred and fifty bhikkhu Arahats who had done away with the *asavas*.

(This refers to the Buddha's preaching of *Ovada Patimokkha*, instructions on the obligation of a bhikkhu at the congregation of disciples, characterised by four features<sup>4</sup>. It was the day on which the Venerable Sariputta gained Arahatship.

**Services rendered by the Buddha.**

(6) *Virocamāno vimalo  
bhikkh. sanghassa majjhago  
dadāmi pattitam sabbam  
mañiva sabbakāmodo*

Dear son, Sariputta, I also, like the previous Buddhas, being replete with infinite grace characteristic of the Buddhas, and free from the taints of *kilesa*, stand becomingly in the midst of the Sangha and like the *ciñtamani* ruby capable of fulfilling every wish, have been fulfilling the wishes of men, Devas and Brahmas for special mundane and supramundane happiness.

(7) *Phalamākañkhamānānaṃ  
bhavacchanda jahesinaṃ  
catusaccaṃ pakāsemi  
amukampaya pāṇinam*

Dear son, Sariputta, for the benefit of men, Devas and Brahmas who wish to attain the four Fruitional stages of the Path and do away with

<sup>4</sup> Four features, See Chapter Sixteen page 12

attachment to sensuous existence, I have, out of compassion, expounded the Four Noble Truths (to enable them achieve their wish).

(This is an instance of how Tathagata brings about the benefit of all beings by way of expounding the Four Noble Truths.)

(8) *Dasavīśasahassānaṃ*  
*Dhammābhisayo ahu*  
*ekadvinnam abhisamayo*  
*gananāto asaṅkhiyo*

Dear son, Sariputta, (As the result of such expositions of the Four Noble Truths) rational beings, numbering ten thousand after one session, or twenty thousand after another, have become emancipated; of those other cases of beings gaining freedom in twos or threes, the number is incalculable.

(9) *Vitthārikaṃ bāhujāññaṃ*  
*iddham phītaṃ suphullitaṃ*  
*idha mayhaṃ sakyamunino*  
*Sāsanaṃ suvisodhitaṃ*

Dear son, Sariputta, I, a descendent of Sakyān royal family, have renounced the world to become a recluse and have taught the Dhamma; this Teaching of mine, *Sāsana*, shall spread in the three worlds (of men, Devas and Brahmas) and many beings discerning it clearly shall thrive exceedingly, pure and radiant.

(10) *Anāsavā vitarāgā*  
*santacittā samāhitā*  
*bhikkhūnekasatā sabbe*  
*parivārenti mam sadā*

Dear son, Sariputta, I am at all times surrounded by a great number of bhikkhus who are free from *asavas*, having given up *raga*, and who with tranquilised mind possess serene concentration like an oil lamp burning steadily in the still air.



- (11) *Idani ye etarahi*  
*jahanti māmusāṃ bhavaṃ*  
*appattamānasā sekhā*  
*te bhikkhū vinnugarahitā*

Dear son' Sariputta, there are certain bhikkhus who, even in my life time, have to depart life as mere trainees (*sekkha*) without having attained *Arahattaphala*. They are reproached by the wise.

- (12) *Ariyāñjasaṃ thomayantā*  
*sada dhammratā janā*  
*bujjhissanti satimanto*  
*samsārasaritam gatā.*

Dear son, Sariputta, those mindful people who extol the virtues of Noble Eight-fold Path and take delight in the Dhamma day and night will be able to cross the ocean of *Samsara* within a limited number of existences, and gain emancipation through realisation of the Four Noble Truths.

**Place of birth, etc.**

- (13) *Nagaraṃ Kapilavatthu me*  
*Rajā Suddhodano pitā*  
*mayham janettikā Mātā*  
*Māyādevīti vuccati*

Dear son, Sariputta, my place of birth is Kapilavatthu, my father is King Suddhodana and my royal mother is Maya Devi.

- (14) *Ekunatimsavassāni*  
*agāraṃ ajjhahaṃ vasim*  
*rammo surammo subhako*  
*tayo pāsādamuttamā*

Dear son, Sariputta, I had been a ruler of the Kapilavatthu country for fully twenty-nine years, residing in three palaces: the winter palace with nine tiered-spire, Ramma; the summer palace with five tiers, Suramma and the seven-tiered palace for the rainy season, Subha.

- (15) *Cattarīsasahassāni  
nāriyo samalāṅkatā  
Bhaddakañcana nāma nāri  
Rahulo nāma atrajo*

Dear son, Sariputta, during the period of my reign, there used to be forty thousand, well ornamented and beautified female attendants; my Chief of Queen was Bhadda Kancana and my son was called Rahula.

- (16) *Nimitte caturo disvā  
assayānena nikkhamim  
chabbassam padhāncaram  
acariṃ dukkaram aham*

Dear son, Sariputta, having seen the four great omens (of an old man, a sick man, a dead man and a recluse). I had gone forth riding my horse Kandaka. (In the remote) forest of Uruvela, I spent six years taking up the practice of severe austerities, *dukkaracariya*, that is beyond the capability of ordinary persons.

- (17) *Baranasiyam Isipatane  
cakkam pavattiam mayā  
aham Gotamasambuddho  
saranam sabbapāṇinam*

Dear son, Sariputta, in Isipatana, Migadaya forest of Baranasi, I had turned the wheel of Dhamma (I had delivered the Discourse of *Dhammacakkapavattana*); indeed I have become the refuge of all beings, the Perfectly Enlightened Buddha with the family name of Gotama.

- (18) *Kolito Upatissa ca  
dve bhikkhu aggasāvaka  
Anando namupathāko  
santikāvacaro mama  
Khemā Uppalavaṇṇā ca  
bhikkhū aggasāvika*

Dear son, Sariputta, my Chief Disciples are the pair of bhikkhus, Kolita (Venerable Moggallana) and Upatissa (Venerable Sariputta); my

permanent bhikkhu attendant always close at hand (for more than twenty years) to attend to my needs is Ananda. The female Chief Disciples are the pair of bhikkhunis Khema Theri and Uppalavana Theri.

- (19) *Citto hatthālavako ca  
aggupathākupāsaka  
Nandamātā ca Uttarā  
aggupatthakupasika.*

Dear son, Sariputta, noble lay devotees rendering me close service are Citta, a wealthy householder (residing at Macchi-Kasanda in Kosala country) and Hatthalavaka, (the pious son of King Alavi of Alavi country); female attendants closely attending upon me are the female devotee Nandamata (an Anagami resident of Velukandaka, a town in Dakkhinagiri province of Rajagaha country) and the noble lay devotee Khujjutara (a Sotapanna, a Bearer of the Three Pitakas, Possessor of the title of Pre-eminence (*Etadagga*) who conceived in the womb of a maid servant of a rich man Ghosaka of Kosambbi and who became, when she came of age, a female attendant of Queen Samavati).

- (20) *Aham assatthamulamhi  
patto sambodhimuttamaṃ  
vyāmapabhā sada mayham  
solasahatthamuggatā*

Dear son, Sariputta, I attained *Arahantamagga Nana* and achieved Omniscience, at the foot of the Bodhi Tree (100 cubits tall). Light rays from my body (spreading over a radius of eighty hand-lengths) shine brilliantly at all times; my height is sixteen hand-lengths.

- (21) *Appam vassasatam āyu  
ldhānetarahi vijjati  
tāvataṃ tittamānoham  
tāremi janataṃ bahum*

Dear son, Sariputta, the present life-span (of human) is very short, limited to only one hundred years; I will live for four-fifth of this life-span (eighty years) and for forty-five years I shall be saving sentient

beings (from the ocean of samsara) conveying them to the Shore of Nibbana.

(22) *Thapayitvāna Dhammukkam  
pacchimaṃ janabodhanam  
ahampi nacirasseva  
saddhim savakasaṅghato  
idheva parinibbissam  
aggivāhārasaṅkhayā*

Dear son Sariputta, I have lit and set up the Torch of Dhamma burning, in order that the coming generations may understand the Four Noble Truths. At no distant date, in the company of my bhikkhu disciples, I will come to the Final End like a torch extinguished, with fuel expended, in this very world at Kusinara dropping the curtain on the drama of existences.

**Two Stanzas of Saṃvega**

(23) *Tāni ca atulatejāni  
Imāni ca dassahalāni  
ayaṅca gunadhārano deho  
dvattim savaralakkhanavicitto*

(24) *Dasa disā pabhāsetva  
sataram siva sappabhā  
sabbaṃ tamanarahissanti  
namu rittā sabbasaṅkkhārā*

Dear son, Sariputta, my peerless glory and power, the ten physical strengths and this person of mine, comely and wonderful to behold, embodying like a golden mountain thirty two major characteristics of a superior person together with six fold Unique Wisdom (*Asadharana Nāna*) and ten mental strengths (*Dasabala Nānas*), the six-hued rays emanating from my body, and illuminating all directions like the rays of the sun... all these things just spoken about will all perish and disappear. Are not all conditioned things, live or lifeless, vain and devoid of the essence of permanence, genuine happiness and substance? (This being so, I urge you to cultivate Insight meditation (*Vipassanā*) by contemplating on the three salient characteristics of conditioned

phenomena, and strive hard for the attainment of Nibbana. Such is the usual instruction for you all, given by the Fully Self-Enlightened Buddhas. With heedfulness, exert yourself to fulfill these, our instructions.)

With this ends the exposition connected with major events as laid down in the Buddhavamsa Pali Text and the Commentary. But U Nu, Prime minister of Union of Burma, at the time of requesting me to write a saga of the Buddhas, said inter alia:

"Please supervise the compilation of a treatise on the lives of the Buddhas. In so doing please include everything about the Buddha, not leaving out even minor details. If one volume is not enough, make it two; if two is not enough, make it four, eight and so on. It is important that the work should be exhaustive."

In consideration of his earnest request, the treatise on Mahabuddhavamsa will not be ended here; its scope will be extended to include the events that took place since the delivery of the discourse on Buddhavamsa by the Tathagata and it will be entitled "The Great Chronicle of Buddhas". To this end, an attempt will be made, to the best of my ability, to add a series of chapters on the significant events concerning the Buddha.

End of Appendix to Chapter Seventeen

THE FOURTH CHAPTER

Faint, illegible text, likely bleed-through from the reverse side of the page.

THE FIFTH CHAPTER

Faint, illegible text, likely bleed-through from the reverse side of the page.

## CHAPTER EIGHTEEN

### SHOWERS OF 'LOTUS-LEAF' RAIN AT THE ASSEMBLY OF THE ROYAL FAMILIES

The Tathagata descended from the Jewelled Walk up in the sky near the city of Kapilavatthu after subduing the pride and haughtiness of the royal relatives by delivering the discourse on the Buddhavamsa and took his seat on the 'Dhamma Throne' exclusively set up for the Buddha.

All the members of the royal family had by then assembled before the Buddha and seated themselves after becoming calm and collected; then it happened that showers of lotus-leaf rain, *pokkharavassa*<sup>1</sup>, fell heavily.

As the great rain fell, rushing streams of ruby-coloured rain water were following on the ground; while the rain water wetted those who wished to be soaked, not a drop of rain fell on those who did not want to get wet.

All the members of the royalty were struck with wonder at the sight of this miraculous scene and uttered "O a marvelous thing to be cheered by the snapping of the fingers! This is an unprecedented phenomenon, indeed!" On hearing such utterances, the Buddha made this remark; "This is not the first time that '*pokkharavassa*' rain had fallen at the assembly of the royal relatives; there was an occasion in the past when such a rain had fallen in this manner". The Buddha then

---

<sup>1</sup>(F.N: by the author ..... *Pokkharavassa* means, according to sub-commentary, rain which has the colour of lotus-leaf. Other teachers have explained it as rain which falls from the mass of rain-clouds which, at the beginning the size of the lotus leaf appearing in the middle of the sky, builds up into thousands of layers and then comes down as torrential rain. (Vinaya Saratha Dipani Tika, p 245)

continued to expound the story of Vessantara composed of one thousand stanzas.

After hearing the story of Vessantara, all the members of the royalty departed; not a single person extended the invitation such as, "Please come and receive the alms food we shall offer on the morrow", to the Buddha.

King Suddhodana thought and took it for granted that "There is no place other than my royal palace for my son, the Tathagata, to visit; he is certain to come to my palace. "Being convinced thus, he returned to his palace without extending a specific invitation. At the palace, he ordered arrangements for the preparation of rice-gruel, etc. and temporary accommodation for the twenty thousand Arahats headed by the Buddha.

#### **Buddha, accompanied by twenty thousand Arahats, entering Kapilavattu for alms-round**

When the Tathagata entered the royal city, the next day, in the company of twenty thousand Arahats, for alms-round, not a single member of the royal family came forward to greet and welcome him; there was no one to take the alms bowl from him and carry for him.

The moment the Buddha had set foot on the gate-way of Kapilavattu, he began to reflect on the way in which previous Buddhas went round for alms-food in the capital city of their royal fathers: was it characterised by receiving alms exclusively from the selected homes of the rich, the elite, or by going round for alms from door to door, rich or poor alike? He did it by way of the psychic power which gave the knowledge of the past existences, *pubbhenivasa abhinna*. Thus he came to realize that not a single Buddha in the past had received their alms-food only from the selected homes of rich; none of them had deviated from the practice of going for alms-food from door to door. So he decided to adopt the time honored traditional practice of collecting alms-food from door to door. He thought: only by setting such example by myself would my disciples emulate my practice and fulfill the duty of a bhikkhu to go for alms-round to each and every house without any breach. Having made this decision, he



SHOWERS OF 'LOTUS-LEAF RAIN AT THE ASSEMBLY OF  
THE ROYAL FAMILIES

started to go on the alms- round beginning with the first house nearest the city gate, stopping at every house one after another.

[The following is a brief description of the magnificent scene of the Tathagata's visit to the Royal City on the lines of Majjhimapannasa Commentary p. 16-17]:

When the Tathagata entered the Royal City, the earth quaked with mild intensity. He walked gently, not treading upon even the tiniest insects, such as ants and the like. He stepped forth first with the right foot possessing the major mark of "the level soles of feet like golden footwear *"supatitthita lakkhana"*; the delicate soles of his feet, being level and smooth, touched the ground evenly, fully and squarely without collecting the tiniest particles of dirt or dust. As he walked along, the low-lying areas of the earth raised themselves spontaneously to an even level and the mounds lowered to the level of the plain, forming an even surface all over; all the stones and pebbles, stumps and thorns had removed themselves from the route beforehand. He walked at a normal pace, neither too fast nor too slow, his stride neither too long nor too close, without the ankles and knees knocking against each other. Being a person of great concentration, he looked straight forward, limiting the range of vision to within four-hand's length, looking neither up nor down, nor sideways. He walked with the grace of a Chaddanta (tasks emitting six ray) elephant fully and richly caparisoned.]

When the Tathagata was on his round of receiving alms food from door to door in the city, those living in two and three-storey buildings came out on to the balconies which rested on lion image supports, to pay homage to the Bhagava, uttering, "There comes our good Lord, prince Siddhattha for receiving alms-food".

Queen Yasodhara, mother of Rahula, thought to herself, "In former days, my glorious Lord used to travel in kingly power and luxury, carried on a golden palanquin; but now, it is said, he goes about the city for alms-food with shorn head and beard, in dyed clothes, with bowl in hand. Would it be seemly or would it appear uncomely?" So thinking, she opened the balcony window with the supports of lion images and

saw for herself that the main roads as well as lanes were brilliantly illuminated by the beams of light from his body and the Tathagata going round majestically adorned with thirty-two major characteristics and eighty minor ones peculiar to the Buddhas and the six-hued aura of light surrounding him. (Pointing her fingers towards the Buddha), she drew the attention of Rahula and uttered ten 'Narasiha' stanzas in praise of the glorious personality of the Buddha from the forehead to his soles.

**Ten 'Narasiha' Stanzas**  
**( In praise of the beauteous body of the Buddha )**

(1) *Siniddhanīla mudukuñcita keso*  
*suriyanimmalābhinalāto*  
*yuttatunigamudukāyatanāso*  
*raṁsijālavitato naraśīho*

His hair is jet black and bright like the colour of a bumble bee with tapering tip curling softly clock-wise; a shining serene forehead resembling a clear rising sun; a delicate, proportionately prominent slender nose like a goad, a lustrous radiant body, the noblest of men, and extraordinary, exalted individual indeed!

(2) *Cakkavaraṅkītasurattapādo*  
*lakkhanamaṇḍitāyatapaṇhi*  
*cāmarachattavibhūsitapādo*  
*esa hi tuyha pitā naraśīho*

My eyes' delight, dear Rahu, there comes the noblest of men and extraordinary person! The soles of his feet are ruby-red and distinguished by the characteristic marks; noble characteristic marks adorn the slender heels and his pair of feet bear impressions of white umbrellas and golden yellow yak-fans. That exalted reverential person, on his round for receiving alms, surrounded by twenty thousand Arahats, like the full moon amidst stars and planets, was your father when he was a layman.

SHOWERS OF 'LOTUS-LEAF RAIN AT THE ASSEMBLY OF  
THE ROYAL FAMILIES

79

- (3) *Sakyakumārāvaro sukhumālo  
lakkhanacittikapunnasarīro  
lokahitāya gato naravīro  
esa hi tuyha pitā naraśīho*

My bosom son, Rahula, he is a gentle noble prince, a descendant of the unbroken, peerless Sakya lineage, one who has a full handsome body, with noble major and minor characteristic marks; one who has been born into this world for the welfare of the three spheres of existence, one whose industry excels that of all others, an extraordinary person, noblest of men. That exalted reverential person on his round for receiving alms in the company of twenty thousand Arahats like the full moon amidst stars and planets was your father when he was a layman.

- (4) *Āyatayuttasuta saṅghitasoto  
gopakhumo abhinīlasunetto  
Indadhamaabhinīlabhamuko  
esa hi tuyha pitā naraśīho*

My sweet son Rahula, possessing a pair of handsome ears of proportionate size, soft eye-lashes like that of a new-born calf, a pair of eyes dark like the onyx, and dark brown eye brows shaped like the curve of Sakka's bow. That exalted reverential person on his round for receiving alms in the company of twenty thousand Arahats like the full moon amidst stars and planets was your father when he was a layman.

- (5) *Pummasasaṅkanibho mukhavanno  
devanarāna piyo naranāgo  
mattagajindavilāsitagāmi  
esa hi tuyha pitā naraśīho.*

My darling Rahula, the serene face of that exalted bhikkhu resembles a moon in full bloom on the fifteenth day (of the month), who is worthy of deep veneration and true affection by all beings in the three worlds of men, Devas and Brahams, who may be likened to a great and powerful bull elephant with the elegant gait of an elephant king in must. That exalted reverential person on his round for receiving alms in the company of twenty thousand Arahats like the full moon amidst stars and planets was your father when he was a layman.

(6) *Siniddhagambhīramañjūsagoso*  
*hiṅgulabandhukaratthasujīwo*  
*vīsati vīsati setasundanto*  
*esa hi tuyha pitā naraśīho.*

My darling dear Rahula, one with a voice, deep, harmonious and exceedingly sweet, a tongue vermilion-red like the colour of the Rosa Sinensis, two rows of clean white teeth, each consisting of twenty, the noblest of men and extraordinary person. That exalted reverential person on his round for receiving alms in the company of twenty thousand Arahats like the full moon amidst stars and planets was your father when he was a layman.

(7) *Khattiyasambhavaaggakulīno*  
*Devamanussanamassitapādo*  
*Sīlasamādhipatitthitacitto*  
*esa hi tuyha pitā naraśīho*

My darling dear Rahula, one of truly noble and royal ancestry, before whose feet beings of the three worlds bow in deep reverence, one with firm morality, concentration and tranquil state of mind which is imperturbable, the noblest of men. That exalted reverential person on his round for receiving alms in the company of twenty thousand Arahats like the full moon amidst stars and planets was your father when he was a layman.

(8) *Vattasuvattasusanḍitagīvo*  
*sīhahamī migaraja sarīro*  
*kañcanasucchavi uttamavanno*  
*esa hi tuyha pitā naraśīho*

Dear son Rahula, one with a full round neck, shapely like a golden mayo drum, a rounded well-developed jaw resembling the magnificent jaws of a lion king, and as if about to smile, like the twelfth-day waxing moon; a full-chested body like the fore part of a lion, the king of beasts; a radiant skin of the colour of the purest gold, and an unparalleled nobility of appearance; the noblest of men. That exalted reverential person on his round for receiving alms in the company of twenty thousand Arahats like the full moon amidst stars and planets was your father when he was a layman.

(9) *Añcanavannaṣuṇṭlasukeso  
kañcanapattāvisuddhanalaṭo  
osadhipaṇḍarasuddhasuṇṇo  
esa hi tuyha pitā naraśīho.*

My darling dear Rahula, having hair of dark shining greenish-black, an even, clear forehead like a plate of gold and like the morning star and a single strand of pure white hair growing, coiled between the eye brows, the noblest of men. That exalted reverential person on his round for receiving alms in the company of twenty thousand Arahats like the full moon amidst stars and planets was your father when he was a layman.

(10) *Gacchatīṅ nilapathe viya cando  
tāragaṇā parivethitarūpo  
sāvakamaññhagato samaññindo  
esa hi tuyha pitā naraśīho*

My darling dear Rahula, just as the chariot of the moon magnificently travels along the triple route through the air, so too the leader of monks, the King of Dhamma walks majestically amidst Arahats disciples; the noblest of men. That exalted reverential person on his round for receiving alms in the company of twenty thousand Arahats like the full moon amidst stars and planets was your father when he was a layman.

Having thus intimated the glory, the grace of the person of the Buddha, to her son Rahula, she approached King Suddhodana and said, "Your Majesty, O father, your royal son, the Tathagata is reported to be going round for alms-food in the company of twenty thousand Arahats."

**Royal Father King Suddhodana attaining the First Path  
( Sotapattimagga )**

King Suddhodana was shocked and agitated when he heard what queen Yasodaya had said and with one hand holding up his nether garment, he rushed out of the palace and going quickly to see the Tathagata, stood in front of him and made this remark: "Most Exalted

One, why do you put us to shame by going round for alms-food? Do you think that enough food for such a large number as twenty thousand Arahats cannot be provided by your royal father?" The Buddha said in reply, "Royal father, such a practice of receiving alms from door to door (*sapadanacarika*), is the precedence set by an unbroken line of we Buddhas." King Suddhodana replied in these words, "My son, are we not descents of the Khattiya lineage, great elected rulers in unbroken succession from the beginning of the world cycles? And all along this line of great Khattiya rulers there never was one who went around abegging for alms." The Buddha then made this reply, "O Royal father, the lineage of Khattiya rulers is your lineage; my ancestors are the Buddhas, in successive order of the *Buddhavamsa* from Dipankara, Kondanna, Mangala down to Kassapa. Beginning with Dipankara and ending with Kassapa, my preceding elder brethren Buddhas, twenty-four in number, and withal the thousands of Buddhas as many as sands of the Ganges, had always gone to each successive house to receive alms. This very practice of receiving alms from one door to the next had always been our means of livelihood." And while stopping on the route for a moment, uttered the following stanza:

*Uttithe nappamajjeyya  
Dhammaṃ sucariṃ care  
Dhammacāri sukhaṃ seti  
asmim loke paramhi ca.*

"Royal father, a bhikkhu on receiving alms-food after standing with seemly propriety at the door of each donor, should be mindful of the receipt of the food; he should not receive or seek alms by improper means. He should practice going round for receiving alms in a commendable manner. A bhikkhu who cultivates this practice unflinchingly in such a manner will live in peace in this life and future life as well."

At the conclusion of the stanza, King Suddhodana attained the stage of *Sotapattiphala*.

**The royal father became an *Angami* and step-mother  
Mahapajapati Gotami attained *Sotapanna*.**

After his attainment of *Sotapanna*, King Suddhodana himself took the alms bowl from the hands of the Tathagata and holding it invited the Buddha and the twenty thousand Arahats to his palace when he offered seats of honor especially arranged in anticipation. On arrival at the palace, the Tathagata uttered the following stanza:

*Dhammāṃ care sucaritam  
na naṃ ducaritam care  
dhammacāri sukham seti  
asmīṃ loke paramhi ca.*

"Royal father, an improper or irregular way of seeking alms-food should be avoided and correct mode of receiving alms should be practised. (Abodes of old maids, eunuchs, liquor-shops, prostitutes, a divorced or widowed woman, a female bhikkhu--- these places are regarded as not proper places whence to receive alms, *agocara thana*, and should be avoided). A bhikkhu who cultivates this practice unflinchingly in such a manner will live in peace in this life and future life as well".

At the conclusion of this second stanza, King Suddhodana became an *Anagami* and the step-mother Mahapajapati Gotami attained *Sotapanna*.

Then King Suddhodana offered various kinds of hard and soft food prepared in advance to the Tathagata and the twenty thousand Arahats.

**Recounting the Candakinnari Jataka.**

When the food-offering was over, all the courtiers and maids of honor (excepting Rahula's mother, queen Yasodhara) rallied at the feet of Buddha and paid their reverential respects to him.

Although the female attendants had requested her thus: "Your Majesty, please do come out of the royal chamber and pay homage to the Tathagata," she gave the maids of honor this reply, "If I had ever rendered any special service worthy of gratitude, his Reverence will

himself come to me. Then and then only will I give homage to him," and she remained unmoved and sedately stayed on in her chamber.

The Tathagata made the King Suddhodana carry his alms-bowl and accompanied by the two chief Disciples, went into the parlour of the queen. (At that time, forty thousand dancers were waiting upon her, of whom one thousand and ninety were maiden princesses. On being told that the Tathagata was on his way to her parlour, she ordered her forty thousand dancers to be dressed in dyed cloth and all of them did as they were told, (Candakinnari Commentary).

On arrival at the chamber of Queen Yasodaya, the Tathagata commanded, "Let no one utter any word to hinder or restrain Princess Yasodaya while she is paying me homage to her heart's content", and then he took his seat at a place specially prepared for him in advance.

Queen Yasodaya came quickly into the presence of the Tathagata and seizing his pair of insteps with both hands and all her strength she held them close and tightly in her arms. She rested her forehead upon them, alternately left and right, and again and again made obeisance to him to her heart's content with deep, profound esteem and respect. Whereupon, King Suddhodana addressed the Bhagava:

"Glorious Buddha, Noble son, my daughter has worn dyed clothes ever since she heard that you all were wearing dyed robes; when she heard that you lived on a single meal, she too subsisted on a single meal. Since she heard that you had given up beds of luxury, she has slept on a couch of flat matted ropes; since she heard that you had given up flowers and scents, she has gone without anointing herself with fragrant paste and wearing flowers.

When you renounced the world, kindred princes sent messages proposing their honorable intentions to love and cherish and keep her under their tender care, to none of which she even cast a lustful glance. Such wonderful, praiseworthy and extraordinary virtues is my daughter replete with".

Thus did King Suddhodana make known to the Tathagata the virtues and consistency of Princess Yasodaya's love for him. Whereupon the Tathagata responded:



"Royal father, it is not to be wondered at that Yasodaya, mother of Rahula has maintained her loyalty and dignity now, because apart from the protection given by you, mother of Rahula is now ripe in wisdom and capable of protecting herself. More admirable still is the fact that mother of Rahula, Princess Yasodaya in a past existence, had protected herself, when she was roaming all by herself at the foot of Canda mountain, even while still immature in wisdom and without a protector (like your good self).

Then after relating the events in the past existence with the story of Canda Kinnari (Second Jataka of Pakinnaka Nipata) the Buddha returned to Nigrodha monastery accompanied by the twenty thousand Arahats.

#### **Ordination of Buddha's younger brother Prince Nanda**

[A few points of interest in connection with Prince Nanda: (Prince Siddhattha's) step-mother Mahapajapati Gotami gave birth to Prince Nanda two days after, (on the third day after), royal mother Maha Maya had given birth to Prince Siddhattha, Mahapajapati Gotami entrusted her own son to the care of nurses and she herself took the responsibility of nursing and looking after the Bodhisatta (her nephew) by feeding him with her own milk. Prince Nanda was only two or three days younger and about four finger-breadths shorter than Prince Siddhattha in height.]

On the third day of the arrival of the Tathagata in the royal city of Kapilavatthu, King Suddhodana made the five Auspicious Ceremonial rites and rituals to be performed in honor of Prince Nanda:

- (1) Ceremony of the uncoiling of the youthful hair-do to make way for another, befitting an heir to the throne (*Kesavissajjana Maṅgalā*).
- (2) Ceremony of placing round the forehead of the Prince a gold frontlet bearing the inscription, Crown Prince (*Pattabandha Maṅgalā*).
- (3) Ceremony of bestowing residential palace to the Crown Prince. (*Gharappavesana Maṅgalā*)

(4) Ceremony of his marriage to (his cousin) Princess Janapadakalyani. (*Āvāha Maṅgalā*)

(5) Ceremony of bestowing and erecting the royal white umbrella of the Crown Prince. (*Chattussāpana Maṅgalā*).

On that occasion the Tathagata went to the royal palace and after preaching a discourse on the virtues of meritorious deeds, as he wished to get prince Nanda to be ordained, he purposely gave his bowl to Nanda and left for the monastery.

Because he had exceedingly great respect for the Tathagata, his elder brother, Prince Nanda dared not say a word about the bowl which was unexpectedly left in his care, though he had in mind to request, 'Exalted elder brother, May you take your bowl'. He had but to follow the Tathagata up to the top of the stairs thinking that he would be relieved of the burden there but the Tathagata did not do so.

Holding the bowl, he thus followed the Tathagata to the foot of the stairway but the Tathagata still did not take back the bowl. He had to follow the Tathagata much against his will thinking and hoping the bowl would be taken back and he eventually reached the open space outside the palace. The Tathagata continued on his way without relieving him of the bowl. Prince Nanda, following unwillingly, wished to turn back, but his extreme respect kept him silent, and hoping against hope that the bowl would be taken back at one place or another, had to go along with the Tathagata.

At that juncture, female attendants of the princess Janapada Kalyani brought the matter to her notice, saying, "Your Highness, the Tathagata has taken away prince Nanda to keep him separated from you." (Janapada was then washing her hair) She hurried to the door of the balcony, her hair dripping wet and only half-combed, and made an earnest appeal. "Your Highness, may you come back quickly", which weighed heavily in the mind of prince Nanda.

The Tathagata went on without taking the bowl from Prince Nanda, and on arrival at the monastery, he asked Nanda, "Would you like to receive ordination and become a bhikkhu? Out of fear and respect, he

could not express his unwillingness, "No, I cannot", but had to give his assent, saying, "Very well, Exalted brother, I will receive ordination".

"If that be the case, bhikkhus, you should see to it that my younger brother is ordained", said the Tathagata and the bhikkhus did as they were told<sup>2</sup>.

### Initiation of Rahula to novicehood

Seven days after this event, the Tathagata, accompanied by twenty thousand Arahats, visited his Royal father's palace to partake of meal. Queen Yasodaya had her son, Rahula, aged seven, tastefully dressed and confided to him: "My darling son, look at that gracious bhikkhu, attended by twenty thousand bhikkhus, with a golden appearance and a body as graceful as that of a Brahma; he is your father. Before his renunciation, and becoming a Bhikkhu, there used to be four golden pots, namely, Sangha, Ela, Uppla, Pundharika, which had disappeared simultaneously with his renunciation. So approach your father and ask for inheritance, saying: "Venerable father, I am a young Prince and I will, in due course, be crowned as a Universal Monarch of the Four islands and, as such, I am in need of wealth and treasures befitting such a king; I pray that those four golden pots may be given me as inheritance, in keeping with the tradition of a son always inheriting such a gift from his father". She then sent the young prince to the Tathagata.

When prince Rahula came close to the Tathagata, he felt the warmth of affectionate love of a father; overwhelmed with joyousness, he addressed, "Exalted Bhikkhu father, the sphere of your protection is, indeed, so peaceful, calm and comfortable" and after a moment of sweet childish chatter, remained seated close to the Buddha. After finishing the meal, the Buddha gave a discourse on the merits of provision of alms-food and left the palace for Nigrodha Monastery, in the company of twenty thousand Arahats.

Prince Rahula immediately went along behind Tathagata making the request, "Exalted bhikkhu father, may you give me my heirloom", and

---

<sup>2</sup> Events leading to the Venerable Nanda's attainment of Arahatship will be related when we come to the section on "The Jewel of the Sangha".

repeating it all along the way to the monastery. The Tathagata did not say a word to ask him, "Beloved son, go back home", and none of the king's personnel dared hinder him (as it was a matter of a son following his father). In this way Prince Rahula arrived at the monastery together with the Tathagata asking for inheritance all the way.

On arrival at the monastery, the Buddha thought it over: "The prince Rahula wants to inherit his father's property; the worldly wealth and property simply leads to suffering as they are counted as sufferings of the round of rebirths. I shall give the royal son Rahula the inheritance of seven supramundane treasures of the Ariyas, namely, faith (*saddhā*), morality (*sīla*), sense of shame, (*hiri*), dread of consequences of wrong deeds (*ottappa*), knowledge (*suta*), liberality (*cāga*) and wisdom (*pañña*) which I have won by vanquishing the five internal and external enemy forces of the Mara; I shall make the royal son Rahula become the owner of these supramundane inheritance. So deciding, the Tathagata bade the Venerable Sariputta to come and said, "Sariputta, prince Rahula has come to ask for his heirloom from me; make arrangements for the initiation of Rahula as a novice".

According to An 2-398, the seven Treasures of the Noble persons, Ariyas, as expounded by the Buddha are:

*Saddhā dhanam, sīla dhanam*  
*hiriottappiyam dhanam*  
*sutadhanañca cāgo ca*  
*pañña ve sattamam dhanam*

In his Kokhan Pyo (Sacred verses in nine sections) Venerable Maha Ratthasara illustrated these seven supramundane treasures of the Ariyas side by side with corresponding worldly properties:

- |  |           |
|--|-----------|
| (1) Sense of shame ( <i>hiri</i> )                             | - silver  |
| (2) Dread of consequences of wrong deeds<br>( <i>ottappa</i> ) | - gold    |
| (3) Knowledge ( <i>suta</i> )                                  | - coral   |
| (4) Faith ( <i>saddhā</i> )                                    | - emerald |

- |                                |                  |
|--------------------------------|------------------|
| (5) Morality ( <i>sīla</i> )   | - pearl          |
| (6) Liberality ( <i>cāga</i> ) | - precious stone |
| (7) Wisdom ( <i>paññā</i> )    | - diamond        |

In compliance with the expressed instruction of the Buddha, the Venerable Sariputta took the role of the preceptor (*Upajjhāya*); the Venerable Maha Moggallana acted as Instructor (*Pabajjhācariya*) attending to shaving off the head, offering of robes and administering the Three Refuges, while Venerable Maha Kassapa served as his advisor (*Ovādācariya*). Thus prince Rahula was given admission to noviciateship and became a novice, *samanera*. Although the three Maha Theras took individual roles in the procedure for the admission, the preceptor (*Upajjhāya*) is the dominant figure in bringing about the going forth of Prince Rahula; the functions undertaken by *Pabajjhācariya* and *Ovādācariya* are the bounden duties of the Preceptor (*Upajjhāya*); they are merely functioning as his deputies. Therefore Pali Text says, "*Atha kho Āyasama Sariputto Rahulam Kumaram pabbājesi*" meaning. Then the Venerable Sariputta brought about Prince Rahula's admission to noviciateship, as if he attended to all the various tasks necessary for the ceremony.

#### A rule of training prescribed by the Tathagata at the request of King Suddhodana.

King Suddhodana was greatly disturbed and suffered intense mental and physical agony when he heard of the news that "Prince Rahula has been initiated as a novice".

A note of explanation is required here for clarification: Just as the court astrologers had made confident predictions that "This prince is destined to become a Universal Monarch" after the birth of prince Siddhattha, so also they made the identical predictions on subsequent occasions when birth-day celebrations were held in honor of prince Nanda and prince Rahula.

While entertaining high hopes of seeing the grace and glory of his son prince Siddhattha as a Universal Monarch, King Suddhodana witnessed only the Bodhisatta prince Siddhattha renouncing the world

and becoming a bhikkhu, greatly to his disappointment and he had suffered great mental and physical distress for the first time.

Again after he had braced himself thus: "Only when my younger son Nanda becomes a Universal Monarch shall I see his grace and glory," Prince Nanda was ordained as a bhikkhu by the Tathagata. He had suffered extreme weariness of heart and mind for the second time.

He had, however, observed great patience on these two previous occasions by consoling himself, "My last hope is to witness with full satisfaction the grace and glory of my grandson when he becomes a Universal Monarch". He had set his mind on this. Now that Rahula had been made a novice by the Tathagata, it occurred to him, "Now the continuity of the dynasty of the Sakya Monarch had been severed. Wherefore can there be the glory and grace of a Universal Monarch?" King Suddhodana naturally suffered a misery more intense than ever before. (This is because the King was still at the stage of *Sakadagamin Ariya* who had yet to eradicate the defilement of anger (*dosa*), hence his extreme sadness.)

The pressing mental and physical agony grew beyond his power of endurance, so much so that he went to the Tathagata and after paying homage and taking a seat at an appropriate place, addressed the Bhagava, "Most Glorious Buddha, my royal son, I should like to request a favor of you". Whereupon, Tathagata responded, "O Royal father of Gotama clan. Fully Enlightened Buddhas are past the stage of granting favours."

(N.B. Granting of favours and giving rewards is not the business of recluses who themselves live on food received from generous donors; this being the case, if some one comes and requests a favour of them, it is not befitting for them to say off hand, "Ask for any favour you wish" it is also not the practice of Buddhas")

Whereupon the King said, "I will only make a request which is fit and proper as well as faultless." Only then did the Buddha allow him to make the request, saying, "Royal father of Gotami clan, you may ask for any favour you wish."

"Most Revered son, when you first renounced the world I had suffered infinite sorrow and I suffered with the same intensity when my son Prince Nanda received ordination, and lastly, when Rahula, my grandson was made a novice, my misery was immeasurable.

"Most Exalted son, the love of parents and grand-parents for their sons and grand-children penetrates the delicate film of outer skin, through the thick inner skin, sinews, nerves and bones and even up to the marrow.

When King Suddhodana left the monastery after hearing a sermon, the Bhagava, in consideration of King Suddhodana's request, made a proclamation of a training rule at the assembly of the Sangha.

*"Na bhikkhave anamunnāto mātāpitūhi putto pabbājetabbo; yo pabbājeyya āpatti dukkaṭassa.* Bhikkhus, a child who has not the consent of both his parents should not be given initiation nor ordination. Whoever should let such a person receive admission or ordination, there is an offense of wrong-doing"

**King Suddhodana attained the *Anagāmi phala* after hearing  
the discourse on Mahadhmmapala Jataka**

On a certain day after this incident, when Tathagata went to the royal palace for meals, in the company of twenty thousand Arahats, King Suddhodana served the Tathagata and the Arahats with gruel and sweet-meats before the main meal. And during the interim period the King enthusiastically recounted his experience with the Devas thus: "Most Glorious son, when you were engaged arduously in austerity practices, certain Devas appeared in the sky and told me, "Your son, Prince Siddhattha has died for not having sufficient food." Whereupon, the Tathagata asked the King, "Royal father, did you believe the words of the Devas then?" The king replied, "No, I did not". I rejected the words of these Devas in the sky by saying, "It is impossible for my son to enter Nibbana until and unless he attains Omniscience on that pleasant plain under the Great Bodhi Tree".

Then the Buddha said, "My royal father (not only in this life), when, in a previous existence, you were the chieftain of Maha Dhammapala

village tract, you had also rejected the words of a far-famed teacher, Disapamokkha, who told you, "Your son the young Dhammapala is dead; these are the bones of your son," exhibiting the bones of a goat as evidence. You had then refuted him by saying, "In our Dhammapala clan, there is none who dies while still young". You did not believe him at all. Now at the last lap of your transient existence, why should you believe the words of the Devas?; you certainly would not! Then at the request of his royal father, the Buddha delivered extensively the discourse on Maha Dhammapala Jataka (Dasaka Nipata--the ninth Jataka).

After delivering the Jataka discourse, the Buddha continued to expound the main Dhamma points of the Four Noble Truths (*Catusacca Dhamma kathā*). At the conclusion of this exposition, King Suddhodana was firmly established as an Anagamin.

**Step-mother Pajapati Gotami offered a set of robes woven  
by herself to the Buddha.**

As stated above, the day after the arrival of the Tathagata and the Arahats at Kapilavatthu, King Suddhodana after having expressed his reasons for the intolerable displeasure and disapproval at the sight of the Tathagata and the Arahats in the middle of their round for alms-food, invited the Tathagata and the Arahats to the royal palace.

When Maha Pajapati Gotami witnessed the grace and splendour of the physical appearance of the Tathagata on the latter's arrival at the royal palace, she could not help thinking, "How exceedingly comely is my son's appearance!"; and her mind was filled with the powerful feelings of exceeding joy. Then again, she continued considering:

"For fully twenty-nine years when he was a layman, it was I who was solely responsible for my son's well-being, regarding his food, clothing and residence, even to the extent of peeling off the skin of the banana for him. Now that he has blossomed forth as a Fully-Enlightened Buddha, it is right and proper that I weave a set of robes myself to offer him".

She had a weaving house set up in the precincts of the royal palace, and bought fine quality cotton from the market. The work of ginning



and spinning cotton into fine threads was undertaken by herself. She summoned expert weavers to the palace and asked them to weave a cloth for a set of robes, providing them with delicious soft and hard food from her own table, and paid them handsome rewards. She visited the place of work, in the company of her maids of honor and personally took part in the weaving of the cloth for the robes as and when opportunity presented.

When the fine cloth had been woven and the craftsman given suitable rewards, she placed the cloth in a casket of sweet scents so that it might be infused with the sweet fragrance and when every thing was set, she approached the King and said:-

"Your Majesty, I wish to offer this newly woven fine cloth for a set of robes to the Exalted son, carrying it personally to the monastery".

King Suddhodana caused the road-way between the palace and the monastery to be kept clean; every street was swept, pots filled with water were placed along the road which was lined with decorative pennants and streamers. From the palace gate to the Nigrodha monastery the whole route was strewn with flowers.

With great pomp and ceremony, Maha Pajapati Gotami, bedecked with ornaments and in full ceremonial dress, proceeded to the monastery in the company of her maids of honor, carrying on her head the fragrant casket containing the piece of cloth for making robes and on arrival addressed the Tathagata:

"Most Exalted Glorious son, I, your step-mother, intending it for you, have myself ginned and spun and woven a cloth for a set of robes. I pray that you accept the piece of cloth which I have woven and offered to you out of compassion and sympathetic regard for me".

[The detailed story of the royal step-mother weaving the cloth for a set of robes and offering it to the Buddha is provided in 12-Dakkhinavibanga, 4-Vibanga *Magga*, Uparipannasa, Burmese translation.]

Special note: Dakkhina Vibanga Sutta commentary states: "The Tathagata's step-mother had a mind for the offering of

robes to the Tathagata during his first visit to Kapilavatthu, etc.," In the Pali text it is mentioned that the Tathagata advised her to offer it to the Sangha (instead of to the individual) so that she may gain exceedingly greater merit. Then the Venerable Ananda supplicated on her behalf to accept the offer of the robes for himself in consideration of the mutual beneficent services rendered.

Here arises a point that deserves to be taken into account. Venerable Ananda was not yet a bhikkhu during the Tathagata's first visit to Kapilavatthu. He was ordained only on arrival at Anupia mango grove in Malla country on the return journey from Kapilavatthu. Jataka commentaries also only mention the fact that the Tathagata returned from Kapilavatthu after establishing King Suddhodana in the three lower fruitional stages.

Therefore, in order to reconcile this discrepancy, it would be appropriate to take it that Maha Pajapati Gotami conceived the idea of weaving the cloth for a set of robes for the Buddha and went about translating her idea into action during the Tathagata's first visit, and that she made the offering with great pomp and ceremony only on the Tathagata's next visit to Kapilavatthu.

**End of Chapter Eighteen.**

## CHAPTER NINETEEN

### ONE THOUSAND SAKYAN PRINCES RECEIVED ORDINATION FROM THE TATHAGATA

Having thus established his father, King Suddhodana at the Three lower Fruitional stages (*Sotapattiphala*, *Sakadagamiphala* and *Anagamiphala*), Tathagata left Kapilavatthu in the company of twenty thousand Arahats and journeyed towards Rajagaha; on arrival at the Anupiya mango grove of the country of Malla, the Buddha broke the journey for some rest.

At that time, King Sudhhodana summoned an assembly of all the members of the royal Sakyen clan and addressed them:

"O ye members of the royal Sakyen clan, if my son had chosen to remain as a sovereign ruler, seven Treasures would have appeared and he would certainly have become a Universal Monarch ruling over four island continents. And my grand-son Rahula, befitting the eldest Son Treasure (of the seven Treasures) would have to accompany the Universal Monarch together with all the Khattiya rulers on earth, attending to administrative matters wherever the Wheel Treasure rolled on<sup>1</sup>. You all Sakyen rulers are well aware of this.

---

<sup>1</sup>When a sovereign ruler observed the moral precepts in fulfilment of the noble duties required of a Universal Monarch, there appeared to him the mighty wheel Treasure; he came to possess seven precious Treasures, namely, the Wheel Treasure, the Elephant Treasure, the Horse Treasure, the Gem Treasure, the Queen Treasure, the Rich-man Treasure, and seventhly the Eldest Son Treasure. After being anointed as a Universal Monarch, he held a gold pitcher in his left hand, sprinkled water with his right hand on the Wheel treasure, making the resolution, "May the august Wheel Treasure turn and roll on! May the august Wheel Treasure be triumphant " The Wheel Treasure rolled on towards the four island continents, in the four directions. The Universal Monarch followed it with his great army commanded by his Eldest Son Treasure. Where the Wheel came to rest, the Universal Monarch encamped with his great army. The rival kings of each region came to him, paid him homage and became vassals to the Universal Monarch"

"Now that my noble son became a Buddha, the Crown of the three worlds, (he being a Buddha of royal descent), let only princes of royal blood attend upon him. I would urge you, therefore, that each and every royal household present me a prince. (I will arrange for their ordination in the presence of my son Buddha).

They all readily signified their assent by saying, "Very well, your Majesty" and one thousand princes of the royal families spontaneously went along with the King to the Anupia Mango Grove and received ordination from the Buddha.

### Ordination of the Six Princes and Upali, the barber

At the ceremony of the palm-reading, after the birth of Boddhisatta all the members of eighty thousand royal families, had made the promise "Whether he turns out to be a Universal Monarch or a Buddha, we will see to it that he goes about duly attended on exclusively by the royal princes" Although quite a number of Sakyan princes had received ordination, six princes, namely,

1. Prince Bhaddiya (the one taking his turn to rule at the time);
2. Prince Anuruddha;
3. Prince Ananda;
4. Prince Bhagu;
5. Prince Kimbā;
6. Prince Devadatta

were found by the Sakyan families not following suit. They censured and expressed their disapproval saying, "We all have had our sons ordained but these six princes have behaved as if they are strangers and not relatives; how dare they remain not receiving ordination?"

Whereupon, prince Mahanama went to his younger brother, Anuruddha and consulted with him saying: "My dear brother Anuruddha, no member of our family has yet received ordination, and it will only be right and proper for either of us to receive ordination." It is to be stated here that prince Anuruddha was an extremely gentle person, born and brought up in great wealth and luxury. Anuruddha was a prince who had not heard of the term 'have not', and was ignorant of its meaning.

**Prince Anuruddha who did not know the term 'have not'**

This will be elaborated: One day, these six princes played a game of gon-nyin<sup>2</sup> at a stake that the loser should supply cakes.

Anuruddha eventually lost the game and as previously promised, he was obliged to send an attendant to his mother for a supply of cakes. His mother arranged to supply the cakes as requested.

The six princes happily enjoyed the cakes and went on playing, game after game. Anuruddha was found to be the loser all the time; his mother fulfilled his wants three times in succession. But when he sent his attendant for the fourth time, his mother was compelled to give the answer, '*Puva natthi*' meaning 'no cakes'.

As prince Anuruddha did not understand the meaning of the word 'NO', he thought it to be a cake of some sort, so he sent the attendant back with instructions to bring that 'no cakes'. His mother, being well aware of the fact that his son was totally ignorant of the term 'have not', considered that she would teach him the meaning of 'have not'; she expediently put one empty golden cup as a cover upon another and sent them to her son.

Whereupon, the guardian Devas of the city remembered the meritorious deeds of Anuruddha in a previous existence: "As Annabara, a poor person, he liberally offered his hard earned quota of meal to a *Pacceka Buddha* named Uparittha, saying his wish, 'May I be free from want, not ever hearing the words "not have", not knowing even the source of food' (cooked rice). The Devas were aware that they might not be allowed to attend the assembly of celestial beings should they let Anuruddha see the empty cups; above all their heads were liable to be split into seven pieces for such an act of omission. Therefore, they filled the empty golden cups with celestial cakes.

At the game pitch, as soon as the cup full of celestial sweet-meats was opened, the atmosphere of the whole city became laden with its fragrance; and the flavour of the ambrosia permeated the seven

---

<sup>2</sup>Exactly like the game of marbles except that instead of marbles hard, round seeds of the gon tree are used for the game.

thousand palatal nerves of Anuruddha as he placed a bit of it in his mouth.

Anuruddha thought to himself: "Till such a long time as this, my mother has not cooked me this 'Have not cake'. She does not seem to love me. From now on, I will eat no cake excepting that kind of cake". On his arrival at the palace, he asked his mother: 'O mother do you really love me or not?'. His mother replied, "My dear son, Anuruddha, just as a man who has only one eye values and cherishes it most, so I love you more than anything else; more than my heart". Then Anuruddha asked again, "O mother, why, though loving me so, have you never prepared such a cake for me for such a length of time?"

When his mother heard this curious question, she summoned the young attendant and asked him, "Young man, was there anything in the cup?". He replied, "O dear mother, the cup was filled to its brim with the sort of sweet meats we have never seen before". His mother then realised that her son must be a man of power and glory, who had accumulated much merit from his past good deeds. She rightly considered the truth of the matter that celestial beings must have put celestial sweet meats in the cup and sent it to the prince".

Then Anuruddha told his mother, "O mother, from now on I shall not eat any eatables except this Have-not cakes; if it be for me, just cook only this Have-not cake". Since that time, his mother simply sent an empty cup covered with another whenever request came from his son for a supply of eatables. Before his ordination, all through his layman's life, it was the celestials who had his cakes sent to him. How then could Anuruddha who did not even understand the term 'have not' understand the state of monkhood or ordination?

Such being the case, Anuruddha asked his eldest brother, Mahanama, "O brother, what do you mean by ordination, what is it like?" Mahanama replied, "Dear brother, one who receives ordination is required to have his hair and beard shaven clean, wear dyed clothes, sleep on a wooden bed-stead, or a couch of cane or bamboo, go on usual round for alms-food; this is the life of one who receives ordination." Anuruddha then made this reply: "O elder brother, I am a

gentle and delicate person; I cannot lead the life of one who receives ordination".

Mahanama said in reply: "My dear Anuruddha, if that is the case, you had better learn the business of human affairs and stay to manage our household; because it is imperative that one or the other of we two brothers receives ordination. Anuruddha then enquired: "O elder brother, what is meant by 'business of human affairs?' How would a man of high birth like Anuruddha who has no knowledge of the source of daily meal understand the business of human affairs?"

### **Anuruddha and other princes were ignorant of the source of food**

This will be clarified: The three princes, namely, Kimila, Bhaddiya, and Anuruddha happened to discuss the source of food during a course of conversation. Prince Kimila maintained that a granary is the source of food<sup>3</sup>! Prince Bhaddiya rejected his statement by saying "You really do not know the actual source of food: remember a cooking pot is the actual source<sup>4</sup>" Anuruddha took his turn saying; "Both of you are ignorant of the source of food; its source is a gold dish studded with fine jewels<sup>5</sup>".

These three princes were totally ignorant of the source of food (cooked rice) and so Anuruddha asked his brother: "O elder brother, what are those business of human affairs? in honest simplicity.

---

<sup>3</sup>This prince had only seen the grains taken out of the King's granaries; he had never seen the rice fields.

<sup>4</sup>This prince had only seen food in the process of being cooked in a pot; he had never seen paddy being harvested in the fields or being taken out of the granaries.

<sup>5</sup>Prince Anuruddha had never seen paddy being taken out from the granaries, nor rice being cooked in a pot and ladled out from it. he had only seen a gold cup filled with cooked rice which was previously removed from the pot. He had therefore the fixed idea that 'food spontaneously appears in the cup when he feels like eating'.

### Prince Anuruddha became tired of the world

Elder brother Mahanama said: "My dear younger brother, Anuruddha, come, I will teach you the work and business of human affairs:

1. One must plough the land at the break of the rains;
2. Ploughing must be followed by sowing seeds;
3. After sowing, the field must be watered (having due regard to appropriate time);
4. Water must be led off or drained (at the appropriate time);
5. After draining off the water, there must be constant removal of weeds.
6. After frequent clearing away of weeds, crops must be harvested as soon as they are matured and ripened;
7. After harvesting, standing sheaves of paddy must be carted to the threshing floor;
8. The sheaves of paddy must be spread and piled for threshing.
9. After spreading the sheaves threshing must be done thoroughly;
10. After threshing, stalks must be removed after thorough shaking.
11. Then the undeveloped grains must be sorted out.
12. Winnowing must be done after removing the undeveloped grains.
13. After winnowing, the paddy must be stored in granaries.
14. When every thing is done as described above, the same routine of work must be carried out year after year"

On hearing this, Anuruddha told his brother: "O elder brother, all this business of human affairs are inexhaustable and never ending; when can all these worldly affairs be exhausted, when can we see the end to all these affairs? when shall we be able to enjoy the five sensual pleasures



with ease and comfort, without having to encounter the anxieties of worldly life?" He muttered this with dismay and weariness.

His elder brother then told him, "Quite so, dear brother Anuruddha, worldly affairs are inexhaustable and without an end; our fathers and grand-fathers had died before these human affairs could be exhausted or ended". Whereupon Anuruddha said, "O elder brother, if this be so, since you understand the ways of human affairs, you had better remain and take charge of the management; I shall renounce the household life and lead the homeless life of a recluse", thus giving his assent to receive ordination.

Anuruddha then approached his mother and asked' "O mother, I wish to receive ordination; kindly grant me your permission to do so". Then the queen mother replied' "My dear son, Anuruddha, I love both my sons, you two brothers with an exceedingly great love. Even when death seperates us, it will be without my consent. How can I, still alive, give you both the brothers, my permission to receive ordination (it is an impossible matter.) Anuruddha made a second attempt to get his mother's permission, but received the same answer. Again, for the third time, he requested his mother's permission for his ordination.

At that time, the Sakyan prince Bhaddhiya was holding the reins of government over the Sakyan clan. (King Suddhodana who was by then approximately ninety was merely a guide and figure head). The ruling king Bhaddhiya was Prince Anuruddha's intimate friend. The queen mother thought to herself: "At present my son Anuruddha's friend, the Sakyan King Bhaddhiya is still ruling over the Sakyan royal clan. That King Bhaddhiya cannot, by any means, receive ordination, at least for the time being. "So she told Anuruddha, "My dear son, Anuruddha, you have my permission to receive ordination, if your play-mate the Sakyan King Bhaddhiya is also prepared to receive ordination".

Anuruddha then approached his friend and requested, "O my dear friend Bhaddhiya, my receiving ordination is related to you. Bhaddhiya then said in response, "O dear friend Anuruddha, if there is a relationship between your ordination and myself, let it no longer exist. You and I ..., " (Here what Bhaddhiya actually meant to say readily with love for his friend, was "You and I both will receive ordination

together," but being restrained by attachment to the luxury of kingship, he stopped short with 'you and I' and said) You may happily receive ordination as you please". Nevertheless, Anuruddha made a fresh request: "Come, my dear friend, let us receive ordination together". Whereupon Bhaddhiya gave his frank answer, "My dear friend Anuruddha, I cannot receive ordination, but I am prepared to do whatever I can, in matters concerning a friend, other than receiving ordination. (As regards ordination), do please receive it by yourself".

Whereupon, Anuruddha asserted, "My friend, my mother had said 'if your friend, King Bhaddiya is prepared to receive ordination, you may do so'. O friend Bhaddiya, You had said, "O friend Anuruddha, if there is a relationship between your ordination and myself, let that relation no longer exist; You and I..... You may happily receive ordination as you please". (Almost at the point of gratifying my wish) you prevaricated and you have spoken evasive words to escape commitment. O friend, Bhaddiya, do let us go ... let us both receive ordination". Anuruddha thus persistently insisted to make refusal impossible.

(People of that time spoke the truth; they admitted the Truth. They were noted for being as good as their words; they always stood by their words.)

King Bhaddhiya said, "My dear Anuruddha, please wait for seven years and we will both receive ordination then." "My dear Bhaddhiya, seven years is too long; I cannot wait for such a long time", replied Anuruddha. Bhaddiya said in reply, "Please wait for six years, "and then successively five, four, three, two, one year reducing a year each time; "At the end of one year, we will both receive ordination". But Anuruddha insisted, "O my dear friend, Bhaddiya, one year is too long a time; I cannot wait for that long".

Bhaddhiya then asked Anuruddha to wait for seven months; they would then both receive ordination. Anuruddha again replied that the period of seven months was a long time; he could not wait for such a long time. Bhaddhiya eventually reduced the period of grace from seven to six, five, four, three, two, one and lastly half a month (fifteen days). But Anuruddha would not give in and again said fifteen days too was still a very long time and he could not wait that long.

At last King Bhaddhiya (as a final proposal) asked for seven days of grace to enable him to relinquish the duties of a king and hand over the affairs of the state to his son, elder and younger brothers. Anuruddha was satisfied and said "My dear Bhaddhiya, seven days is not too long a time; I will wait for seven days" and they came to a mutual agreement.

**Six Sakyan Princes together with Upali, the barber renounced the world and became bhikkhus.**

The group of six princes comprising (1) King Bhaddhiya, (2) prince Anuruddha, (3) prince Ananda, (4) prince Bhagu, (5) prince Kimila, (6) prince Devadatta (Buddha's brother-in-law) and Upali, the barber enjoyed earthly pleasures to the full like Devas enjoying celestial luxuries for full seven days before they went out of the city, as though going out for joyful garden sports, escorted by regiments of elephanteers, cavalry, charioteers and infantry, On arrival at the border, the four regiments of the army were ordered to return while they went into the neighboring country of Malla.

Once inside the country of Malla, the six princes took off their ornaments, wrapped them up with outer garments and handed the bundle to Upali, by way of a parting gift, saying, "My dear friend Upali, you may return home. This should keep you going to an advanced age".

Upali, the barber wept, rolling himself on the ground at the feet of the princes, as he was loth to part from his masters. He dared not, however, disobey the command of the princes and so he was obliged to make his way home carrying the bundle of gifts. When Upali, the barber, the servant of the princes parted from his masters, there was a loud and fearsome noise, as if the large, thick forest wailed and the great earth quaked and trembled in lamentation.

A little while after Upali, the barber had separated from the princes, he stopped and thought to himself: "The Sakya royalty are harsh and ruthless. They might misjudge and wrongly conclude. "This barber Upali has dispatched the six princes" and they might order me to be killed. If even these princes could abandon kingly luxuries and splendour, discarding priceless ornaments as they would spittle, to

receive ordination, why a lowly, wretched person like me not be able to receive ordination." So thinking and realising, he took out the precious things he had brought and hanging them on a tree, said, "I have given up these properties to charity. Any one who finds them is free to take them as he pleases".

As soon as the six princes saw the barber Upali, coming from a distance, they questioned, "O friend, Upali, why have you returned to us?" Then he explained all that had occurred to him and what he had done. Then the princes told him, "O Upali, "your not going back to the royal city (according to Sri Lankan sources, "your returning to us") is very good indeed! (as you have thought) members of the Royal Sakyan family are harsh and ruthless. (Supposing, you had returned) they might have had you executed under false impression that you had done away with the six princes".

The six princes took Upali along with them to Anupiya mango grove where the Tathagata was residing. On arrival, they respectfully paid homage to the Buddha, took their seat at places free from the six faults, and addressed him thus: "Most Exalted Bhagava, we Sakyan royalty are harsh and stern with pride of births; this man, Upali has been our servant for the past many years. We would beseech you to give him priority in receiving ordination before any one of us: (By ordaining him in this way) the rest of us would have to make homage to him, greet him when he approaches, and pay our respect with raised hands. By so doing, our Sakyan pride of birth so harsh and stern and the vanity of us, the Sakyan princes who have become bhikkhus, will be broken.

Then the Bhagava, had Upali<sup>6</sup>, the barber ordained first (as requested) to be followed by the six princes.

**The Tathagata left for the Veluvana monastery, Rajagaha, to observe the second rains-retreat.**

The Tathagata, accompanied by over twenty thousand Bhikkhus, left Anupiya Mango Grove near the village of Anupiya in Malla country for

---

<sup>6</sup>The story of Upali and the Sakyan princes who became bhikkhus will be dealt with in more detail in the chapter on The Jewel of Sangha.)

Velunana monastery, Rajagaha where he observed the second rains-retreat<sup>7</sup>, together with the twenty-thousand bhikkhus.

**List of rains-retreat observed by the Buddha in serial order.**

Tathagata had no fixed rains-residence for twenty years during the early period after his Enlightenment, (*pathama Bodhi*), as he went from place to place wherever sentient beings could be saved from the round of suffering. To elaborate a little:

- (1) After preaching the *Dhammacakkapavattana Sutta* to the Group of five Bhikkhus headed by the Venerable Kondhanna together with 18 crores of Brahmas at Isipatana, Migadaya near Baranasi the Tathagata observed the first rains-retreat in Migadaya, going for alms-round in Baranasi.
- (2) Then the Tathagata observed the second rains-retreat at Veluvana monastery, making Rajagaha his alms resort.
- (3) & (4) The Third and fourth rains-retreat were also at Veluvana monastery.
- (5) The fifth retreat was observed at a monastery with pinnacles and finials (Kutagara Hall) in the Mahavana forest, depending for alms-food on Vesali.
- (6) The sixth retreat was spent at the monastery in the Chaya forest in the vicinity of Mount Makula.
- (7) The seventh rains-residence was observed on the Emerald Throne at the foot of Erythrina Indica tree in the celestial realm of Tavatimsa preaching *Abhidhammā* discourses.
- (8) The eighth rains-residence was spent in the forest of pigeon peas, a wildlife sanctuary, (or the forest governed by a celestial ogress) with Susumaragiri in the Bhagga country as his alms-food resort.
- (9) The ninth rains-residence was observed at the Ghositarama monastery when Kosambhi was the alms-food resort for him.

---

<sup>7</sup>Vassa; variously translated as monsoon-retreat, rains-retreat, rains-residence, Buddhist lent. The rains-retreat has to be observed for three out of the four months of the rainy season.

(10) Then, he spent the rains-residence in the Palileyyaka forest (palale) where the elephant king Palale placed himself at the service of the Bhagava.

(11) He spent the rains-residence at Nalikarama Monastery with the Brahmin village Nala serving as his alms-food resort.

(12) He observed the twelfth rains-residence near the tragacanth tree governed by an ogre named Naleru with Veranjja country as his alms resort.

(13) Then with Jantu village in the Caliya country serving as his alms resort, he spent the thirteenth rains-retreat at the Caliya mountain monastery.

(14) The fourteenth rains-retreat was spent at the Jetavana monastery with Savatthi in the country of Kosala as his alms resort.

(15) Then with Kapilavatthu in the Sakka country serving as his alms resort, he spent the fifteenth rains-retreat at the Nigrodha monastery.

(16) He spent the sixteenth rains-retreat at Aggalava Shrine (temple for spirits) with the country of Alavi serving as his alms resort.

(17) The seventeenth rains-retreat was spent at the Veluvana monastery, when Rajagaha of Magadha became his alms resort.

(18-19) The Buddha stayed for two continuous rains residence (namely the eighteenth and the nineteenth) at the Caliya mountain monastery with Jantu village in the Caliya country serving as his rains retreat.

(20) The twentieth rains-retreat was observed at the Veluvana monastery, in Rajagaha of Magadha, which served as his alms resort.

(These are the places where the Buddha spent irregular rains-residence during the first twenty years after his Enlightenment (*pathama Bodhi*))

(21-44) The Buddha observed regular rains retreat from the twenty first to the forty-fourth year at Jetavana and Pubbarama monasteries at Savatthi in the Kosala country which served as his alms resort.

(As detailed in the Buddhavamsa Commentary).

(45) Then the Buddha spent his last rains residence, the forty-fifth one at the village of Veluva in Vesali country on the verge of his Parinibbana.

**Various works in Myanma dealing with the rains residences kept by the Buddha.**

(a) The Venerable Monywe Zetawun Saydaw had composed a verse, for easy recollection of the places where Gotama Buddha had observed rains retreat, in one of his works entitled *Samanta Cakkhu Dīpanī* (Second Volume, p 374)<sup>8</sup>.

The great Friend of sentient beings of the three worlds spent two months, sixty days, at the place of his Enlightenment, and then observed rains retreats in the places shown below:

- (1) First lent at Baranasi
- (2-3-4) Bamboo Grove monastery, Rajagaha;
- (5) Mahavana monastery donated by Licchavi princes of Vesali;
- (6) Sixth at Makula mountain;
- (7) Seventh at Tavatimsa;
- (8) Eighth in the Bhagga country;
- (9) Ninth at Ghositarama monastery in Kosambi;
- (10) Tenth in the Palale Forest of the elephant king Palale;
- (11) Eleventh in the Brahmin village of Nala;
- (12) Twelvth at Veranjliia;
- (13) Thirteenth at Caliya mountain;
- (14) Forteenth at Jetavana monastery, Savatthi;
- (15) Fifteenth at Nigrodha monastery of Kapilavatthu;
- (16) Sixteeth at Alavi;

---

<sup>8</sup> The author reproduced here the said verse of the Monywe Zetawun Saydaw. We have provided here only an excerpt thereof in prose.

(17) Seventeenth at Veluvana monastery, Rajagaha;

(18-19) at Caliya Mountain monastery;

(20) Twentieth back at Rajagaha;

(21-24) Thus the Tathagata was on the move from place to place for the duration of the first twenty years (the First Bodhi); as regards the second Bodhi (from the 21st to the 44th. year) the Tathagata spent twenty four lents alternately at Pubbarama and Jetavana monasteries in Savatthu.

(45) The Tathagata spent the last lent at the village of Veluva on the verge of his Parinibbana, making a total of 45 lents spent variously at fifteen places in the course of forty-five years before crossing over to the other Shore at the age of eighty.

Besides the foregoing accounts, there are other Myanma recordings of rains-residences kept by the Buddha namely, (a) Wasocin payashikkho comprising five stanzas by sayadaw U Bodh; (b) Seven Stanzas by minister Caturangabala of Pinya, (c) Wasocin payashikkho by the primate Taungkhwin Sassanapaing Sayadaw in his *Gulatha Vinicchaya* Treatise (d) and Wasocin Payashikkho by Shwetaung Kyithe Laythat Sayadaw in his Jinatthapakasani treatise.

Scholars desiring more information should seek it from the said treatises.

End of Chapter Nineteen.



## CHAPTER TWENTY

### EACH ONE OF THE SIX PRINCES ACHIEVED DIFFERENT ATTAINMENTS

The Tathagata, (as explained before) kept the second rains-residence at Veluvana monastery, Rajagaha. It was during this period that Venerable Bhaddiya became established as *Tevijja Arahata*, accomplished in the three knowledges, namely, *Pubbenivāsa Ñāna*, *Dibbacakkhu Ñāna*, *Āsavakkhaya Ñāna*.

The Venerable Anuruddha achieved the eight mundane attainments (*Jhāna Samapatti*) during the first Lent after his ordination. Based on these attainments, he further developed *Dibbacakkhu Abhiññā*, the supernatural power that enabled him to see one thousand world systems. One day, he went to the Venerable Sariputta and told him: (vide 8-dutiya Anuruddha sutta, 3-Kusinara Vagga, Tatiya Pannasaka, Tikanipata, Anguttara Nikaya).

"(a) Friend Sariputta, In this Buddha's Sasana, I can see one thousand world systems by means of *Dibbacakkhu Abhinna*;

(b) My effort is vigorous and resolute, not flagging. My mindfulness is clear and intent, wholly free from forgetfulness; my body is also calm and collected, completely free from anxiety; my mind is serene, fixed on a single object.

(c) In spite of all this, my mind though void of craving and wrong view (*tanhā and ditthi*) is still not free from the grip of the *Āsavus*. (meaning, he has not yet achieved Arahata-hip)."

Whereupon, the Venerable Sariputa said,

"Friend Anuruddha, (1) when you are preoccupied with the thought as described in your first statement, it is a case of pride (*māna*) arising in your mental continuum. (2) Regarding the preoccupation described in your second statement, it is a case

of distraction (*uddhacca*) arising in your mental continuum. (3) As regards your third statement, it means that you are being assailed by worrying over past commissions and omissions, (*kukucca*). Let me beseech you, friend Anuruddha, to get rid of these three states of pride, distraction and worry and to occupy your mind only with the thought of Nibbana, the Deathless State (*Amata dhatu*)."

He then gave the Venerable Anuruddha a discourse on the practice of meditation.

Having learnt the technique of meditation from the Venerable Sariputta, the Venerable Anuruddha took leave of the Tathagata and left for Ceti country and in the bamboo grove which lay east of where the Buddha was residing, he started practising meditation. He began practising in a walking posture for fifteen successive days (without lying down). The strain was so severe that he became tired and weak; he could not help sitting down under a bamboo grove where he continued his meditation contemplating on the eight thoughts of a great being (*Mahapurisa vitakka*). (Vide 10-Anuruddha Mahavitakka sutta, 3-Gahapati vagga, Attthaka nipata, Anguttara Nikaya). Having acquired seven of them, he became exhausted through strain at the eighth stage. When the Buddha knew of his distress, he came personally to the bamboo grove and helped him to complete the eighth stage, by expounding the *Mahapurisa vitakka sutta* together with the four *Ariyavamsa* discourse. Foreseeing that the very same forest would serve as a sufficing condition (*upanissaya paccaya*) for attainment of Arahathship, the Buddha instructed him. "Anuruddha, carry on with your work during the next Lent also at this place" After this, the Tathagata left by means of *Iddhividha Abhinna*, arriving simultaneously at the forest of Bethakala near the town of Susumagira of Bhagga country. On arrival there, the Tathagata preached the discourse on the eight *Mahapurisa vitakka* to the bhikkhus residing in the forest there.

Venerable Anuruddha kept the next two Lents at the bamboo grove as instructed by the Tathagata and continued to practise meditation and in due course attained the Fruitional stage of Arahatta.

### The Venerable Ananda

The Venerable Ananda listened to the discourse given by the Venerable Punna, son of a Brahmin woman called Mantani, who explained the arising of the 'I-concept' based on the five aggregates (*Khandas*) with the illustration of reflection of one's own face from the clear surface of a mirror or a cup of water. He also taught Ananda the *Teparivatta Dhamma* concerning the three characteristics, *anicca*, *dukkha*, *anatta* of the five aggregates. As a result of hearing these discourses from the Venerable Punna and reflecting on them, the Venerable Ananda achieved the *Sotapattiphala* and became a Stream-winner. (Sam,2, 86-87)

### Venerables Bhagu and Kimila

After all the Theras had gained Arahatsip, as described above, the Venerables Bhagu and Kimila also practiced Vipassana meditation and in due course, they also became Arahats.

### The Venerable Devadatta.

The Venerable Devadatta also engaged himself in meditation practices but he was able to achieve only eight mundane Jhanic attainments with the power of *iddhi* possible to those who are yet of the world (*puthujjanika-iddhi*). (He was not an Ariya bhikkhu but only an ordinary bhikkhu with Jhanic power)

### Preaching the Ambalathika Rahulovada Sutta.

The Tathagata preached the novice Rahula quite a number of discourses, namely, (1) *Sāmanera panhā* (2) *Rāhula Saṃyutta* (3) *Abhinha Rāhulovada Sutta* (4) *Mahā Rāhulovada Sutta* (5) *Cūḷa Rāhulovada Sutta* and (6) this *Ambalathika Rāhulovada Sutta* under discussion.

To amplify: After having inaugurated Rahula as a novice, the Tathagata considered: "Young children are apt to talk regardless of the credibility and propriety of their words; this being so, Rahula who is still of very tender years had better be given advice and instructions". He therefore sent for him and said, "Son Rahula, novices should avoid

speaking of things that are contrary to the Ariyan Path and Fruition; son Rahula, you should speak only about things of such nature as are relevant to the Path and Fruition".

The Tathagata then went on to preach the discourse of '*Sāmanera panhā*', in keeping with the tradition of all the past Buddhas. The discourse is in the form of a catechism, consisting of simple Dhammas suitable for novices, arranged in progressive order with items of Dhamma ranging from one to ten.) (Khu,1,3).

Again, the Tathagata reflected, "young children are fond of telling lies, saying, "I have seen those things (which they have not seen), and "I have not seen those things (which they have seen. "Rahula must therefore be advised not to speak any falsehood". Giving illustrations that could be understood merely by looking with sensory eyes, to wit, four examples of water cups, two examples of military elephants, and one example of the surface of a mirror, he preached the *Ambalatthika Rāhulovada Sutta* (Ma,2,77).

Then the Tathagata taught Rahula '*Abhinha Rāhulovada Sutta* which showed him how to expel attachment to the four requisites, how to abandon the desire for five-fold sensual pleasures, and the great advantages of association with good and sincere friends (Khu,1,328).

Furthermore, the Tathagata taught Rahula the group of dhammas entitled '*Rāhula Samyutta*' in order to enjoin him to banish the desire for attachment to any of the three existences. (Sam,1,439)

Then '*Mahā Rāhulovada Sutta*' was taught to instruct Rahula not to harbor carnal thoughts fascinated by his own physical beauty (*gehassita chandaraga*), thinking, "I am of very graceful form; my complexion is clear and bright' (Ma,3,83)

And '*Cūla Rāhulovada Sutta*' was preached just after his ordination as a bhikkhu, before the end of his first Lent, in order to help him achieve the Arahatsip.(Ma,3,424/Sam,2,324).

It should be noted that among these suttas, the exact place and time of exhortation of the *Abhinha Rāhulovada Sutta* cannot be ascertained because the Tathagata preached it to Rahula time and again as opportunity presented, regardless of place and time.

The Tathagata started giving discourses on the *Rahula Samyutta* from the time novice Rahula was seven years up to the time he received ordination and was beginning his first Lent.

*Mahā Rāhula sutta* was taught when he was eighteen years while he was still a novice (*Sāmanera*).

*Cūḷa Rāhula sutta* was taught when he received ordination and began his first Lent.

*Sāmanera Panhā* and this *Ambalatthika Rāhulovada sutta* were preached when Rahula was a novice at the age of seven.

Of all these discourses; *Abhinha Rāhulovada sutta* was taught as a standing instruction to be followed by Rahula throughout his life. *Rāhula Samyutta* discourses were given in order to make Rahula's mind become impregnated with Insight Knowledge (*Vipassana Ñāna*). *Mahā Rāhulovada sutta* was taught in order to dispel *gehassita chandarāga*. *Cūḷa Rāhula Sutta* was preached just after the ordination of Rahula, before the end of the first Lent, in order to help him achieve the Arahathship after gaining maturity in the fifteen factors for deliverance (*Vimutti-paripācāniya*). *Sāmanera Panha* was preached to refrain from speaking improper words (matters non-beneficial to attaining the Path and Fruition). The following *Ambalathika sutta* was preached to refrain from knowingly or deliberately telling lies. (excerpts from Mattha,3/88-89).

The time was when the Tathagata was residing at Veluvana monastery in Rajagaha during the second Lent, and Rahula, (then a young novice) was residing in Ambalatthika meditation monastery, so called because it was built near a mango tree at the far edge of Veluvana monastery and living a life of solitude (*Vive ka*).

(Just as a thorn naturally has a sharp point from the beginning of its growth, so young Rahula practices physical solitude, *kaya viveka* and mental solitude, *citta viveta*, ever since he was a youthful novice at the age of seven without having been exhorted by any one)

At that time one cool evening, the Tathagata, after rising from the *Phalasamapatti* state, went to Ambalattika meditation monastery, of novice Rahula. When Rahula saw the Tathagata coming from a distance, he arranged the seating place for the Tathagata and placed in readiness the water for washing the feet of the Tathagata. The Tathagata sat on the reserved seat after washing the feet (merely as a gracious acceptance of service rendered by a dutiful disciple because his feet were free from dust.) Novice Rahula seated himself at a spot free from the six kinds of fault, after making respectful homage to the Buddha.

(1) The Tathagata left a small amount of water in the basin after washing his feet and asked Rahula, 'My son Rahula, do you see the small amount of water I have left in the basin?' 'Yes, my Lord', replied Rahula. Then the Tathagata exhorted, 'Just as the water left in the basin is small, so the good and noble bhikkhu Dhamma which should be practised to eradicate the defilements is hopelessly small in the physical and mental continuum of persons who knowingly speak lies without any sense of shame. Thus was the first exhortation given by the Tathagata.

(2) The Tathagata then poured away the little water he had left in the basin, and asked 'Son Rahula, do you see I have thrown away the small amount of water?' 'Yes, my Lord', replied Rahula. Then the Tathagata gave the second exhortation. 'Just as I have thrown away the little water in the basin, so persons who knowingly speak lies without any sense of shame throw away the good and noble bhikkhu Dhamma that eradicates defilements. Thus the Tathagata gave the second exhortation.

(3) The Tathagata then overturned the basin placing it with its mouth downwards, and asked Rahula, "Do you see that I have overturned the basin?" "Yes, my Lord", replied Rahula. Then the Tathagata exhorted, "Son Rahula, just as the basin has been overturned, so persons who knowingly speak lies without any sense of shame have already repudiated the good and noble bhikkhu Dhamma that eradicates defilements. Thus the third exhortation was given by the Tathagata.

(4) Then again the Tathagata turned up the overturned basin (note that by that time there was not a drop of water in the basin) and said to Rahula, "Son Rahula, do you see this basin without a single drop of water in it and altogether purposeless? "Yes, my Lord" replied Rahula. The Tathagata then spoke the fourth word of advice. "Like this water basin without a drop of water in it and altogether purposeless, so too within the shameless persons who knowingly tell lies, all is vain, and there is not a drop of the good and noble bhikkhu dhamma that eradicates defilements.

(5-6) The Tathagata, thereafter, proceeded to expound the discourse that follows:

"My son Rahula, take the worldly example of the performances of a warring elephant of a king. It worked with its fore-legs as well as with its hind-legs in a battle field. (It killed and destroyed all enemies coming within its reach by striking with its fore-legs or by kicking with its hind-legs). It worked with the fore as well as with the hind part of its body. (As the opportunity arose, it smashed the enemy's roofed wooden defense barricades with its fore or hind part of its body.) It also worked with its forehead. (i.e. preparatory to charging or stampeding in any direction it gauged and took position moving backwards to muster strength and then stared intently. The very sight of the immense warrior elephant thus glaring fixedly struck terror into thousands of enemy troops and they fell into disarray). It also made use of its ears (i.e. it struck off the enemy arrows with its ears and made them fall to the ground). It also worked with the pair of its tusks. (It gored the enemy elephants, horses, elephanters, cavalry, infantry with its pair of tusks). It used its tail too. (It cut and hacked the enemy with knives and maces tied to its tail with creeping vines). However it still protected its trunk by coiling it into its mouth.

"Reflecting on these performances of the king's warring elephant the thought occurred in the mind of its rider.' This warrior elephant of the king on the battlefield works with both its pair of fore-legs and hind-legs, and works with the fore part

of its body as well as with its hind part. It works with its forehead, its pair of ears and pair of tusks. It also works with its tails. However it protects its trunk by thrusting it into its mouth. This warrior elephant has no mind yet to sacrifice its life.

"Son Rahula, at another time, the king's great warrior elephant on the battlefield (as stated above) worked with its fore-legs as well as with its hind-legs ..... etc. .... It fought also with its tail. With its trunk also, (holding aloft iron or wooden maces, and striking and demolishing targets eighteen cubits high) it worked. On seeing this behavior of the warrior elephant, it occurred to the mind of the rider 'The king's great warrior elephant in battle has worked with its fore-legs as well as with its hind legs ..... etc. .... It has worked with its tail. It has also worked with its trunk. The king's warrior elephant has given up its life. Now there is nothing the mighty warrior elephant would not do "Son Rahula, I say unto you, in like manner for the shameless person who knowingly tells lies, there is no act of demerit which he dares not do.

"Therefore Rahula, you should resolve, "I will not speak lies, even jokingly or for fun" and strive to observe the three Training Rules (*Sikkhā*)."

The Tathagata had thus profoundly stressed the importance of refraining from telling lies.

The Tathagata went on, "Son Rahula, what do you think of what I am about to ask you? (i.e. you may answer me as you please). What are the benefits of a mirror". Rahula replied, "One can benefit from it by improving one's facial appearance when one sees black moles and pimples reflected in it".

"In like manner Son Rahula, one's physical, verbal and mental activities should be performed after due observation and consideration with one's eye of wisdom." With this brief preface to serve as a table of contents, the Tathagata delivered the discourse dealing elaborately on how one should do bodily actions, how one should speak, and how one should exercise the mind with great care and only after careful consideration using one's intellectual faculty.



(The full elaboration of the discourse should be read in the Text or its translation. But a brief account of it is given below).

When an intention arises to perform a physical, verbal or mental act, before doing any of them, one should deliberate first thus: "Would my intended physical, verbal or mental action prove to be harmful to myself, to another person or to both? Would they become demeritorious deeds which would cause increased suffering?" If, after deliberation, the intended actions would prove harmful to oneself, to another or both; or would become demeritorious deeds which would cause increased suffering, one should strive to avoid performing such physical, verbal and mental deeds. On the otherhand, if, after deliberation, these intended actions prove not to be harmful to oneself, to another or to both; or would become meritorious deeds which would promote happiness, (*sukha*) then such physical verbal and mental deeds should be performed.

Like wise, while in the process of performing a physical, verbal or mental deed, one should deliberate thus: Is what I am doing, saying, thinking harmful to myself, to another or to both? Are they demeritorious deeds causing increasing suffering?" If, after deliberation, they are found to be so, one should with moral aversion cease performing any of these acts (without proceeding any further). On the other hand, if, after deliberation, they are found to be not harmful to oneself, to another or to both, but are meritorious deeds furthering the cause of happiness, well being, they should be pursued with vigour, again and again.

When any physical, verbal or mental act has been performed, one should deliberate (as in the foregoing manner) thus: "Have my physical, verbal mental action been harmful to myself, to another or to both? Have they been demeritorious deeds that have caused increased suffering?" If they proved to be so, with regard to demeritorious physical and verbal deeds, admission must be made before the Buddha or a wise and knowledgeable fellow disciple, frankly, clearly and without reservation that such wrong physical and verbal acts had been committed. Then one must discipline oneself that such wrong deeds will not recur in future.

With regard to demeritorious mental activities that have been committed, one should be weary of such mental acts, one must be ashamed of them and loathe them. One must also exercise restraint and discipline oneself that these misdeeds will not recur in future.

If after such retrospection and deliberation one finds that one's physical, verbal or mental deeds have not harmed oneself or another or both but all have contributed to promote happiness and well being, then night and day one may dwell in the joy and satisfaction associated with those meritorious deeds and one must further strive in the observance of the three training precepts (*Sikkha*).

All the Buddhas, Pacceka Buddhas and Ariya Savakas of the past, the future and the present had lived, will live and are living in this manner, deliberating and retrospectively on their physical, verbal and mental deeds and had purified, will purify and are purifying all their actions, physical, verbal and mental.

The Tathagata concluded the discourse with these words of exhortation, "Dear son Rahula, you should bear in mind always to strive for the purity of your bodily action, of verbal action, of mental action by way of deliberation and reviewing them and to develop the observance of the three training precepts.

(Herein a question may arise as to when and where such physical, verbal and mental actions may occur and how they should be purified and absolved.)

This is the answer. No time should be lost; the physical and verbal actions done in the morning should be purified and absolved immediately after meal as one sat down at the very place where one would spend the day.

To elaborate : A bhikkhu is required to review as to what offensive physical and verbal act has he done against any one from dawn to the time of his arrival at the place where he is sitting to spend the day. If he recollects that he has done any thing wrong against some one by physical or verbal action, he should make a confession to fellow bhikkhus, by way of informing them or making them clear about his

offence. In case he is free from such taints of wrong deeds, he will actually feel great personal joy and satisfaction and should remain in that state of ease and happiness.

As regards mental activities, he should seek to be purified and absolved from them while still going on the alms-round, by retrospectively thus : While going on the alms-round today, has there arisen in me, because of visual objects etc., any mild or stronger form of greed, any offensive anger or any kind of delusion? If he should find that some such thought has indeed arisen in him, he should resolve: 'I will not allow such thoughts of greed, anger or delusion to arise again'. If no wrong thoughts have arisen in him (he should feel joy and satisfaction for himself and) he should continue to dwell in that serene state of mind.

End of the Discourse on Ambalathika Rahulovada Sutta.



### Story of the wealthy man Anāthapindika.

The Tathagata granted permission to bhikkhus to make use of the monastery as a requisite in compliance with the request by the wealthy man of Rajagaha who made it through the bhikkhus while the Tathagata was residing there during the second Lent<sup>1</sup>.

The wealthy man of Rajagaha and the wealthy man Anāthapindika of Savatthi were brothers-in-law, one having married the sister of the other. On the occasions when the wealthy man of Rajagaha found the prices of goods in Rajagaha were far below those current at Savatthi, he bought them up and went to Savatthi with five hundred carts loaded with goods for sale. One yojana away from Savatthi, he would send intimation ahead of him of his arrival to Anāthapindika who would then

---

<sup>1</sup>For full particulars, reference may be made to Burmese translation of *Senāsanakkhandhaka of Vinaya Cūla Vagga.*)

arrange a grand reception for his brother-in-law, and the two would enter the city together in the same carriage. If the goods found a ready market in Savatthi, the richman of Rajagaha disposed of them at once. In case they did not find a ready market, he left them at the house of his sister and went back. The wealthy man Anathapindika also did likewise.

At the time when the Tathagata was keeping his second rains-retreat in Rajagaha, the wealthy man Anathapindika of Savatthi had five hundred carts loaded with products of Savatthi and left for Rajagaha. He sent a written intimation of his arrival to the wealthy man of Rajagaha from a distance of one yojana (as on the many previous occasions).

The wealthy man of Rajagaha could not, however, give any heed to his intimation, for he had just returned from the reclusive monastery of *Sitavana* where he had listened to a discourse by the Tathagata and having invited the Tathagata and the Sangha to partake of alms food the following day, he was busily engaged with the work of making necessary arrangements for the reception and provision of food.

Anathapindika approached the city thinking all the way that a grand reception would await his arrival as on previous occasions, but he found no reception even on his reaching the door of the house of the rich man of Rajagaha; and on entering the house, there was not much of an effusive speech of welcome on the part of his host, but only, "Wealthy man of Savatthi, how are your children?; Are they in good health?, I hope you have had an easy and comfortable journey." And he kept himself busy with the work in hand.

As stated above, the wealthy man of Rajagaha could only extend these few words of welcome to Anathapindika. He was giving priority to the ceremonial functions and he went on giving instructions to his men, "Mind that you get up early on the morrow and get busy with boiling the broth, cooking rice and curry, and preparing mixed salad dishes, all replete and in time for the Tathagata and Sangha".

It crossed the mind of Anathapindika, "The wealthy man of Rajagaha used to leave aside all other business and talked with me enthusiastically on previous occasions, but now he is full of anxiety about holding a grand feast for one reason or the other. Is he doing all

this with his servants to bring some one's daughter here to get married to his son (*Āvāha*) or give away his daughter in marriage with some one's son (*Vivāha*) or else, has he invited King Bimbisara and his retinue of soldiers to a feast tomorrow?

When every thing had been arranged, the wealthy man of Rajagaha came to Anathapindika and engaged himself in conversation with him enthusiastically as ever before. Whereupon, Anathapindika asked him;

"Wealthy man, you used to leave aside cares of business and speak with me joyfully on all previous occasions. But now you seem to be anxious about holding a food-offering ceremony, giving priority to making arrangements with your men in preparation for the ceremony to be held tomorrow. Is it for an *Āvaha* ceremony to bring someone's daughter to your house for marriage to your son, or for a *Vivāha* ceremony to give away your daughter in marriage to someone's son? Are you preparing for a great alms giving ceremony or have you invited King Bimbisara and his retinue of soldiers to a feast tomorrow?"

The wealthy man of Rajagaha replied:

"Wealthy man, I will not be holding *Avaha* or *Vivaha* ceremonies. Nor have I invited King Bimbisara and his retinues to a feast. In reality, I have been making necessary arrangements for a grand alms-giving ceremony. I have invited the Tathagata and his Sangha for the performance of meritorious deed tomorrow."

When Anathapindika heard the word 'Tathagata' uttered enthusiastically by the wealthy man of Rajagaha, his entire body was pervaded throughout with five grades of joyful satisfaction, (*pīti*), namely, slight sense of interest (*khuddikā pīti*), momentary joy, (*khanikā pīti*), absorbing interest with flood of joy (*okkantika pīti*), interest amounting to thrilling point (*ubbegā pīti*) and fully developed, intensive rapture or zest suffusing the whole body and mind (*pharanā pīti*).

F, 16 The wealthy man Anathapindika experienced these five fold rapturous joys which overwhelmed him from head to instep and again from instep

to head; they spread from the side of his body to the middle and from the middle to the sides. Feeling these five kinds of ecstasy without intermission, he asked the wealthy man of Rajagaha, 'Wealthy man, did you say the 'Tathagata'? Thrice he asked and thrice he received the same reply, 'Yes, I did say 'the Tathagata'.

Anathapindika then inquired about the Tathagata, 'In this world, it is rare indeed even to hear the word 'Tathagata'. Would it be possible for me now to go and pay homage to the Tathagata, the Homage-Worthy, the Perfectly-Self Enlightened?"

Wealthy man of Rajagaha deliberated, 'It is as difficult to approach the Buddha as it is to go close to a venomous snake. The Tathagata's reclusive monastery where he is residing is close to the cemetery and it would be impossible for him to go there late in the evening. He therefore made this reply:

"Wealthy man, there is no time now for you to go and pay homage to the Tathagata, the Homage-Worthy, the Perfectly Self-Enlightened. You will be able to go and pay homage to the Tathagata only early tomorrow morning."

Upon hearing this, Anathapindika thought to himself, 'I shall be able to pay homage to the Tathagata only early in the following morning' and he went to sleep with no other thought or object in mind except that of the Tathagata. To explicate : Anathapindika was no longer interested in the merchandise that he had brought and the attendants at his service from the moment he heard the word, 'Tathagata'. Forgoing his dinner, he went up to the topmost chamber of the seven-storey mansion and laid himself on well-laid out and decorated bed and fell asleep, muttering 'Tathagata .. Tathagata'.

When the first watch of the night was over, Anathapindika got up to contemplate on the attributes of the Buddha time and again. His sense of deep devotion towards the Tathagata became exceedingly great (*balavasaddhā*), so much so that his body emitted a radiance through *piti*. It was as if a thousand oil lamps were lit or the sun or the full moon rose in the sky, thereby dispelling the darkness of the night. He then thought to himself, 'I have been so forgetful of the passing of time. Even the sun has risen' 'Thus he murmured and got up. But when he

saw the moon still in the sky, he realised that two more watches of the night had yet to pass before dawn. So he laid down on his bed once again.

Thus he passed the two watches of the night, getting up at the end of each watch. At the close of the last watch immediately before dawn, he walked along the rails of the balcony till he reached near the main entrance door. He found the entrance doors of the seven storey mansion already opened by themselves. He came down the seven storeys and walked along the main street in the city.

As he came near the city gate named Sivaka, the guardian devas (who were Ariyas) kept the gate open in advance. They considered, 'This wealthy man has come with the intention of paying homage to the Tathagata and serving him; this rich man on his worshipping the Tathagata for the first time will be established in the *Sotapatti phala*, and surpassing all others will become the noblest of disciples in rendering service to the three Gems of the Buddha, the Dhamma and the Sangha. He will build a magnificent, matchless monastery the doors of which he will keep open to all Ariya Sanghas from the four directions of the world. It would not be proper to close the door against him.'

As Anathapindika went out of the city, the radiance emitting from his body disappeared and darkness reigned with the result that fear and trembling arose in him and the hair of his body stood on end. Therefore he felt like retreating even from that very spot. (Rajagaha was a cosmopolitan city with a population of eighteen crores --- nine crores within the city and nine crores without. The city gates were closed after dusk and the bodies of those who died at unearthly hours during the night were thrown over the walls around the gate. Blinded by the darkness, Anathapindika accidentally trod on a freshly discarded dead body and tripped against another corpse with his insteps. This caused the flies on the decomposed bodies to rise with a roar and buzz about him and the foul smell from the dead bodies rushed into his nose. So his devotional faith towards the Tathagata began to weaken resulting in the disappearance of the radiance from his body which was emitted because of the rapturous joy he felt within. Darkness fell. Fear and trembling

arose and his hairs stood on end. He therefore felt like retreating even from that very place).

A celestial ogre intending to make the wealthy man exert himself to continue his journey, approached Anathapindika without making himself visible and addressed him with a voice as sweet as the tinkle of a small golden bell:

*Satam hatthi satam assā  
satam assatarāṭṭhā  
satam kaññā sahaṣṣāni  
āmukkamanikuṇḍalā  
ekassa padavīiharassa  
kalan nāgghanti solasiṃ*

O! wealthy man of great fame, one hundred thousand royal elephants worthy of kings, one hundred thousand royal horses worthy of kings, one hundred thousand royal chariots drawn by special breed of horses, *assatara*, and one hundred thousand royal maidens bedecked with priceless jewels are not worth two hundred and fifty sixth (1/256) part of the good volition (*cetana*) behind each step that takes you on your way to the monastery to pay homage to the Tathagata, to listen to the discourse, and to render service to the Sangha.

O! wealthy man Anathapindika, Go forward. Proceed on your way. Only your going ahead will be noble and worthy of praise. Your retreat will be ignoble and not worthy of praise.

On hearing this he considered, 'I thought I was all alone, but I now find there are some companions with me. Why should I be afraid? He became bold and courageous. His powerful devotional faith in Tathagata began to get strengthened once again. Therefore darkness disappeared, and there was light, and fear and trembling were dispelled.

He was on the march once again on the fearful journey through the cemetery with dead bodies in varying states of decomposition scattered all over. The voices of domestic dogs and jackals disturbed his mind with the result that light disappeared and darkness fell as on the



previous occasion. Here again, the celestial ogre Sivaka came to his aid and he was on the road again.

When for the third time, as on the previous occasions, he encountered the disheartening circumstances of disappearance of light, the Sivaka ogre by making him nurture his devotional faith in the Tathagata again and again helped him overcome all the dangers.

Continuing on his journey, he eventually arrived at the forest grove of Sitavana. It was about day-break and the Tathagata was walking up and down the passage in the open space.

As Anathapindika was walking along an idea crossed his mind 'In this world, Purana Kassapa and other sectarian teachers have declared themselves as Enlightened Buddhas. It being so, how should I know whether the Tathagata is the truly Self-Enlightened Buddha?' 'Then again in his mind the thought occurred, "All the people know me as Anathapindika for my generosity in feeding the destitute. But the name given me by my parents, Sudatta, no one knows except myself. If the Tathagata is the truly Self-Enlightened Buddha, he will call me by the name given by my parents, Sudatta."

On seeing Anathapindika from a distance, the Tathagata came down from the passage way and sat on the seat reserved for him. As Anathapindika came nearer, the Tathagata, having read his mind, addressed him, 'Come dear Sudatta'. Anathapindika was rejoiced when he heard the Tathagata calling him by the name given by his parents. He approached the Tathagata and paid homage prostrating himself at the feet of the Tathagata and addressed the Blessed one, 'Most Exalted Bhagava, have you enjoyed a sound sleep?' The Tathagata said in reply:

*Sabbada ve sukhan seti  
brahmano parinibbuto  
yo na limpati kāmesu  
sitibhuto nirupadhi*

(O! Wealthy man Anathapindika), The arahat who is not besmeared with desire for sensual pleasures, being free from burning passions, is calm and serene. He is also free from the

three *Upādis*, namely, defilement (*kilesa*), accumulated kamma (*abbisankhara*) and sensual passion (*kamaguna*). Having expelled all evil and all defilements having been eradicated, all sorrow has ended and as such that Arahāt, at all times, night and day truly sleeps and lives in ease of mind and body.

*Sabbā āsattiyo setvā  
vineyya hadaye daram  
upasanto sukham seti  
santiñ pappuyya cetasā*

(O! wealthy man Anathapindika) The Arahāt who has got the five sensual pleasures cut off by means of the four-fold *Arahattmagga*, and extinguished the flames of defilements, has frequently entered the tranquil state of Nibbana by way of *Arahattaphala samapatti*. Having extinguished the blazing fire of defilement, he sleeps and lives with ease and tranquillity.

Having thus explained how he lives with ease and comfort, in all the four postures of the body, the Buddha taught the wealthy man Anathapindika the course of moral practice leading to the Path and Fruition, (as stated before) namely, (1) *Dāna-kathā* (2) *Śīla-kathā* (3) *Sagga-kathā* (4) *Magga-kathā*, *kamanamādinava*, *nikkhame ānisansa kathā* in correct sequence of his teaching. When the Buddha knew that the wealthy man Anathapindika had become possessed of the mind adaptable, soft, and free from hindrances, eager, gladdened, purified and pelucid he delivered the Dhamma originally discovered by him (*Sammukkamsika Dhamma Desana*) of the Four Noble Truths. Then the wealthy man Anathapindika became established in *Sotapattiphala*.

Then the wealthy man Anathapindika addressed the Bhagava thus:

'So delightful is it! Glorious Buddha! So delightful is it! Glorious Buddha. As what is placed downwards has been turned, so goes a worldly simile, as what is covered has been disclosed, as a man losing his way has been guided in the right direction, as a lamp has been lighted in the dark with the thought, "those who have eyes may see the various shapes of things", so the Buddha has clearly taught me the Dhamma in manifold ways; Glorious Buddha, I recognize and approach the

Buddha, the Dhamma and the Sangha for refuge and shelter. May Glorious Buddha, take me as a devotee with the three-fold refuge from today onwards up to the end of my life. Having thus taken refuge in the three Gems, the wealthy man Anathapindika extended an invitation to partake of a meal, saying, "Glorious Buddha, in order that I may gain merit and have delight, may you accept my offering of a meal together with the Sangha tomorrow morning".

The Tathagata remained silent, signifying his acceptance of the richman's invitation to the morning meal.

Whereupon, Anathapindika joyously rose from his seat and after paying respect to the Buddha by circumambulating him clockwise, left for the residence of his host, the wealthy man of Rajagaha.

#### **Wealthy man of Rajagaha, Merchants' Association and King Bimbisara offered to render their services**

The news of the acceptance by the Buddha of Anathapindika's invitation to a meal instantly spread all over the city. The wealthy man of Rajagaha, on hearing the news, offered to render service, saying, "I have heard the news that you have invited the Sangha headed by the Tathagata to a meal tomorrow in order to gain merit. You happen to be a visitor here; may I offer you assistance with provisions and payment for services? Anathapindika refused the offer saying he would be able to manage the affair with what was in his own possession.

Members of the merchants' association of Rajagaha also came forward to help by way of supplying provision and payment of services in the same way as the wealthy man of Rajagaha. Their offer was also not accepted in like manner.

King Bimbisara also offered to render help in the same way as the others, and his request was also refused in the same way: 'Your Majesty, I need no such help; it should be possible to hold the feasting ceremony with what I have.'

On the following day, Anathapindika held the food-offering ceremony at the residence of his brother-in-law, the wealthy man of Rajagaha,

servicing food of great worth and delicacies. He then sat at a suitable spot and respectfully presented an invitation to his home town of Savatthi: 'Most Exalted Tathagata, may I humbly request you to be pleased to keep the Lent at our town of Savatthi together with all the bhikkhus. The Tathagata gave the reply, 'Devotee Anathapindika, the Fully Self-Enlightened Buddhas are pleased to reside in secluded places' Anathapindika replied, "Glorious Buddha who always speaks good words (*sugata*), your devotee understands full well, your devotee understands full well". Then after speaking words of Dhamma to Anathapindika, the Buddha returned to the monastery.

### Construction of temporary monasteries at every yojana between Rajagaha and Savatthi.

At that time Anathapindika was a person who had a great many friends, and his word was respected by many. He got his merchandise disposed of hastily and returned to Savatthi. On his way home, he urged the inhabitants at the intermediate stations:

"Plant gardens, build shelters for rest and lodging. Build monasteries and keep reserves of provisions for alms-giving. A Buddha has blossomed forth in the world. That Buddha will be coming to your place along this way at my request"

In response to Anathapindika's exhortation, all his wealthy associates and childhood friends, at the intermediate stations, built shelters, parks and gardens, kept provisions for alms-giving at their own expense without accepting any assistance from the wealthy man, while needy ones took the responsibility of building shelters and monasteries and set up reserve provisions for alms giving with the money that they received from Anathapindika.

Anathapindika contributed one lakh in cash and in kind such as timber and construction materials to the value of one lakh to accomplish the project of constructing a shelter and a garden at each yojana along the route between Rajagaha and Savatthi, a distance of forty five yojanas. He got back to his home town of Savatthi after completion of the work.

### **The selection and purchase of the site for Jetavana Monastery by Anathapindika.**

On arrival at Savatthi, Anathapindika looked in the surrounding localities for a suitable site for a monastery; a site which must meet the following five conditions: (1) being not too far from the city (2) being not too near the city (3) being communicable by roads (4) being of easy access for every body at any required time (5) being free from noise of the city, village and people clamouring for five sense objects. He found that the Prince Jeta's garden land met the said conditions and so he went to the prince and offered to buy it: "Your Highness, I wish you to sell me your garden at a certain (agreed) price". Prince Jeta replied, "Wealthy man, I cannot give you my garden even if you were to lay gold coins edge to edge over it."

(Note that if Prince Jeta had said, 'I cannot sell my garden'. it would not be tantamount to fixation of a price. But he happened to say, 'I cannot give you my garden even if you were to lay gold coins edge to edge over it.' That was tantamount not only to fixation of a price but also quoting an exorbitant price for it.)

Anathapindika took advantage of Prince Jeta's commitment in his speech and demanded, 'Your Highness, you have already quoted your terms for the sale of your garden'. Prince Jeta denied saying, 'I have not said a word about the sale of my garden'.

Anathapindika contended that the prince had to sell his garden while the prince argued that he had never said a word about the sale of the garden and the two finally agreed to secure the judgment of a Court of Law. The ministers who were judges passed the judgment, "Your Highness, because your Highness happened to have quoted (an exorbitant) price with the words 'even if gold coins were laid edge to edge' you have committed yourself to negotiations for the sale of your garden. (This is a worldly statement which is subtle and delicate and, as such, it requires to be pondered over with much wisdom for correct interpretation.)

Having thus won the case at the Court of Law, Anathapindika ordered cartloads of gold coins taken out and transported and laid them edge to edge over the surface of Prince Jeta's garden. For the spaces which could not be laid over with gold coins such as those occupied by trees and ponds, he had the dimensions of their girth or areas measured and placed the gold coins edge to edge over equivalent areas at other places. In this way the rich man Anathapindika spent eighteen crores of gold coins which he had stored to be used for emergencies in buying the site for the monastery.

With the first batch of cartloads of gold coins, it was found that there were enough gold coins in the carts to cover much of the garden land with them placed edge to edge except for a small area earmarked for the construction of an archway. Anathapindika ordered his men, "O men, Go and bring more cartloads of gold to cover the space for archway constructions with them."

#### **Prince Jeta donated an archway for the Monastery**

On seeing that Anathapindika's face grew brighter and brighter as he went on giving away his enormous amount of wealth, Prince reflected, 'the abandonment of immense wealth in gold coins by the wealthy man for a good cause such as this must be a noble act of charity'. With this thought, he requested the wealthy man, 'Enough, ..... enough ..... please do not lay any more coin on that plot; please be so good as to leave it for me to donate an archway for the monastery'. Anathapindika thought to himself, "This Jeta prince is a famous person, well known to all; Showing devotional faith in the teaching of the Buddha by such a famous personage will be greatly beneficial. So he gave the required plot to the Prince who proceeded to build an archway with tiered roofs for the monastery.

#### **Construction of Jetavana Monastery by Anathapindika.**

Having the garden of Prince Jeta at a cost of eighteen crores of gold coins, he spent another eighteen crores to create a magnificent monastery on it. First he caused unwanted trees to be felled, leaving the desirable ones for the sake of shade and natural beauty. The perfumed

chamber (*Gandhakuti*) for the accommodation of Tathagata surrounded by dwellings for bhikkhus together with stately seven tiered archway was constructed at a selected place. Assembly halls with terraced roofs for the Sangha, small buildings to store allowable articles, lavatories, passage ways with roofing, water wells complete with roofs over them, bath rooms for both cold and sweat baths in separate buildings, square water tanks and pavillions were constructed within the sacred precincts of the monastery, leaving nothing which would be needed.

### The site of the Monastery.

The location of the Jetavana monastery was not only the site of the monastery of this (Gotama) Buddha alone; it was also the location of the monasteries of the preceding Buddhas, such as Kassapa Buddha etc., as elaborated below:

(1) During the time of Vipassi Buddha, a wealthy man named Punabba Sumitta bought a piece of land at this very site (of Jetavana monastery), then measuring one yojana, by paying golden bricks placed edge to edge on it; and constructing a huge monastery on it, donated it to the Sangha.

(2) During the time of Sikhi Buddha, a wealthy man, Sirivattha bought land at the same site by paying (according to Jataka commentary) golden teeth of ploughs placed tip to tip; or with golden staffs placed end to end (according to Vinaya commentary) and donated it, measuring three gavutas, after constructing monasteries on it for the Sangha.

(3) During the time of Vessabhu Buddha, a wealthy man, Sothhija, bought the same place by paying golden blocks moulded into the shape of elephant legs (Jataka commentary); or golden teeth of ploughs (Vinaya commentary) placed end to end and donated it with all the buildings on it. The plot measured half a yojana or two gavutas.

(4) During the time of Kakusana Buddha, a wealthy man, Iccuta bought the same place, then measuring one gavuta, by paying gold bricks (according to Jataka commentary); or gold blocks made into the

shape of elephant legs (according to Vinaya commentary) placed end to end all over the land and donated it to the Buddha with all the buildings on it.

(5) During the time Konaguna Buddha, a wealthy man Ugga, bought the same place by paying golden tortoises (according to Jataka commentary); or golden bricks (according to Vinaya commentary) placed end to end on the land measuring half a gavuta and donated with all the buildings constructed on it.

(6) During the time of Kassapa Buddha, a wealthy man, Sumangala bought the same place, by paying gold blocks (according to Jataka commentary); or golden tortoises (according to Vinaya commentary) placed edge to edge all over the land, then measuring two (units of land measure) pais, and donated with the monasteries constructed on it.

(7) Now in the time of our Buddha, Gotama, the wealthy man Sudatta (a) Anathapindika bought the land on the same location, measuring eight pais by paying gold coins placed edge to edge on it and donated it after building the Jetavana monastery.

### Samvega, (Sense of religious urgency)

Reflecting seriously on the varying extent of land and the price paid for the site of the monastery at the time of the seven Buddhas, one should arouse in oneself the sense of religious urgency that 'all the worldly attainments of success and prosperity are subject to deterioration' and thus now is the appropriate time for strenuous effort to free oneself from attachment to these worldly attainments through developing weariness and disenchantment on them.

### Buddha's journey to Savatthi.

When the delightful and pleasant Jetavana monastery had been constructed at a cost of eighteen crores of gold, on an enchanted plot costing eighteen crores of gold, Anathapindika sent a special messenger to the Tathagata with his respectful invitation. The Tathagata upon receipt of the invitation through the messenger, decided to proceed to Savatthi, (partly because he fore-saw that Savatthi would become one of his residences for the greater part of his life, and partly because it



would also serve as a favourable "victory ground" for him to save men, Devas and Brahmas, by millions, from the slough of suffering; and with that end in view, Tathagata left Veluvana monastery in Rajagaha for Savatthi, accompanied by the Sangha, stopping one night at the shelters of each station, located at intervals of one yojana along the route, as arranged by Anathapindika in advance.

When Tathagata arrived at Vesali on the way to Savatthi, he resided at the monastery with terraced roofing in the Great Grove (Mahavana). At that time the Tathagata laid down the rule for the appointment of a monk, with the consent of the community (*Natammavaca*) to take charge of the repairs (*navakamma*) necessary for monastic dwellings donated by the public.

Then after leaving Vesali and proceeding towards Savatthi, pupils of the group of six monks, *Chabaggi*, having gone along ahead of the Order of Bhikkhus with the Buddha at its head, took possession of good dwelling places, good sleeping places, saying, "this will be for our preceptors, this will be for our teachers".

Whenever the Tathagata went on a journey, accompanied by the Sangha, the Venerable Sariputta, though he could selfishly claim the privilege of staying close to the Tathagata as the right-hand Chief Disciple, would never do so and leave other monks to shift for themselves, but would follow at the tail end of the procession, personally caring and seeing to the comfort of aged and sick monks.

Such being the case, on this occasion also, having followed at the very end of the procession, he arrived late and all beds and places being taken up by the *Chabaggi*, had no where to sleep and had to spend the night at the foot of a tree. The Tathagata, coming to know of this incident, considered, "If, while I am still living, monks behave without respect for and showing deference towards one another, what would they do when I pass away into *Parnibbana*?"

Being filled with great concern (*dhammasamvega*) he caused an assembly of monks to be held in the morning and asked, "Bhikkhus, is it true that bhikkhus of the *Chabaggi* group, having gone along ahead

of others, took possession the good dwelling places for themselves, denying suitable resting place for the elder bhikkhus?"

On being replied that it was true, the Tathagata rebuked them and after having given a reasoned Dhamma talk, asked the bhikkhus, "Who, bhikkhus, is worthy of priority concerning place, water (for washing), and food?"

Some bhikkhus replied, "Bhikkhus of the royal blood have prior claim to a place, washing water and food"; some said, "Bhikkhus of the Brahmin class have the priority concerning a place, washing water and food"; others again said, "it was bhikkhus of the wealthy householder class who are worthy of being offered first a place, washing water and food", while others maintained, "one well versed in Vinaya, or a Dhamma teacher (*Dhamma kathika*), one possessed of the first Jhana..... the second Jhana..... the third Jhana..... the fourth Jhana..... is worthy of the first offer of a place, washing water and food". Finally, there were those who opined that "one who is a *sotapanna*..... *sakadāgamī*..... an *anāgāmi*..... a *sukkha vipassana Arahat* (without *abhiññās*),..... a *tevijja Arahat* (with three-fold wisdom)..... a *chalabhiñña Arahat* (with six-fold superknowledge)..... is worthy of the best seat, the best water (for washing), the best alms."

Then the Buddha addressed the monks, "Bhikkhus, in dealing with the matter of priority right to a place, water (for washing) or alms-food, in my Dispensation, consideration of birth, blood, caste, social status is of no importance; nor of being a Bearer of *Vinaya*, of *Suttanta*, of *Abhidhamma*; nor of being possessed of the First Jhana etc., nor of being a Sotapanna, etc.

"In reality, dear bhikkhus, those within my Dispensation should live paying due to respect, rising up for and greeting, joining the palms in salutation, giving proper homage according to seniority; the best seat, the best water (for washing), the best alms should be accorded in order of seniority. In the matter of receiving the best seat, etc., only seniority in age, seniority with regard to the duration of monkhood is of consequence. Thus the bhikkhu with such seniority is worthy of such priority.

"At the present time, bhikkhus, Sariputta is the chief Disciple on my right. He keeps the Wheel of Dhamma taught by me in motion; he is one worthy of my place when I am no more. That Sariputta had to spend the whole of the previous night walking or sitting under a tree (for want of a place to rest). Bhikkhus, when there are such acts of disrespect and lack of consideration on the part of bhikkhus even during my life time, how will the members of the Order behave in the time to come (after I have passed into Farnibbanna)."

Then the Tathagata, in order to exhort the bhikkhus, told them (the story of three friends, a partridge, a monkey and an elephant) the *Tittira Jataka* of *Kulavaka Vagga* in *Ekakanipata*. "Bhikkhus, in ancient times, even animals came to an understanding: 'It is not proper to be disrespectful and disobedient to one another; we will determine first who is the oldest amongst us and then we will show due respect and pay homage to him'. Then having chosen the oldest of them, they honoured him and obeyed him, thus cultivated the practice of 'Paying respect to the elder' (*Vuddhapacayana*) which led them to rebirth in the Deva world.

*Ye vuddhamapacāyanti  
narā Dhammassa kovidā  
ditthe Dhamme ca pāsānsā  
samparāye ca suggati*

Those who are wise in the practice of paying respect to the illustrious and the aged, choose among the three categories of birth, virtue and age, those who are both virtuous and senior in age to honour and show respect. Such people are worthy of praise even in this life and have prospects of becoming celestial beings in future existences.

"Bhikkhus, even those three animals, a monkey, an elephant and a partridge could live together, for mutual benefit, courteous, deferential and polite to one another. If you, who have gone forth and received ordination through faith (*saddhapabbhita*) in my *Sasana* which dispenses righteous instructions, live without mutual benefit, without courtesy, without regard for one another, can such behaviour be seemly or proper? (Indeed, it cannot be). Such conduct lacking due respect and

humility also cannot arouse respect and esteem for this *Sasana* in those who are still outside it ..... etc."

After thus delivering discourses extensively on the importance of mutual respect and reverence, by way of condemnation of the *Chabbaggi* monks, the Tathagata proclaimed the following rule of Discipline:

"I allow bhikkhus, paying due respect, rising up for and greeting, joining the palms in salutation, giving proper homage according to seniority; the best seat, the best water for washing, the best alms should be accorded in order of seniority. Bhikkhus, in the matter of monastic dwellings and bed places belonging to the whole Order, *Sanghika*, one should not hinder their occupation according to seniority. Whoever should do so, there is an offence of wrong doing (*Dukkata Apatti*).

#### Ten kinds of person who should not be worshipped.

Having thus laid down the two rules, one concerning what was allowable, *amuñāta*, and the other concerning what is not allowable, *paṭikhita*, the Tathagata continued to address the monks saying "*dasayime bhikkhave, avandiyā*, etc., there are these ten individuals enumerated here, who should not be worshipped:"

- (1) A bhikkhu ordained earlier should not worship another who received ordination later.
- (2) A bhikkhu should not worship any one who is not a bhikkhu.
- (3) A bhikkhu should not worship any one belonging to a different communion (*sanvāsa*), who speaks what is not Dhamma (*adhammavādi*), even if he is more senior.
- (4) A bhikkhu should not worship a woman.
- (5) A bhikkhu should not worship a eunch.
- (6) A fault free bhikkhu (*Pokata*) should not worship a bhikkhu under suspension from association with the rest of the Sangha (*Parivāsa*).

- (7) A fault free bhikkhu (*Pakata*) should not worship a bhikkhu who has been judged to undergo the stages of penance again starting from the first stage of *Parivāsa* for having transgressed one of the *Sanghadisesa* offences which are expiable (while observing the *Parivāsa* penance; while undergoing a further period of penance, *Manatta* for six days to gain approbation of the *Sangha*; while having undergone *Manatta* penance is about to be reinstated (*Abbhana*).
- (8) A fault free bhikkhu should not worship a bhikkhu, who having observed the *Parivasa* penance has been judged to undergo the *Mānattha* penance.
- (9) A fault free bhikkhu should not worship a bhikkhu who is undergoing the *Mānatta* penance.
- (10) A fault free bhikkhu should not worship a bhikkhu who, having undergone *Mānatta* penance is about to be reinstated (*Abbhāna*).

Having thus explained the ten kinds of person not worthy of homage, the Tathagata continued to give an enumeration of three types of individuals who deserve to be venerated.

**Three types of individual worthy of veneration.**

Bhikkhus, these three types of individual are worthy of veneration. They are:-

- (1) A bhikkhu ordained earlier is worthy of veneration by one ordained later.
- (2) A senior bhikkhu belonging to a different communion if he speaks what is Dhamma (*Dhammavadi*) is worthy of veneration.
- (3) In the world of sentient beings with its men, Devas and Brahams, the Homage-worthy, Perfectly Self-Enlightened, Exalted Buddha is worthy of veneration by all beings.

**Another Ruling relating to the occupation by Senior Bhikkhus of pavillions, temporary sheds meant for the Sangha but which have not yet been formally consecrated.**

All along the route by which the Tathagata proceeded to Savatthi in the company of the Sangha, local people built pavillions, temporary sheds furnished with mattings and Assembly Halls in anticipation of their visit. Here again, disciples of the *Chabaggi* group went ahead and occupied the dwelling places as on the previous occasion and as a result the Venerable Sariputta was obliged to spend the night under a tree as he arrived with the group at the end of the procession. The Tathagata investigated into the truth of the matter and condemned the *Chabaggi* bhikkhus and prescribed a set of additional ruling for observance by the Sangha.

*"Na bhikkhave udissakatampi yathāvuddham paṭibāhitabbam, yo paṭibaheya apatti dukkatassa....* Bhikkhus, (even before formal consecration), pavillions and temporary sheds etc. meant for the whole of the Sangha can be occupied, without hindrance, by the Sangha in order of seniority; whoever should hinder such occupation in order of seniority, there is an offence of wrong doing (*Dukkata Apatti*)"

(N.B. Concerning the *Chabaggi* monks, *Vajirabuddhi Tika* says that *Chabaggi* monks made their appearance only when the Tathagata had completed the first twenty years of his Buddhahood. And there is the statement in *Majjhima Nikaya*, 1, 175, "*Ārādhayimsu me bhikkhū cittam ....* etc." which means, "During the first Bodhi period of twenty years, the bhikkhus had behaved so well as to give much delight to the Tathagata". It is a matter for consideration here that the account given above of the *Chabaggi* monks can be reconciled with those given in the *Vajirabuddhi Tika* and the *Majjhima Nikaya* only by assuming that the story given here of the *Chabaggi* monks, behavior was lifted from the account of the journey made to Savatthi on a later occasion. just to highlight the rulings made by the Tathagata on some types of offences.)

**Ruling concerning decorated furnishings at the  
alms-house in the village.**

Now at that time, village people appointed 'elevated places', *uccassayana*, and 'exalted places', *mahasayana* in the alms-house of the village, furnished with a long-furred carpet, a many-coloured wool coverlet, a white wool coverlet, a wool coverlet with floral designs, a cotton quilt, a woolen carpet decorated with animal forms, a carpet with furs on both sides, a carpet with furs on one side, a coverlet with gold embroidery, a silken coverlet, a large size woolen carpet, an elephant rug, a horse rug, a chariot rug, rugs of black antelope hide, a coverlet of bear skin, a fancy red ceiling, a couch with red cushions at either end. Bhikkhus, not being certain whether they are allowable did not sit on them. When the matter was related to the Tathagata, he made the following ruling concerning them:

"*Anujarāmi, bhikkhave, thapetvā tīṇi āsandiṃ pallaṅkam tūlikam.... etc.* Bhikkhus, with the exception of three things, a couch with very long legs, an alter or divan, a cotton quilt, I allow you to sit down on what is appointed by the people as elevated places, exalted places but not to sleep on it."

In the village in the same alms-house, people provided a low bedstead quilted with silk cotton on both upper and lower sides; Bhikkhus, being meticulous, did not use it. The Tathagata made a ruling also in this matter:

"*Anujānāmi, bhikkhave, gihivikata m abhinisīditum, na tveva abhini pajjitum*".... I allow, bhikkhus, to sit on the bedstead quilted on both sides, provided by the people, but not to sleep on it."

**Tathagata being conducted by Anathapindika to the Jetavana  
Monastery holding a grand reception ceremony.**

As stated above, Tathagata accompanied by many bhikkhus set out on his journey from Rajagaha towards Savatthi and in due course arrived at the boundary of the Savatthi region. The wealthy man Anathapindika having attended to preparations for a grand ceremony to make the formal offering and dedication of the monastery to the

Tathagata with the symbolical pouring of water, made arrangements for conducting the Tathagata to the monastery on a grand scale as described below:

### Princess Sumana.

King Pasenadi Kosala had a daughter named Sumana; in the time of Vipassi Buddha, she was the daughter of a wealthy man and was known as Saddha Sumana. Being quick-witted and intelligent, she took the opportunity of offering Ghana milk rice prepared with pure unadultrated milk to the Vipassi Buddha before any one. Having made her offering to the Sangha headed by the Tathagata, she made this wish, "Glorious Buddha, wherever I am reborn throughout the long journey of the Samsara, may I never have to earn my living in want and with great difficulty; and may I be reborn as a much loved and charming lady for offering this garland of Jasmine flowers and be known as Sumana". Her wishes were fulfilled; she was never reborn in the planes of misery; she was born alternately in the plane of the humans and the devas throughout the past ninety one world cycles. In all these existences, because showers of Jasmine flowers fell almost knee deep at her birth, she had always been named "Sumana". (For full particulars, reference may be made to Anguttara Commenary vol. 3.)

At the time of present Buddha Gotama, she became the daughter of King Pasenadi Kosala, born of his Chief Queen.

At the time of her birth, there was a shower of Jasmine flowers, spreading nearly knee deep all over the palace. She was, therefore named Sumana by her royal father. There were also five hundred girls who were born simultaneously with Princess Sumana. The Princess and her five hundred connatals were brought up in luxury. As insignia of office and trappings of rank, the Princess was provided with five hundred coaches; and whenever she moved out from the palace, she was accompanied by her five hundred birth mates each in her own coach.

Throughout the whole of Jambudipa, one of the Four Great Continents, there were only three young women provided as symbols of rank and office by their fathers with five hundred attendants each with a



coach. They were (1) Princess Cundi, daughter of King Bimbisara (2) Visakha, who later became the donor of the Pubbayum Monastery, daughter of wealthy man Dhanancaya. and (3) Sumana, daughter of King Pasenadi Kosala.

Princess Sumana was seven years old when the Tathagata came to Savatthi for the acceptance of the Jetavana Monastery. Anathapindika went to King Pasenadi Kosala and made the request, "Your Majesty, the coming of Tathagata to our town of Savatthi is a blessing for us and it is a blessing for your Majesty as well; I should like to request you to send your daughter Princess Sumana together with her five hundred attendants each carrying a pot filled with water and scents and flowers, for the reception of the Tathagata. The king agreed saying, "Very well, Wealthy man" and made necessary arrangements to comply with Anathapindika's request.

As ordered by her father, Princess Sumana set out, attended by followers in full insignia befitting a princess to take part in the reception of the Tathagata. She and her attendants made offerings of scents and flowers to the Tathagata and took seats at appropriate places. The Tathagata taught Dhamma to Sumana with the result that Sumana and her five hundred attendants attained the Sotapattiphala; at the same time, five hundred other young women, five hundred elderly women, and five hundred laymen devotees also attained Sotapattiphala.

Thus two thousand persons achieved the stage of *Sotapatti Ariyas* while the Tathagata was still on his way to the Jetavana Monastery that day. (From Anguttara Commentary Vol. 3.)

### **The pomp and grandeur of Anathapindika's own welcoming arrangements.**

Anathapindika had not only arranged for Princess Sumana's participation in conducting the Tathagata to the monastery, but also for his son and five hundred attendants, sons of wealthy men of Savatthi. In compliance with his father's wishes, Anathapindika's son and his five hundred attendants in their five-hued ceremonial dress, each holding a bright streamer, took their positions in front of the Tathagata and led the procession right up to the monastery.

The two daughters of Anathapindika, Cula Subhadda and Maha Subhadda came next to their brothers with their five hundred attendants, daughters of wealthy men of Savatthi, each carrying a pot full of water.

Then came the wife of Anathapindika, Punna Lakkhana, in full ceremonial dress and bedecked with jewelery, accompanied by the wives of five hundred wealthy men, each holding a gold or silver cup full of sweet scents and other offerings.

At the end of the procession to welcome and receive the Tathagata came Anathapindika himself in a brand new dress of a wealthy man, accompanied by his party of five hundred wealthy men, all in brand new dresses of wealthy men.

Led by the long procession, the Tathagata proceeded attended by many bhikkhus, causing the surrounding forest glow golden as liquid golden yellow orpiment with the aura of his presence. Then with the infinite grace and glory of an Omniscient Buddha, the Tathagata entered the precincts of Jetavana Monastery.

#### **Donation of the Jetavana Monastery to the Sangha from the four directions with the ritual pouring of water.**

(At the conclusion of the reception ceremony), Anathapindika approached the Tathagata and respectfully invited the Tathagata and attendant bhikkhus to a meal offering ceremony at his residence the following day. Having made all arrangements for a sumptuous meal of hard and soft food at his house the next morning, Anathapindika sent a messenger to the monastery to report, "Most Exalted Buddha, it is time to partake of the meal; the food offering is ready". The Tathagata accompanied by the Sangha came to his house and took seats at the places reserved for them. Anathapindika personally attended upon the Tathagata and the bhikkhus, offering delicious food to them with zealous devotion and sat a suitable place. He then addressed the Tathagata, "Most Glorious Tathagata, may I know as to how the Jetavana Monastery should be dedicated".

The Tathagata then gave this instruction to Anathapindika, "It should be proper for you to dedicate the monastery to all bhikkhus who have



without mental distraction; it enables them to live without danger, with happiness; it enables them to cultivate Jhanic practices; it enables them to practice Insight meditation (*vipassana*). (Those who donate monasteries should make it a point to bear in mind such benefits rendered to the Sangha by the monastery they have donated). Buddhas, past and present, have extolled the donation of a monastery to the Sangha, as being noble.

(3) *Tasma hi pandito poso  
sampassam̐ atthamattano  
vihāre kāraye ramme  
vāsayettha bahussute*

Therefore a wise man of good birth who considers well and perceives the benefits for him in the human world and for Nibbana, should build monasteries for Sangha to live with ease and comfort of body and serenity of mind. Having built them, he should dedicate them to bhikkhus who are wise and virtuous and have the necessary qualities and qualifications to control and look after them as a Presiding Monk, namely, (1) one who has full ten years (*vassa*) of bhikkhu's life; (2) one who is well acquainted with two sections of *Vinaya*, viz *Bhikkhuvibhanga* and *Bhikkhunivibhanga*; (3) one capable of administering and performing various acts pertaining to Sangha according to the *Vinaya Rules, Sanghakamma*; (4) one with the knowledge of the aggregates and; (5) and one versed in the analytical knowledge of *nama and rupa*. It is necessary to select a Thera with these qualifications to be appointed a Presiding Monk of these monasteries.

(4) *Tesam annañca pannañca  
vattha senāsanāni ca  
dadeyya ujubhutesu  
vippasannena cetasā*

To the inwardly upright, virtuous and knowledgeable residents of the monastery, the donors should offer alms-food, soft drinks, robes and lodging with a mind full of faith in the Three Jewels and in the

beneficial results of good deeds. (With this verse the Tathagata instructs the donors of monasteries to support the resident monk with four requisites also).

(5) *Te assa Dhammam desenti*  
*sabbadukkhapanūdanam*  
*yam so Dhammam idhaññāya*  
*Parinibbātināsavo*

The learned bhikkhus who reside in the monasteries should, in return, preach with compassion and loving-kindness, the Dhamma which would lead to emancipation from all the sufferings of the cycle of rebirth for the benefit of donors of these requisites. In my Dispensation with eight-fold wonders, the donor of the monastery endowed with pure faith, hearing such Dhamma discourse from the resident monks and practising them according to their instructions, will become enlightened, and with complete eradication of *asavas* and cessation of suffering became *Arahats*.

The Tathagata, after delivering this discourse on the benefit of donating a monastery (*Viharanisamsa*), in appreciation of Anathapindika's dedication, returned to the Jetavana Monastery.

### **Nine-month long celebrations for the successful dedication of the Monastery.**

The ceremony held for the successful donation and dedication of the monastery started from the second day (of the arrival of the Tathagata) and lasted nine months. The ceremony held by Visakha (wife of a wealthy man) on the occasion of the dedication of the Pubbarama Monastery lasted only four months. The cost of the nine month's celebration consisting of offering of various alms amounted to eighteen crores.

Thus, as a measure of support to the Sasana, Anathapindika spent altogether fifty four crores (five hundred and forty millions in gold), namely, eighteen crores for the cost of the site, eighteen crores for the construction of the monastery and eighteen crores for the celebrations for the successful dedication of the Monastery.

End of the story of Anathapindika.

..... ☆ .....

**Helping his brother, Bhikkhu Nanda, attain Arahathship by diverting his thoughts on his betrothed Janapada Kalyani to celestial maids.**

While the Tathagata was residing at the Jetavana monastery, after accepting it, (his younger brother) bhikkhu Nanda being unhappy as a member of the Order, told his associates, "Friends, I am not happy living the life of a bhikkhu in this Sasana, practising the three training rules reluctantly; I am unable to continue on observing these noble precepts. I intend to give up the practice and return to a layman's life".

When the Tathagata heard the news, bhikkhu Nanda was sent for and asked, "Have you told your many bhikkhu companions," Friends, I am not happy living the life of a bhikkhu in this Sasana, practising the three training rules reluctantly; I am unable to continue on observing these precepts. I intend to give up the practice and return to a layman's life." Whereupon, bhikkhu Ananda gave this frank admission, 'It is true, my Lord'.

The Tathagata asked him gain, "Dear younger brother Nanda, why have you been observing the three noble precepts against your will? Why can you not continue to observe these training rules? Why do you want to give up the life of a bhikkhu and revert to that of a layman?"

"Most Exalted elder brother, when I left the royal palace carrying your alms-bowl on my shoulder, my sister and betrothed, the Sakyan princess Janapada kalayani came dashing to the window with her hair half-dressed, and asked of me, "O

your Highness, please come back quickly." I keep thinking of these words of my betrothed ever since I left the palace, and that is the reason why I have to practise the three training rules against my will and pleasure, and I am no longer capable of observing the precepts. I shall now give up the life of a bhikkhu and revert to a layman's life" Ananda gave this simple and honest answer.

The Tathagata then went off to Tavatimsa realm of the Devas by supernatural powers, taking along bhikkhu Nanda, as though lifting him by the arms. On the way, the Tathagata showed bhikkhu Nanda an aged female monkey sitting on a burnt stump of a tree, with her ears, nose, tail and other parts of the body, big and small, burnt and tattered. On arrival at Tavatimsa, the Tathagata drew bhikkhu Nanda's notice to five hundred celestial maids, with feet as tender-red as pigeons' feet, who had come to wait upon Sakka and who were standing and worshipping the Tathagata.

"Dear younger brother Nanda. What do you think of the question that I am about to ask? Who looks prettier and lovelier when your sister, your fiance, the Sakyan Princess Janapada Kalayani is judged in comparison with the five hundred celestial maids with feet as tender-red as pigeons' feet?" asked the Tathagata.

(The beautiful delicate feet, with the colour of the pigeons' feet of these maids was the result of their offering of emollient oil for the feet of bhikkhus who were disciples of the Kassapa Buddha.)

(A question might arise here as to why the Tathagata had aroused the sensual passion of bhikkhu Nanda by showing him the celestial maids when his mind was already affected with lust.

The answer is "The Tathagata had done so with the object of easily removing the defilements from bhikkhu Nanda's mind." To explain further: A wise and experienced physician in an attempt to cure a patient suffering from a disease caused by excessive phlegm, bile and wind usually gives doses of oily medicine to enhance the existing symptoms; that is followed by an emetic to remove the phlegm with

ease and speed through the mouth or by purging with doses of purgative. In the same way, the greatest of all the physicians, who has no equal to match his skill in admonishing worthy beings, had shown the fair celestial maids to bhikkhu Nanda who was affected by *kilesa* in order to (let his mental defiling grow and reach the climax preparatory to eradicating it by means of Ariya Magga which serves as an emetic to throw out the *kilesa*, as a purgative to purge the *kilesa*.)

Where upon, Nanda Thera gave this reply:

Most Exalted Elder brother, the old female monkey which you have shown me on the way with her ears, nose, tail and tattered through being burnt, can in no way be considered as lovely and pretty. And like wise, my sister (fiance) Sakyan Princess Janapada Kalayani, too, when compared to the five hundred fair maids of the celestial world, can no longer be regarded as a model of beauty; indeed the five hundred celestial maids are far more pretty and lovely then the princess.

Then the Tathagata gave him this assurance:

"Dear younger brother Nanda, take delight in the practice of the three training rules; take delight in the holy practice of the precepts which are my instructions. (If you actually take delight in the noble practice), I assure you of acquiring the five hundred celestial maids with dainty feet, tender-red as pigeons' feet.

When the Tathagata gave such an assurance, Nanda Thera responded:

"Most Exalted Elder brother, if you assure me of the five hundred fair maids with feet tender-red as pigeons' feet, I shall undertake to observe the three noble training rules of the Sasana with delight at your feet."

(It might be asked here why the Tathagata had assured Nanda of the five hundred fair maids for the gratification of sensual pleasure, which is a mode of ignoble living (*Abrahmacariyavasa*) while he wanted Nanda to observe the three noble practices.



The answer is: Bhikkhu Nanda's carnal attachment to Princess Janapada Kalayani was intense; and the Tathagata had therefore diverted his attention to the fair celestial maids as a measure of temporary relief before he could relieve him totally of the prime trouble by means of Ariya Magga; hence the use of *Abrahmacariyavasa ploy*.

Then the Tathagata together with Nanda bhikkhu vanished from Tavatimsa and appeared in the Jetavana Monastery instantaneously. When bhikkhu Nanda took leave of the Tathagata and had gone to his chamber to spend the time, the Tathagata explained all that had transpired to the bhikkhus who had assembled to listen to his preachings.

Having informed the assembled bhikkhus of what had happened, the Tathagata gave the following instructions to them: "Go ye now, bhikkhus, to rebuke bhikkhu Nanda, by calling, " O you big servant (one who wants something for his service);" You are a great buyer (who buys something at a fixed price in exchange).

In giving these instructions the Tathagata was making use of a practical method employed in the world. A skillful person extracts an old nail left firmly fixed to a post or a plank by hitting it with a fresh but smaller one to cause it to vibrate before it could be loosened by hand and removed. In the same way, bhikkhu Nanda's intense attachment deeply rooted in the person of princess Janapada Kalavani was first given a loosening jolt and then removed by the temporary diversion to the more attractive celestial maids. Then in order to do away with the new object of sense-pleasure and put bhikkhu Nanda back on the path of noble practice, the Tathagata gave the above instructions to the assembled bhikkhus.

In obedience to the Tathagata's instructions, those bhikkhus went about spreading news that the son of the step-mother Maha Pajapati Gotami and the younger brother of the Tathagata, bhikkhu Nanda had been observing the noble precepts out of desire for the five hundred celestial maids, and that the Tathagata had also assured him his acquiring the five hundred celestial maids with feet tender-red as pigeons' feet. On hearing this, bhikkhu Nanda's friends went and heaped reproaches on him.

"It is being said by the people "bhikkhu Nanda is a big servant; bhikkhu Nanda is a great buyer. He has been observing the precepts because he desires the five hundred fair maids of the world of Devas; and the Tathagata has also assured him of getting the five hundred maids with feet as tender-red as pigeons' feet".

Being called 'big servant', 'great buyer', by his bhikkhu associates, bhikkhu Nanda was filled with unbearable shame and disgust. He retired to a secluded place and strove with mindful and earnest diligence in the observance of the bhikkhu training rules with his mind inclined towards Nibbana and soon, drained off all *asavas*, attaining full-fledged Arahatsip. He became recognised as one of the eighty *Asiti Maha Savakas*.

Whereupon an Arahata Brahma approached the Tathagata at the dead of night and standing at a suitable place joyfully informed the Tathagata of the bhikkhu Nanda's attainment to Arahatsip. Immediately after hearing the tidings, the Tathagata, on contemplating, "How fares he?", became aware of bhikkhu Nanda's attainment of Arahatsip through his Omniscience.

#### **Bhikkhu Nanda's supplication to the Tathagata.**

As stated above, because of reproaches and jeers heaped upon him by his associates, bhikkhu Nanda developed a sense of religious urgency through shame and remorse:" Having entered the Dispensation with well-expounded Teaching and Disciplinary rules, *Dhamma-vinaya*, I have held the Tathagata responsible for assuring me of getting the five hundred celestial maids; as such I have committed a grave misdeed." Accordingly he strove hard relentlessly until he attained Arahatsip. He then considered that it would be well to go to the Tathagata and relieve the Blessed One from the responsibility of the assurance he had made. He therefore approached the Tathagata early the following morning and made the following address:

"Most Exalted Elder brother, you have assured me of the hands of five hundred celestial maids with feet as tender-red as

pigeons' feet. Most Exalted Elder brother, I now absolve you from that responsibility".

The Tathagata said in reply:

"Dear younger brother Nanda, I have already known by judging the state of your mind analytically with my own that you have attained Arahatship. An Arahat Brahma has also informed me earlier of your attainment to the exalted state of an Arahat. I have been absolved from that responsibility from the very instant your mind became free of *asavas*."

The Tathagata was greatly pleased and made the following utterance of exultation:

*Yassa nittinno pañiko  
maddito kāmakaṃkamo  
mohakkhayam anuppatto  
sukhadukkhesu na vedhati sa bhikkhu*

An Ariya person has crossed the slough of wrong view, in other words, the slough of Samsara, by way of the bridge of the Ariya Path to the Shore of Nibbana. The thorn of sensual passion that pierced the (heart of) all sentient beings has been crushed to dust with the cudgel of wisdom. Such an Ariya person has traversed the Fourfold Path of Magga and reached Nibbana, attaining the Arahatship, the point of cessation of delusion, *moha*. That Arahat bhikkhu, who has thus destroyed the darkness of defilements, is no longer effected by joy or sorrow; he remains unshaken and indifferent to the worldly vicissitudes.

Soon afterwards, a number of bhikkhus asked bhikkhu Nanda, "Friend Nanda, you have said in the past that you were not happy within the Sasana as a bhikkhu; what is the state of your mind these days?". Bhikkhu Nanda replied, "Friends, at present, I have no mind at all to revert to the life of a layman".

On hearing these words of Nanda, bhikkhus rebuked him, saying,

"Bhikkhu Nanda is telling lies; he is talking about ~~Arahatta~~. He had quite recently been saying that he was not happy in this Sasana; and now he is saying that he has no mind at all to revert to the life of a layman".

They then went to report the matter to the Tathagata.

The Tathagata told them:

"Bhikkhus, in the immediate past, Nanda's corporeality was just like a badly roofed house; now it is like a house which is properly roofed. True, this bhikkhu Nanda strove for the highest level of attainment of a bhikkhu after he had seen the fair maids of the world of Devas, with the result that he has now reached that highest level of attainment (the Arahatsip)".

The Tathagata then went on giving a discourse by reciting the following two verses:

(1) *Yathā agāram ucchannam  
vutthī samativijjhati  
evam abhāvitam cittam  
rāgo samativijjhati*

Bhikkhus, just as rain-water can penetrate and flood a badly roofed house, so the mind which has not been trained through tranquillity and insight meditation is liable to be inundated with defilements, that is, to be flooded with the rain waters of lust, malice, delusion, conceit etc.

(2) *Yathā agāram succhannam  
vutthī samativijjhati  
evam subhāvitam cittam  
rāgo samativijjhati*

Bhikkhus, just as rain-water cannot penetrate and flood a properly roofed house, so the mind which has been trained through tranquillity and insight meditation cannot be inundated with defilements, that is, cannot be flooded with the rain waters of lust, malice, delusion and conceit etc.

At the end of discourse, a large number of bhikkhus attained the Fruitional stage of Sotapatti Magga; thus this discourse was of great benefit to many a person.



**Discourses relating the story of Kappata.**

Some time after, bhikkhus were gathered at the Assembly hall for discussion of the Dhamma and speaking in praise of the Tathagata thus:

"Friends, Buddhas are really great and worthy of praise with the snapping of fingers. Even bhikkhu Nanda who had almost lost interest in the life of a bhikkhu has been disciplined by employing the fair maids of the world of Devas as an allurement."

At that monment, the Tathagata entered the Hall and asked, "Bhikkhus, what kind of discussion are you engaged in as I came into the Hall?" "We are assembled here, discussing the marvellous way in which the Tathagata has disciplined the bhikkhu Nanda."

Whereupon the Tathagata said, "Bhikkhus, it is not only on this occasion that I have exhorted this bhikkhu Nanda by employing a female sex as an enticement; I had also won him over by using the same tactic in the past", and at the request of the bhikkhus, the Tathagata expounded the Kappata Jataka that follows.

Bhikkhus, once upon a time, there was a trader by the name of Kappata in the city of Baranasi during the reign of King Brahmadata. He had a donkey that could carry a load weighing one Kumbha<sup>2</sup> and could travel seven yojanas a day.

Once he went to the city of Taxila accompanying a caravan of merchants carrying merchandise for sale. He set his donkey free to seek for pasture to graze in while his goods were being disposed of.

As the donkey wandered around grazing on the soft ground near the palace moat, he espied a female donkey and approached it. He eventually got engaged in conversation with the female donkey and the two exchanged words of love:

Female donkey ... From where do you come, please?

Male donkey ... I come from Baranasi.

---

<sup>2</sup>Kumbha; A measure of weights equal to one third of a cart load.

F.D. .... On what business have you come?

M.D. ... I have come for trading purpose.

F.D. .... What is the weight of the goods that you have to carry?

M.D. ... I have to carry goods weighing one Kumbha.

F.D. .... How many yojanas have you got to cover carrying such a load in a day?

M.D. ... I have to cover seven yojanas a day.

F.D. .... Have you someone to look after you tenderly wherever you go?

M.D. ... No, I haven't any.

F.D. .... If so, it's a pity you have to go about unattended. You must be undergoing great hardships, aren't you?

(She spoke with seductive insinuations to win his heart.) On hearing these seductive words from the female donkey, the male donkey lost interest in his work and remained listless.

After disposing of his merchandise, the trader Kappata went to his donkey and said, 'Come, dear son, let's be off'. The animal replied, 'You may go by yourself, I cannot follow'. When the trader had made several vain attempts to persuade the donkey to obey him, he decided to use threats to make him obey:

(1) *Patodam te karissāmi  
solasangulikandakam  
sañchindissāmi te kāyam  
evam jānāhi gadrabha*

You mean and wicked donkey, I shall have to goad and beat you with a cane sixteen inches long and tipped with iron spikes. I shall have to lacerate your body until it is broken and torn into tatters. Take heed of that.

When the donkey heard this threat, he retorted by saying: "If that should be the case, I, too, have to mind as to how I should retaliate."

(2) *Patodam me karissasi  
solasaṅgulikanṇḍakam  
purato patitthahitvāna  
uddharitvāna pacchato  
dantam te pātayissāmi  
evam jānāti Kappata.*

O merchant Kappata, if you will actually goad and beat me with cane sixteen inches long and tipped with iron strikes, I shall stand firmly on my fore-legs and raising my hind-legs, kick with all my strength to break and knock off all your teeth to the ground. You might as well know that.

When the trader Kappata heard this bold and aggressive retort of the donkey, he wondered 'what was the cause of it' and looking round, he saw a maiden donkey nearby. Then he thought to himself, "This maiden donkey must have taught him to speak like this; it would be wise to allure him away, telling him, 'My son, I will get you such a maiden donkey'.

(3) *Catuppadiṃ sankhamukhiṃ  
nariṃ sabbaṅgasobhiniṃ  
bhariyam te ānāyissāmi  
evam jānāhi gadraha.*

My big son, I will find a young, beautiful, well-formed maiden donkey with a face as fair as a conch-shell to be your wife soon after our arrival back at Baranasi. My son, you take my word.

The donkey was every pleased with the encouraging words of his master and replied:

(4) *Catuppadiṃ sankhamukhiṃ  
narim sabbangasobhinim  
bhariyam me ānāyissami  
evam jānāhi Kappata  
Kappata bhiyyo gamissāmi  
yojanāni catuddasa*

My benefactor and master Kappata. ... If it is really true that a beautiful well-formed youthful maiden donkey with a face as fair as a conch-shell will be obtained for me soon after we reach back to Baranasi, I, your good son, am prepared to work with redoubled zeal, breaking a journey of fourteen yojanas a day. You can take my word.

Trader Kappata then took the donkey with him to his home town of Baranasi. A few days after their arrival at Baranasi, the donkey came to Kappata and asked him to fulfil his promise: "My benefactor and master, Kappata, have you not promised me a beautiful well-formed youthful maiden donkey for my wife? Then trader Kappata replied:

"Yes, it is true I have said so; I will not fail to fulfil my promise. I will find you a beautiful, well-formed youthful maiden donkey; but I will be able to provide food for you only (not for your wife). It is up to you to think if the food that I offer you will or will not be sufficient for both of you. And another thing I wish to emphasise is that, in due course, you will have off-springs to look after, and here again, it is for you to consider whether the food which I provide you will be sufficient for your growing family. (It is not my responsibility) Think of it my son."

Even as the trader Kappata was giving this sound advice, the donkey's attachment to the female donkey severed.

Recounting the Kappata Jataka in his discourse, the Tathagata revealed: "Bhikkhus, the Sakyan Princess Janapada Kalyani then was the maiden donkey, Bhikkhu Nanda then was the donkey and I was then the trader Kappata. I had thus at a time long past also disciplined bhikkhu Nanda with the lure of female sex", and brought the discourse to conclusion.

End of Kappata Jataka.

..... ☆ .....



((N.B. Concerning the second, the third and the fourth Lents kept by the Tathagata at Rajagaha, the ancient treatise of 'Wasozin' (An account of series of Lents kept by the Tathagata), deals only with three stories described below:

- (1) story of a friend of Venerable Sariputta, who was a Brahmin (as mentioned in Dhammapada Commentary, Vol. 1.)
- (2) Story of Cunda, a butcher of pigs (as mentioned in Dhammapada Commentary, Vol. I.)
- (3) Story of Mahakassapa Thera (as mentioned in Dhammapada Commentary Vol. 1.)

The Wasozin treatise concludes the account of the second, the third and the fourth Lents with these words: Thus the Tathagata in keeping with the promise given to King Bimbisara, spent the second, the third and the fourth Lents at Rajagaha, expounding such discourses showing innumerable men and Devas the path to Nibbans.

Sayagyi Saya Lin, the first to be charged with this great work, 'Maha Buddhavamsa', however included in the table of contents, the following stories, in connection with the second, the third, and the fourth Lents kept by the Tathagata at Rajagaha:

- (1) An account of wealthy man Jotika.
- (2) An account of wealthy man Jotila.
- (3) An account of wealthy man Mendaka.
- (4) An account of the wealthy man Kakavaliya
- (5) An account of the wealthy man Punna.
- (6) The story of Sumana, the flower seller.
- (7) The story of Aggidata and one thousand hermits.
- (8) The story of Jambuka.

We propose to deal with the accounts of the five wealthy men listed above when we come to the separate volume on the Jewel of the Sangha. The stories of Sumana, Aggidatta and Jambuka will be given in the following Chapter Twenty One of this Volume.



End of Chapter Twenty.



## CHAPTER TWENTY ONE

### STORY OF SUMANA, FLOWER SELLER OF RAJAGAHA

The Tathagata delivered a discourse, beginning with the words *Tanca Kamman katam sadhu*, on the advantages of 'a rewarding deed of merit' with reference to a flower seller named Sumana of Rajagaha during his stay at Veluvana Monastery in that city.

The flower seller used to present King Bimbisara with eight kunzas<sup>1</sup> of Spanish Jasmine (*Jasminum grandiflorum*) every morning for which he was granted eight pieces of money each day.

One day as Sumana was entering the city with flowers as usual, the Tathagata attended by many bhikkhus was also coming into the city, for alms-round with rays of light shining forth from his body, with great dignity, splendour and glories of a Perfectly Enlightened Buddha.

(N.B. Sometimes, the Tathagata used to go round, like an ordinary bhikkhu on an alms-round, with the six rays of light concealed by the robes. (For instance) the Tathagata went out all alone incognito to a distance of thirty yojanas to meet Angulimala, the notorious robber. But at other times the Tathagata used to go with rays of light shining, for instance, when he went on alms-round in the city of Kapilavatthu. And, on this day when he was to meet with Sumana, the flower seller, the Buddha entered the city of Rajagaha with rays of light shining forth from his body, with great dignity, splendour and glories of a Perfectly Enlightened Buddha).

When Sumana saw the Tathagata, with a body like an ornamented gateway column, replete with thirty two major characteristics and eighty minor characteristics, and six coloured rays of light, coming from his body, entering Rajagaha city to go on alms-round, with great dignity, splendour and glories of a Perfectly Enlightened Buddha, there arose in him intense devotional faith in and reverence for the Buddha. He then considered: "What kind of offering should I make to gain

---

<sup>1</sup>Kunza.. a measure for capacity.

merit?" and, when he could not think of anything with which to pay homage to the Buddha, he thought of offering the flowers in his hands. But on second thought he came to realize, "These are the flowers meant for presentation to the king as a matter of daily routine. If I fail to do my daily duty, I shall be liable to be put in the stocks, bound with ropes and imprisoned or executed or expelled from the country; what should I do?" A bold thought entered his mind at this juncture: "Let the King kill me should he so desire, put me in jail, expel me from the country: I might be rewarded by the king for carrying out the daily duty; such a fortune would be sufficient for my livelihood duration the present life. But if such an offering is made to the Tathagata, it is certain that I will reap the fruits of my meritorious act for aeons of world cycles to come". He therefore decided to sacrifice his life in making his homage to the Tathagata.

He was at the same time mindful that he should act while his intense devotional faith was at its pitch and so he started offering the flowers in the following manner:-

(1) First he threw two handfuls of flowers high above the head of the Tathagata; the flowers formed into the shape of a canopied ceiling, hanging in the air right above the head of the Tathagata.

(2) Then, he threw two handfuls of flowers in a like manner; the flowers came down, standing in the form of a flower curtain on the right side of the Tathagata.

(3) Again, he threw two handfuls of flowers in a like manner; the flowers came down, standing in the form of a flower curtain at the back of the Tathagata.

(4) Lastly, he threw two handfuls of flowers in a like manner; the flowers came down, standing in the form of a flower curtain on the left side of the Tathagata.

Thus the eight kunzas of jasmine flowers stood round the Tathagata like a canopied ceiling and curtains of flowers on the top, on the right, left and back, leaving a space in front just enough for the Tathagata to enter. It is remarkable that the flowers fell in place with the flower stalks turning inward and petals outward in an orderly fashion.

The flower curtain around the Tathagata like a silver screen moved along together with the Tathagata as if it were an animate body, without sundering apart or sliding down; it stopped wherever the Tathagata made a rest. Rays of light emitted continuously from five places, namely, the front and the back, the right and left sides and from atop the head of the Tathagata like millions of flashes of lightning. Having emerged from the body of the Tathagata, every single shaft of these rays first turned clockwise three times round the Tathagata, forming a mass of bright light (resembling a beam of search-light directed towards the Tathagata) the size of a young palm tree, before shooting away ahead of the Tathagata.

The whole city of Rajagaha (with a population of eighteen crores) agog with excitement and agitation, came out clamourously; of the eighteen crores of men and women, there was none who came out without holding vessels filled with alms-food for offering.

All the citizens, clamouring and proclaiming aloud and courageously like a lion king, throwing aloft their twisted head-dresses, moved along in large groups, leading the procession before the Tathagata. The Tathagata, in order to bring out the attributes of Sumana, the simple flower seller, walked along the main streets within the city covering an area of approximately three gavutas. Hence the entire body of Sumana was suffused with five forms of delightful satisfaction, *Pitti*.

Sumana, went along with the Tathagata only for a distance; like a person who took a plunge into a red orpiment-coloured stream of water, he entered into the compass of the brilliant rays emitted by the Tathagata and after paying reverential homage to the Tathagata, left for home carrying the empty flower basket.

On arrival at his house, his wife asked him, "Where are the flowers?" He replied, "My dear, I have offered the flowers to the Tathagata". His wife then asked, "What about presentation of flowers to the king? Whereupon, Sumana replied, "Let the king kill me should he so desire expel me from the country, but I have offered the flowers to the Tathagata at the sacrifice of my life; the eight kunzas of flowers which formed only eight handfuls had indeed worked miracles. (He related in detail what actually had happened). The whole eighteen crores of

citizens are now following the procession in honour of the Tathagata, making loud proclamations. What you are hearing is their cheers congratulating me on my deed of merit. "He thus told her in a delightful tone full of deep satisfaction.

Sumana's wife being very foolish and ignorant took not the slightest interest in the miraculous display of the glories of the Buddha and scolded her husband with abusive words and said, "Kings are harsh and ruthless; once you have incurred their displeasure, your hands and feet are cut off; I may also be adversely effected by your acts, bringing ruin to me". Nagging continuously, she left, taking away her children to see the king at the palace. The king asked her: "What is your complaint?" She complained thus: "Your Majesty, my husband, Sumana, the flower seller, had offered the Buddha all the flowers that were to be presented to you as usual and returned home empty handed. When I asked him "Where are the flowers?" he related me what he had done with them. I scolded him in many ways, saying, "Kings are very harsh and ruthless; once you incurred their displeasure, your hands and feet are cut off. I may also be adversely effected by your act, bringing ruin to me." After severing my connections with him, I have come to your presence. Whatever he has done, good or bad, that is his own affairs, his responsibility. Let him fare according to his deeds, all by himself. your Majesty, I have forsaken that husband of mine and I make this formal report in advance to your Majesty."

King Bimbisara had become a noble disciple (*Ariya sāvaka*) having attained the fruitional stage of *Sotapana* ever since his meeting with the Tathagata at the Grove of young palms near the city of Rajagaha, and, as such, his confidence in the Tathagata was unshakable. The king thought, "This woman is so foolish and stupid, she cannot arouse devotional faith in the glories and miraculous powers of the Tathagata" and pretending to be indignant asked her, "O woman, have you just said that your husband Sumana had offered all the flowers that were to be presented to me?" "Indeed, I have said so, your Majesty" replied the flower seller's wife.

The King replied expediently "O woman, you have done well by severing your connections with your husband, and now I am to

consider what kind of punishment should be meted out to Sumana for offering the Buddha the flowers which were to be presented to me." When dismissing the woman, the king went out quickly to pay homage to the Buddha and joining the procession, followed the Tathagata all the way.

On seeing King Bimbisara in a reverential mood, the Tathagata made it a point to walk along the congested, main streets within the city and finally went towards the palace gate. When King Bimbisara removed the bowl from the Buddha's hand and started to conduct the Tathagata into the palace, he noticed the indications that the Tathagata had a desire to stop at the court yard just outside of the palace. He at once had a temporary pavilion erected in the court yard, and the Tathagata and his bhikkhu followers took rest on the prepared seats in the newly erected pavilion.

(N.B. A question may arise as to 'Why the Tathagata did not go into the palace?'. The answer is: It occurred to the Tathagata that, should he choose to go into the palace, the eighteen crores of citizens would not be able to pay obeisance to him and the virtues of Sumana, the flower seller would not become manifest. True. Only Buddhas could show plainly the attributes of virtuous people; when ordinary people try to do 'honour where honour is due,' others are apt to have feeling of jealousy.)

As the Tathagata went inside the pavilion and sat on the seat kept in reserve for him, the four screens of flowers moved to the edge of the crowd in the four directions, each standing like living objects. Then the people rallied round the Tathagata to pay homage; and King Bimbisara offered hard and soft food of the best quality to the bhikkhus headed by the Tathagata. After the meal was over, and when the Tathagata had given a discourse of appreciation for it, the four screens of flowers were back at their own places surrounding the Tathagata on four sides. Surrounded by eighteen crores of citizens and amidst deafening sounds of the uproarious crowd, the Tathagata returned to the Veluvana monastery.

On arrival back at the palace, after seeing the Tathagata off, King Bimbisara sent for Sumana and asked him: "How were the flowers meant for me offered to the Tathagata?" Sumana replied thus: "I offered the flowers to the Tathagata, making this resolution: Let the king kill me should he so desire, let him expel me from the country, I will offer these flowers to the Tathagata"; thus have I made the offering of flowers at the risk of my life. "Whereupon, King Bimbisara said these congratulatory words: "You are a noble person, indeed." The king then presented Sumana with eight royal elephants, eight royal horses, eight male servants, eight female servants, eight sets of costumes, eight thousand coins of money, together with eight fully dressed maidens and eight villages, making what is known as *sabbatthaka* rewards (gift consisting of 300 things).

#### Buddha's utterance of prophecy

This great event made Venerable Ananda wonder as to what kind of benefit should Sumana derive from his deed of merit that was marked by the sounds that rent the air like thunderous roars of a lion king, and by throwing aloft of thousands of head dresses of citizens from early part of the morning. He therefore went to the Tathagata and asked to be enlightened as to what sort of benefit would Sumana enjoy. The Tathagata told Ananda: "Dear son Ananda, you should not think that Sumana, the flower seller had made just a small offering! In offering the flowers to me, he had made a liberal Dana of his own life, with full devotional faith in his mind.

*Kappānaṃ sataśahassāṃ  
duggatīṃ na gamissati  
thatva devamanussesu  
phalam etassa kammuno  
paccha Paccekasambudho  
Sumano nāma bhavissati*



For this meritorious deed of his, (for full one hundred aeons), he will not be reborn in the planes of misery; he will be born again and again in the realms of Devas and men enjoying the fruits of his deed of merit and will become a *Pacceka Buddha* in future."

This was the Prophecy uttered by Gotama Buddha in response to Venerable Ananda's request.

(N.B. On reaching the Veluvana monastery, as the Buddha entered the Scented Chamber, the Jasmine flowers lay behind in heaps at the entrance.)

In that evening, bhikkhus gathered together in the Dhamma Hall and expressed their appreciation of Sumana's deed of merit and the result thereof saying, "Friends, the benefit derived by Sumana from his deed of merit is really wonderful, worthy of cheers by the snapping of fingers. He has offered the living Buddha a handful of jasmine flowers at the risk of his life, and for this he has been rewarded by the king, at that very moment, with *sabbatthaka* gifts made up of eight kinds of animate as well as inanimate objects, each numbering eight."

Tathagata left the Chamber and came to the Dhamma Hall where, after sitting on the Dhamma Throne of the Buddha, asked, "Bhikkhus, what is the subject of your conversation?" They all explained the subject of their discussion. Tathagata, then, said, "You are right, O bhikkhus, by doing an act for which no feeling of remorse should ever recur, but you only feel happy every time you dwell upon it; a deed of such nature is indeed worth performing." And in this connection, he recited the following stanza to serve as a maxim of what he had already said:

*Tañca kammaṃ kataṃ sādhu  
yam katva nanutappati  
yassa patito sumano  
vipākam paṭisevati*

Having done an act, the doer has no bitter regret for it; he only enjoys the fruits of that act with joy and gladness. Such an act is faultless and wholesome, and is worth acting.

At the end of the discourse, eighty four thousand sentient beings became enlightened and gained release from the round of suffering.

End of the story of Sumana, the flower seller.

\*\*\*\*\*

**Removing the wrong views of one thousand hermits headed by  
Aggidatta, former court Brahmin of King Kosala.**

This discourse of five stanzas beginning with the words *bahum ve yaranam yanti etc.* was expounded by the Tathagata, while residing at Jetavana monastery, with reference to a hermit by the name of Aggidatta, (formerly a court Brahmin of King Kosala) who was then residing near a pile of sand.

(N.B. The hermit Aggidatta was living near a pile of sand lying between the three countries of Anga, Magadha and Kuru that were adjacent to Rajagaha. That appeared to be the reason why Sayagyi U Lin who was first in charge of the translation project had put this story of Aggidatta in the table of contents of events that took place when the Tathagata was keeping Lent in the city of Rajagaha.)

The Brahmin Aggidatta was the court advisor of King Maha Kosala, father of King Pasedani Kosala. On the expiry of his father, King Pasedani Kosala retained Aggidatta in the same rank as his court advisor, esteeming him as his father's old counsellor. When Aggidatta came to the palace to attend to duties, he was treated with due respect by the King who gave him the same seat he had occupied before.

One day it occurred to Aggidatta, "The king Pasenadi Kosala treats me with due respect no doubt, but it is not easy to make kings accept one's counsel all the time. It is natural that the king would prefer to deal with advisors of his own age; I have become too old, it is time that I lead the life of a recluse".

So he sought permission from the king and having made public his decision by the beating of drums in the city of Savatthi, within seven days abandoned all his belongings to become a recluse outside of the Buddha's Teaching, *Sasana*.

Ten thousand male followers followed suit becoming his disciples and they dwelt at a place situated between the Anga, Magadha and Kuru countries. Aggidatta as their leader gave them instruction for their observance, "My disciples.... any one thinking any of these thoughts; thoughts of sensual desire (*kāṃavitakka*), thoughts of ill-will (*vyāpāḍavitakka*), thoughts of harming others (*vihiṃsavitakka*), shall carry one bundle of sand from the river and dump it here". His disciples promised to observe this disciplinary rule of their leader; and every time they detected an unwholesome thought such as *kāṃavitakka*, etc., arising in their mind, they chastised themselves by carrying a bundle of sand from the river and dumping it as promised, in the appointed place. In time, the pile of sand assumed a huge dimension.

The pile of sand was taken over by a Naga king named Ahichatta. People from Anga, Magadha and Kuru used to come with offerings for the hermits every month. The hermit Aggidatta then exhorted them thus: "O my disciples, go to the hills for refuge, go to the jungles for refuge; go to the parks for refuge; go to the trees for refuge. If you take refuge in the hills, in the jungles, in the parks and in the trees, you will be free from all kinds of suffering. He also made the same exhortation to his ten thousand hermit disciples.

Aggidatta was popularising himself through teaching wrong practices at a time when the Bodhisatta as Prince Siddhattha after renouncing the world had attained Buddhahood and was residing in the Jetavana monastery of Savatthi. Rising one early morning at dawn and mentally surveying the whole world for sentient beings who are ripe for emancipation, the Tathagata perceived in his mind's eye the hermit Aggidatta together with all of his ten thousand disciples. The Tathagata also knew then that all of them had accomplished the sufficing conditions (*upanissaya*) for attainment of Arahathship. So he gave instructions to Venerable Maha Moggallana, saying, "Son Moggallana, why have you ignored the hermit Aggidatta who is making people walk along the wrong Path that will not lead them to the Shores of Nibbana; go, now, son Moggallana, to these hermit to exhort them".

Venerable Maha Moggallana replied, "The most Glorious, Exalted Buddha, the number of these hermits is great; they might not readily

accept the instructions from me alone; should your Reverence also come along, they would readily obey your instructions". Whereupon, the Tathagata responded: "We will come also; but you might go ahead first to exhort them".

While proceeding first as instructed by the Tathagata, the Venerable Maha Moggallana thought to himself: "These hermits are numerically great and strong; any attempt to give instructions to them while gathering in one place might lead them to turn against me en masse". So he caused a torrential rain to fall through his *abhinna*, with the result that the hermits rising from their places, rushed into their own dwelling places.

Venerable Maha Moggallana then stood in front of the entrance to Aggidatta's dwelling and called the hermit by name, "O Aggidatta". On hearing the Venerable Maha Moggallana's voice, Aggidatta wondered as to who had called him by name, since there was no one in the world who could address him thus. In a fit of pique, he gave a sharp reply, "Who is that calling me by my name?" Venerable Maha Moggallana answered, "Its me, Brahmin Aggidatta" "What do you want to say?" responded Aggidatta. When the Venerable Maha Moggallana made the polite reply, "I wish you could show me a place where I could spend a night", Aggidatta said curtly, "There is no vacant place for you; each room has its own occupant".

Venerable Maha Moggallana then said in reply, "Aggidatta, it is natural that men come to the abode of men, bullocks to the abodes of bullocks and recluses to the abode of recluses. Please do not talk to me like that; do allot a lodging to me to spend the night". The hermit then asked, "Are you a recluse?" "Aye, I am" was the reply. Aggidatta then queried, "If you are a recluse, where are the equipments of recluse; what are your utensils?" "O Brahmin," replied Maha Moggallana in a serious manner, "I possess the equipments of a recluse; but thinking it is cumbersome to carry them separately while wandering around, I take them along only inside me". Aggidatta was much annoyed to see the Venerable Maha Moggallana going about without the necessary equipments of a recluse.

Knowing the state of his mind, the Venerable Maha Moggallana said, "O Aggidatta, don't be angry with me; just point out a place for me" Aggidatta gave the terse reply, "There is no place for you around here". Indicating the pile of sand with his finger, Maha Moggallana enquired with patience, "Who lives at that pile of sand?" "A dragon king" was the reply. "Then allot it to me" insisted the Venerable Maha Moggallana. The hermit made the cautious reply, "I dare not allot it to you; the dragon king is of violent, terrible nature". Maha Moggallana said in reply, "Let it be, never mind about it; you just allot it to me". "If so, you better judge for yourself whether the place is suitable for occupation or not". retorted Aggidatta.

Then the Venerable Maha Moggallana went towards the pile of sand and when the dragon king Ahichatta caught sight of him, he thought to himself, "This recluse does not seem to know my presence here, I will dispose of him by exhaling fumes". With this thought, the dragon king started emitting dense clouds of noxious vapour. Venerable Maha Moggallana considered. "This dragon king has over estimated himself, thinking no one else can send out fumes;" Therefore, he also started exhaling wave after wave of vapour, which together with that emitted by the dragon king rose higher and higher up to the realm of the Brahmas. The voluminous fumes exhaled by both of them caused great suffering to the dragon king while the Venerable Maha Moggallana remained unscathed.

Suffering from the effects of the fumes, the Naga king became so furious that he sent out a continuous stream of blazing flames. By developing the Jhana of the fire-device (*Fourth Rupavacara kriya Jhana* with fire-device as its object) Maha Moggallana also sent out in competition more violent flames. The blazing fires produced by both of them went up as far as the Brahma realm; but none of them caused any harm to the Venerable Maha Moggallana while the Naga king was subjected to great suffering. His whole body appeared as though it were consumed in a blazing fire. At the sight of the massive conflagration, the hermit teacher Aggidatta and his disciples wrongly concluded, "The Naga king had set the recluse ablaze; he has been

destroyed now completely, for not listening to our advice. It serves him right".

Having overcome the Naga king by subduing its haughtiness, the Venerable Maha Moggallana sat on the pile of sand, while the Naga king kept itself coiled around the sand-pile, with its hood spread over the Venerable Maha Moggallana like a terraced chamber crowned with a fine pinnacle.

To make immediate enquiries as to the fate of the recluse, the hermits went to the scene of recent combat and saw the Venerable Maha Moggallana sitting becomingly on the peak of the sand-pile. They could not help making obeisance to him with their clasped hands, speaking highly of him in many ways, and asked him, "O recluse, have you not suffered anything at the hands of the Naga king?". Then Maha Moggallana replied, "Don't you see the Naga standing by with its hood spreading like a white umbrella over me?". The hermits uttered in amazement "O friends, this is a wonderful feat worthy of cheers by the snapping of the fingers! the recluse has subdued a powerful Naga such as this; it is marvellous indeed!" They then rallied round Maha Moggallana in a group.

At that moment the Tathagata arrived there; Maha Moggallana rose from his seat and made obeisance to the Buddha. The hermits asked him, "Is this recluse more powerful than yourself?" "This great recluse is replete with six glories; he is my master, I am merely his disciple", was the reply.

The Tathagata took his seat on the pile of sand; the hermits came around and with clasped hands raised spoke in high praise of the Buddha: "The recluse who subdued the Naga king is but a disciple, one wonders how mighty his master might be". The Tathagata then called Aggidatta and asked him "What kind of instructions do you give to your hermits and lay disciples for their guidance?"

Aggidatta gave his reply "Exalted Buddha, I gave this instruction to them, "O Disciples, go to the hills for refuge, go to the jungles for refuge, go to the parks for refuge; go to the trees for refuge. If you take refuge in the hills, in the jungles, in the parks and in the trees, you

will be free from all kinds of suffering." On hearing this truthful answer, the Tathagata said:

"Aggidatta, one who takes refuge in the mountains, forests, gardens, trees cannot escape from suffering; as a matter of fact, one who takes refuge in the Buddha, the Dhamma and the Sangha alone can escape from all the sufferings of the round of rebirths! The Tathagata then went on expounding the true way of escape from suffering in five stanzas:

(1) *Bahum ve saranaṃ yanti  
pabbatāni vanāni ca  
ārāmarukkhacetyāni  
mamussā bhayatajjitā*

"Aggidatta, people take refuge, through fright, in the mountains such as Mt. Isigili, Mt. Vepulla, Mt. Vebbara etc., or in the forest groves such as Mahavana, Gosinga sandal groves etc., or in the gardens and parks such as Vekuvana, Jivaka mango park etc. and in the trees such as Udena tree-temple, Gotama tree-temple etc. All these are erroneously regarded as refuges and means of protection from dangers.

(2) *Netam kho saranaṃ khemaṃ  
netam saranamuttamaṃ  
netam saranamāgamma  
sabbadukkhā pamuccati*

Aggidatta, these mountains, forests, gardens or trees are not safe, harmless refuges; they do not constitute the best, the highest refuge. By taking refuge in these mountains, forests, gardens or trees one cannot gain release from the continuous cycle of dukkha.

(3) *Yoca Buddhañca Dhammañca  
Sanghañca saranaṃgato  
cattari Ariyasaccāni  
sammappaññāya passati*

(4) *Dukkhaṃ dukkhasamuppādaṃ  
dukkhassa ca atikkamaṃ  
Ariyam catthaṅgikam maggaṃ  
dukkhūpasamagāminam*

Aggidatta, any person whether laity or recluse who takes refuge in the Buddha, the Dhamma and the Sangha as a safe haven, as a secure shelter (with sincere, pure faith in the three Gems; with transcendental consciousness, *lokuttara saranagamana cittuppada*); any person whether laity or recluse who realizes truly and rightly through Insight wisdom, *Magga nana*, the Four Noble Truths, namely, the Noble Truth of Dukkha, the Noble Truth of origin of Dukkha, the Noble Truth of cessation of Dukkha and the Noble Truth of the Path leading to the cessation of Dukkha, that is, the Eightfold Noble Truth of Right View, Right Thought etc.

(5) *Etam saranam khemaṃ  
etam sarana muttamāṃ  
etam saranamāgama  
sabbadukkhā pamuccati*

Aggidatta, only the refuge taken by such a person of noble disposition, with abounding faith in the Three Gems is a safe and harmless refuge. Only the refuge taken by such a person of noble disposition, with abounding faith in the Three Gems constitutes the best, highest refuge. Only the refuge taken by such a person of noble disposition, with abounding faith in the Three Gems can bring about release from the continuous cycle of dukkha.

At the conclusion of the discourse, all the hermits attained Arahantship replete with Four-fold Analytical Wisdom, *Patisambhida Nana*. They made obeisance to the Buddha and requested permission to receive formal ordination. Whereupon, the Tathagata stretched out his golden hand from underneath the robe and called out, "*Etha Bhikkhavo, caratha Brahmacariyam*.. Come bhikkhus, strive to take up the noble practices which form the moral training in my disposition".

At that very moment, all the hermits, the leader and the followers instantly turned into full-fledged monks like senior Theras of sixty years standing readily dressed up and equipped with the eight requisites, paying homage to the Buddha with great respect.

That day when all the hermits became Ehi bhikkhus happened to be the occasion when people from Anga, Magadha and Kuru congregated at the hermits' place with offerings for their hermit teachers. When they



saw the hermits assuming the form of bhikkhus, they began to wonder; "How is that, is our teacher Aggidatta superior to the great recluse Gotama or is the great recluse Gotama superior to our teacher?" Then they wrongly surmised that since the great recluse had come to the presence of their teacher, their teacher Aggidatta must be superior to the great recluse.

The Tathagata knew what was passing in the minds of the people, and he told Aggidatta, "Dear son Aggidatta, you might yourself remove doubt from the minds of your audience". Aggidatta replied, "Most Exalted Buddha, it has also been my intention to do so", and so saying, he went up high into the air and descended therefrom seven times. And after that he stood making obeisance to the Buddha, declaring "*Satta me bhante Bhagava, savakohamasmi...* Glorious Buddha, you, the Exalted Buddha, are my teacher; I am but a disciple of yours." thus removing doubt being entertained by his followers.

End of the story of hermit Aggidatta<sup>2</sup>.



### The story of Naked ascetic Jambuka.

This discourse beginning with the words "*Mase mase kusaggena*" was given by the Tathagata while residing at the Veluvana Monastery in Rajagaha in connection with the naked ascetic Jambuka.

### Jambuka's Demeritorious deeds of the past

During the time of Kassapa Buddha, a rich man of a village in the country side built a monastery for a monk. He made regular offerings of food, robe, monastery and medicine, the four requisites of a bhikkhu to the resident monk. The resident monk made regular visits to the house of the rich man for daily meal.

---

<sup>2</sup>This story of Aggidatta is mentioned in the Buddha Vagga of the second volume of Dhammpada Commentary.

One day an elderly monk who was an Arahant, going on the alms-round, arrived at the gate of the rich man. The rich man was very pleased with the deportment of the monk and so he invited him into the house and offered food with profound respect and said, "Your Reverence, please accept this piece of cloth for use as a robe after dyeing and stitching; your hair is also long enough to be cut; I will bring a barber and a bed-stead for you to the monastery."

The resident monk saw the reverential way in which his monastery donor and supporter made his offering to the Arahant bhikkhu. He was instantly assailed by unwholesome thoughts of envy concerning the offerings gained by the Arahant bhikkhu (*lābhamacchariya*) and also his superior birth (*kulamacchariya*); and he was in sore distress., thinking to himself "the richman has shown more reverential attention to the monk whom he has just met than to me who frequents his house regularly for meal". He returned to the monastery in a mood of anger.

The guest bhikkhu who was an Arahant followed the resident monk to his monastery. He dyed and stitched the piece of cloth offered him by the wealthy monastery donour and sat down wearing it as a robe; the wealthy man arrived then bringing with him a barber who attended to dressing the Arahant bhikkhu's hair. The rich man prepared the bed-stead he had brought with him ready for use and invited the Arahant bhikkhu to take rest on it. Then after inviting both monks for meal on the morrow, he went back home.

The resident monk was so overcome by malice towards the guest monk that he went to the place where the Arahant bhikkhu was resting, and gave vent to his bitter feeling in very offensive words:

(1) Look here visitor... it would be better for you to eat faeces than the food offered at the house of the rich man, the donor of my monastery.

(2) It would be better for you to have your hair pulled out with the outer shells of a palmyra seed than cutting with the knife of the hair-cutter brought by the rich man, the donor of my monastery.

(3) It would be better for you to go about nude than in the robe offered by the rich man, the donor of my monastery.

(4) It would be better for you to sleep on the ground than lying on the bed offered by the rich man, the donor of my monastery.

The Arahata Maha Thera left the monastery early in the morning for a place where he could find peace and happiness, foregoing the invitation by the rich man for meal, in order that "nothing untoward might happen to the stupid monk on account of him."

The resident monk attended quite early to all the routine works in the monastery, and when the time came for going on the alms-round, he thought, "The lazy visitor is still asleep. I might strike the bell to wake him up. (But feeling uneasy that the visitor would actually get up on hearing the bell ringing,) he just touched the bell with his finger nails and made off for the village to receive alms-food. After having made magnificent arrangements for meal offering, the rich monastery donor kept on waiting for the arrival of his two invited monks. On seeing the resident monk coming alone, he asked, "Venerable Sir, where is the guest Maha Thera?" The envious resident monk replied, "Don't you talk about him, donor of the monastery! Your monk went into his room to sleep since you left the monastery last evening and did not wake up while I had the monastery compound swept up, and the pots filled with water; nor did he hear the sound of the bell when I struck it as the time came for alms-round."

The rich donor thought to himself, "It is absurd that such an exalted personage with commendable deportment should have slept for such a long time; this resident monk, through jealousy on seeing me showing great respect and courtesy to the visiting monk, must have spoken some reproachful words to him". Having thus surmised correctly, he being wise and intelligent, kept his thoughts to himself and made his offerings of meal respectfully to the monk. After the meal was over, he took the empty bowl of the resident monk, had it washed carefully and filled with delicious food; he handed the bowl back to the resident monk, with the request, "Venerable Sir, please be so kind as to give this food to the guest monk when you meet him".

While going back to the monastery with food for the Arahata bhikkhu, the envious resident bhikkhu had the wrong thought: "The indolent visitor would stay on in the monastery if he were to enjoy delicious

food such as these"; so he threw away the bowlful of food offered by the rich monastery donor. On arrival at the place occupied by the visiting monk, he looked for him, but the Arahat bhikkhu could not be found.

The evil deed of this envious monk against the Arahat monk (the destruction of the food offered for the Arahat) was so demeritorious that its ill effects outweighed the merits accruing from twenty thousand years of holy life as a monk. Consequently, after his death he was reborn in the lowest plane of woe (*Maha avici*) to undergo intense suffering for the duration of the incalculably long interval between the disappearance of Kassapa Buddha and the appearance of Gotama Buddha. After such suffering he was born to a household, where food was abundant, at Rajagaha at the time of Gotama Buddha.

#### **Jambuka still suffering in the present life.**

He was named Jambuka by his parents. He did not wish to sleep in bed ever since he could walk about; and instead of taking ordinary food, he kept to eating his own excrement. His parents and relatives at first thought that he took up these habits through youthful ignorance and tried to help him mend his way, taking pains to feed him and clean his body. But even when he had grown up, he did not wish to wear cloths; he walked about naked, slept on the ground and ate his own filth.

#### **His parents sent Jambuka to an Ajivaka's vihara.**

Jambuka's parents came to realize in due course that "he was not fit to live in a family of good birth like their own; he had no sense of shame and should be in the company of Ajivakas, a heretical sect". So they took him to the vihara of Ajivakas and entrusted him to their care.

The Ajivakas then ordained him as a novice in their sect and the following is an account of how it was carried out:

He was placed in a pit that was deep as far as his neck; wooden planks were placed covering the hole and resting upon his shoulders (so that he might not struggle his way out). Sitting on the planks, the Ajivakas pulled out the hair from the head of Jambuka. (This was how

the Ajivakas initiated a lad as a novice). Then his parents left after inviting the Ajivakas for the morrow's meal at their home.

The following day, Ajivakas asked Jambuka, "Come along, let's go to the village". He replied "You better go and I will remain in the vihara. After several vain attempts to persuade him to follow, they left him all alone and went into the village. Once he knew that they were gone, he took off the wooden covering of the latrine and went into the pit, picked up the filth by his two hands and helped himself to his hearts content.

Ajivakas, (being unaware of the truth), sent food to him from the village. But he was not interested in it and rejected it inspite of persuasive advices given by the Ajivakas. His reply was "I don't want these, I have enough of food for myself". When he was asked, "From where did you receive them," he replied, "from within the precincts of this vihara". The second, the third and the fourth days passed in the same manner, Jambuka refusing the invitation to go out for food, to stay alone in the vihara.

Ajivakas began to wonder what Jambuka was up to: "This Jambuka refused every day to go into the village, rejected the food that was sent to him, saying, he got the food for him from within the precincts of the vihara. What is he up to; we will have to investigate". They then decided to leave behind one or two of the brethren to keep a watching eye on Jambuka's activities, when they went out to the village. Those charged with the responsibility of investigation, pretended to go along with the group, but remained behind under cover to watch Jambuka. Thinking that all the Ajivakas had left for the village. Jambuka went down the laterine pit as on the previous days and ate the faeces.

#### **Jambuka expelled from Ajivakas' vihara.**

Jambuka was caught red-handed by the secret watchers and the matter was reported to their elders. The elders, on hearing the report murmured. "Jambuka's action was grievous; should the disciples of Recluse Gotama come to know of this affair, they will surely decry us as a wandering tribe of filth eaters, much to the detriment of our

dignity. He is not fit to remain with us any longer". So saying they unanimously expelled him from their society.

When he was expelled by the Ajivakas he went to stay near a huge stone slab which was close by a spot used by the citizens of Rajagaha as a public lavatory. There was also a huge sewage pipe adjacent to that large stone slab. People usually came to ease and relieve themselves behind the screening stone slab. Jambuka ate the refused matter at night time, and when people came to answer the call of nature during the day, he stood with an arm rested on the edge of the flat stone and with one of his legs rested on the knee of the other leg, keeping his head erect with the mouth open.

Those who came to answer the call of nature, on seeing him, approached him and asked: "Venerable Sir, why are you standing like this with your mouth open?" "I live on air, there is no food for me other than air", he replied boastfully. People went on asking, "Venerable Sir, why do you stand on one leg only, with one leg rested on the knee of the other one?" I am a person engaged in rigorous austerity practices; when I stand with both my legs touching the ground, the earth cannot withstand my glories and attributes and trembles violently; that is why I stand in this posture. In truth (because of the earth quakes). I have got to stand on one leg night and day, without sitting down, without sleeping, "replied Jambuka with an air of ostentation.

(It is a general fact that people accept readily what others say; only few take the trouble to consider whether there is element of truth or not). So they said in admiration, "O Marvellous indeed it is! There are such personalities in the world who undertake severe practices. We have never before seen such personalities having such rigorous practices". A great number of people from Anga and Magadha countries, agitated and excited by hearing the news of Jambuka's austerities, came together with offerings for him and continued paying him homage every month.

### **Jambuka suffering for fifty five years.**

Jambuka went on rejecting delicious and wholesome food offered by people, maintaining, "I live on air only; I do not take any other food; if I do take any other thing than air, it means breach of my practice". People beseeched him, repeatedly saying, "Venerable Sir, may you not deny us this opportunity to gain merit; if only a personality such as yours, well advanced in austerity practices, accept our offer of alms-food, will our prosperity and happiness grow and last long". Jambuka was not interested in any food but excrements, but pressed by earnest requests of the people, he was obliged to taste such food as butter and molasses the people fetched, picking them up with the tip of a blade of grass, just to give them satisfaction. Then he dismissed them, saying, "Go ye now; this much will go far to do a great deal of good for you".

Thus Jambuka had to pay for his offences against an Arahat suffering fifty five years in these four ways:

- (1) He could not put on any clothe.
- (2) He ate nothing except faeces.
- (3) He had to pull out his hair making use of palmyra seed shell.
- (4) He slept on the ground.

(Mnemonic: Offending words of hatred  
Bring about grievous consequences.)

### **Emancipation of naked ascetic Jambuka.**

It is the usual function of Perfectly Self-Enlightened Buddhas to survey the whole world at early dawn every day to see who are ready for liberation from the cycle of suffering. Thus early one morning the Omniscient Buddha on surveying the world perceived the person of Jambuka in his mind's eye; upon further investigation, he discovered that Jambuka had already accumulated meritorious deeds which would serve as sufficing conditions for his attainment of Arahattaphala complete with four fold Analytical Knowledge (*Patisambhida Nana*); he also came to know that he would have to deliver a verse sermon to the naked ascetic Jambuka, and that his teaching will also bring about

the realisation of the Four Noble Truths by eighty thousand sentient beings who will thus gain emancipation. "Because of this person Jambuka, thousands of people will come to achieve happiness." Thus, after going round Rajagaha for alms-food, he informed the Venerable Ananda, "My dear son, Ananda, I will be going to see Jambuka."

"Glorious Buddha, is it that you are going there alone", asked Ananda. "That's right, Ananda, I will go all alone" replied the Tathagata and went to the place of Jambuka in the evening of that day.

Then the good Devas considered, "The glorious Buddha is visiting the naked ascetic Jambuka this evening; but that naked ascetic's abode is the great stone slab which is abominably filthy and smelly with accumulation of excrement, urine and discarded tooth cleaners of twigs. We should wash up the loathesome mess by a downpour of rain". Thus they caused by means of their supernatural power the falling at that very instant of a torrential rain, which washed away all the filth and dirt from the stone slab, making it look spick and span. Then the Devas caused the falling of flowers of five colours on the stone slab.

On arrival at the place of Jambuka in the evening, the Tathagata called out the naked ascetic by his name 'Jambuka', who felt annoyed to be discourteously addressed 'Jambuka' by an unknown person who, he thought, must be a lowly one. He retorted angrily, "Who is that calling me by my name?" The Tathagata replied, "I am a noble recluse". Jambuka asked then, "What is that your want here?" When the Tathagata said, "I wish you would allot me a place to stay for one night". Jambuka replied bluntly, "There is no place for you at this place". But the Tathagata insisted, "O Jambuka, please do not say like this; do allot me a place to stay for one night. It is only natural that a recluse seeks help of a recluse, men expect help of men and beasts expect help of their own kind. "Whereupon the naked ascetic asked, "Are you, indeed, a recluse?" "Aye, I am a noble recluse" answered the Tathagata. Jambuka then queried, "If you are a recluse, where are the equipments of a recluse, such as gourd, ladle for stirring fire, sacrificial threads?" The Tathagata replied, "I possess the equipments of a recluse you ask about; but thinking it is cumbersome to carry them separately while wandering around, I take them along only inside me." Jambuka



was much annoyed and reproached the Buddha, "Being a recluse, how could you go wandering about without the necessary equipments of a recluse?" The Tathagata made a gentle reply, "O Jambuka, let that be! Don't be angry with me. Just point out a place for me." But Jambuka gave the terse reply, "There is no place for you around here."

There was a small valley close by Jambuka's place and the Tathagata asked, "Who stays there?", "No one" replied Jambuka. "If so, I want that allotted to me", said the Tathagata. Whereupon, Jambuka made a reply, "It is up to you to judge whether it is suitable or not", implying that he had no objection for his occupation of the place but took no responsibility whatsoever.

The Tathagata placed a small mattress at a spot in the valley and sat upon it. At the first watch of the night, four guardian Devas from the *Catumaharajika Deva* realm came, illuminating the four points of the compass and waited upon the Tathagata. When Jambuka saw the illumination he wondered what it could be. At the second watch of the night, Sakka, king of the Devas came to attend upon the Tathagata; and Jambuka remained puzzled as before. At the last watch of the night, when Maha Brahma who had the power of lighting up one world with one finger of his, two worlds with two fingers, ten worlds with ten fingers, came to wait upon the Tathagata illuminating the whole forest, Jambuka pondered, as before, "Now, what could that illumination be!"

When the morning came, Jambuka approached the Tathagata and after courteous exchange of greeting, sat down at an appropriate place and addresses the Tathagata, "O big recluse, who were those that came to you, in the first watch of the night lighting up the four points of the compass?" "Jambuka, they were the four guardian Devas of the *Catumaharajika Deva* realms" replied the Tathagata. "Why did they come?" asked Jambuka. "They came to pay homage and wait upon me", was the reply. Jambuka asked again, "O big recluse, how is that, are you superior to them?" Aye, Jambuka that's right, I am superior to them" replied the Tathagata.

The naked ascetic Jambuka asked again, "O big recluse, who was the one that arrived at the middle watch of the night?" "He was Sakka, King of the Devas", replied the Tathagata. "And why did he come?",

asked Jambuka. The Tathagata said in reply, "He came to pay homage to me and attend upon me". Jambuka asked again, "O big recluse, how is that, are you superior to Sakka also?". "Aye, Jambuka", said the Tathagata, "I am superior to Sakka also; Sakka is just like a nurse attending on me or a resident novice who looks after me".

Jambuka went on asking the Tathagata, "O big recluse, who was he that came at the last watch of the night, flooding the whole forest with his body radiance?" Jambuka, the one who came at the last watch of the night was no other than Maha Brahma whose name is often invoked by Brahmans and others uttering "I worship the Great Brahma" when they suddenly sneeze or lose balance and totter. Jambuka asked again, O big recluse, how is that?, Are you superior to Maha Brahma too?" "Aye Jambuka, I am the King of Brahmans, superior to Maha Brahma as well".

Then the ascetic Jambuka made his usual boastful remark, "O big recluse, you are worthy of admiration, indeed, by the snapping of fingers. None of those persons have ever come to pay homage to me at this place where I have been practising austerities for fifty five years. True! for the last fifty five years I have been sustaining myself only on air; and all along those years, these Devas, Sakka and Brahmans have never approached me and paid homage to me".

Where upon, the Tathagata gave Jambuka a very plain talk: "O Jambuka, you, who have been playing a game of bluff with persons of poor intelligence, think of playing the same game with me! Have you not been eating filth for the past fifty five years, sleeping on the bare ground, wandering round naked, extracting hair by means of a shell of palmyra seed? And yet you have been deceiving all the people, telling them "I only live on air, standing on one leg without sitting down and sleeping"; and now you wish to play the same trick with a Fully Awakened Buddha like me!"

"O Jambuka, because you had professed this vile, base heretical view you have to be living on filth, sleeping on bare ground, roaming naked, extracting hair with the shell of palmyra fruit seed (for all these years

experiencing intense suffering); and yet you are still holding this wretched, low heretical view".

Then Jambuka asked the Tathagata, "O big recluse, what kind of unwholesome deeds have I committed?" "Whereupon, the Tathagata explained him extensively various misdeeds he had done in the past. While the Tathagata was giving him the discourse, Jambuka was assailed by remorse, sense of shame and dread of consequences of his past misdeeds; he was shaken so much that he squatted down to conceal parts of his body.

Whereupon, the Tathagata threw a bathing robe to him. He put on the robe and sat down at a suitable place making obeisance to the Buddha. Then the Tathagata expounded a graduated discourse touching on points connected with alms-giving, *Danakatha*, moral conduct (*Sila katha*) etc., and finally the Four Noble Truths. At the end of discourse Jambuka attained Arahathship, complete with the Four Analytical Wisdom, *Patisambhida Nana*. He rose up from his seat worshipping the Buddha and made a request for formal admission as a novice and ordination as a bhikkhu.

(N.B. Thus the ill effects of the unwholesome deeds he had committed in the past had come to the point of cessation. To elaborate: For his offence against an Arahat bhikkhu during the Kassapa Buddha's Dispensation, (as stated above) he had suffered intensely, being burnt and incinerated in the lowest Hell of *Avici*, for a duration of time long enough for the earth to rise to a height of one yojana and three gavutas. And after that, for the amount of retribution still outstanding against him, he had to make his expiation by going through fifty five years of wretched, abominable inhuman life. Having thus paid off his debts of evil deeds, the consequences of his past misdeeds have become exhausted.

But the accumulation of merit he had earned by observance of moral precepts as a bhikkhu for twenty thousand years remained undisturbed by his evil deeds.

Therefore, when Jambuka requested for initiation and ordination, the Tathagat stretched out his right hand and called out, "*Ehi bhikkhu*,

*carabrahmacariyam samma dkkhassaantakiriyaya* Come bhikkhu, (accept the monkhood that you wish) strive to take up the three noble practices which form the moral training in my Disposition, in order to bring about the end of round of suffering". At that moment, Jambuka turned into a full-fledged monk like a senior Thera of sixty years standing readily dressed up and equipped with the eight requisites.

On the very day when Jambuka attained Arahatsip, people from Anga and Magadha came with offering to pay homage to him. When they saw the Tathagata, they began to wonder, "How is that? Is our teacher Jambuka superior to the great recluse Gotama or is the great recluse Gotama superior to our teacher Jambuka? "Then they wrongly surmised that since the great recluse had come to the presence of their teacher, their teacher Jambuka must be superior to the recluse Gotama.

The Tathagata knew what was passing in the minds of the people, and he told Jambuka, "Dear son Jambuka, you might yourself remove the doubt from the minds of your followers". Jambuka replied. "Most Exalted Buddha, it has also been my intention to do so" and so saying entered into the Fourth Jhna. Then rising up from his seat, he went up into the air to the height of a palm tree from where he addressed the Tathagata, "Glorious Buddha, you, the Exalted Buddha are my teacher; I am but a disciple of yours". Then he came down to the earth and after paying homage to the Buddha, rose up in the air again; he repeated the same performance seven times going up higher and higher, to the height of two palm trees, three palm trees, etc., up to the height of seven palm trees. In this manner, he had made it very clear to the assembled crowd that he was just a disciple of the Buddha.

On seeing these strange phenomena, people were struck with wonder and said, "O Buddhas are worthy of admiration by the snapping of fingers; they are glorious and there is no one to equal them". The Tathagata, being desirous of holding discussion with the masses on Dhamma subjects addressed them:

"O Lay devotees, Jambuka has lived here for the last fifty five years telling you ostentatiously, "I have been exercising self-denial eating only what is picked by the tip of a blade of grass out of the whole lot of

offering you have brought ". Supposing he continued on with this practice of self-denial till it reached one hundred years, and certain amount of merit accrued on that score. Such a measure of merit to his credit would not be worth even 1/256 part of the merit he would earn by refusing to take any food now as a noble Ariya, through having some doubt whether the food and the time it is offered is allowable or not allowable. Then the Tathagat expounded the following Dhamma stanza which was pertinent to what he had been telling the people:

*Mase mase kusaggena  
bālo bhūñjeyya bhojanañ  
na so sankhātadhammānañ  
kalan agghati solasim*

Even though, month after month (or once a month) the fool (who does not know the Four Noble Truths) bent on living in austerity, takes his food sparingly picking it up on the tip of a grass blade for one hundred years; he is not worth even one-two hundred and fifty sixth (1/256) part of Ariya who have comprehended the Four Noble Truths.

The stanza was expounded with reference to a particular individual, namely Jambuka. When considered in its generic sense:

(1) There is the volition, *cetana*, which arises when ignorant heretical recluse practises self-sacrifice for as long as one hundred years.

(2) There is the volition, *cetana*, which arises when an Ariya who comprehends the Four Noble Truths, refuses an offer of food through having some doubt whether the food and the time it is offered is allowable or not allowable.

Of the two types of *cetanas* mentioned above, the *cetanas* accumulated by the heretical recluse for as long as one hundred years is not worth 1/256 part of the *cetana* that arose when an Ariya refused food through doubt over the food and the time it was offered.

To explain further..... The amount of merit accruing from *cetana* occasioned by mere doubt on the part of an Ariya recluse as to the kind

of food and the time it is offered, entailing the loss of a meal for him, is 256 times greater than the sum of merit gained by a heretical recluse through his faulty practice of self-denial for a hundred years.

At the close of the discourse, eighty four thousand sentient beings gained release from the cycle of suffering through realization of the Four Noble Truths<sup>3</sup>.

End of the Story of Jambuka.

..... ☆ .....

End of Chapter Twenty One

..... \* .....

---

<sup>3</sup>This story is mentioned in 5-Bala Vagga, Dhammapada, Vol. One.

## CHAPTER TWENTY TWO

### FOUNDING OF VESALI

Long time ago, the Chief Queen of King of Baranasi conceived a child. The queen brought this fact to the notice of the King. And the King appointed sufficient number of maids of honour to attend on the queen for the duration of her pregnancy. The queen lived with ease and comfort, carefully tending the embryo in her womb, and entered the maternity chamber in due course of time.

It is taken to be a natural fact that ladies of high status enjoying the fruits of past meritorious deeds usually give birth to children at early dawn of the morning.

The queen, being one of such ladies of elite class, gave birth one early dawn, to a lump of flesh as red as hibiscus rosa sinensis flower or lac. The queen thought to herself, "The king would surely remark, 'Other queens give birth to children who resemble golden statues; but this Chief Queen of mine gave birth to a lump of flesh' and I shall fall down in disgrace before the king". Wishing to avoid disgrace of losing favour and dignity, she had the lump of flesh put into a cup covered by another cup and caused it to be thrown into the current of the river Ganges.

Miraculous events took place, the moment the cup containing the lump of flesh left the human hands; it was taken charge of by the devas who placed securely in the cup a gold plate on which were inscribed in vermilion the words: 'These are the sons born of the Chief Queen of the King of Baranasi'. Protected by the guardian devas, the cup floated along smoothly with the current, undisturbed by billows and swelling tides.

At that time, a hermit was residing close by the river Ganges depending on a village of cowherds for alms-food. When he went to the river early one morning, he saw a cup floating down the stream and recovered it as an object discarded by some one up stream. He saw the royal insignia stamped on the covering cup and discovered the gold lettered plate and the lump of flesh on opening the cup. As soon as the

hermit saw the lump of flesh, he opined that the the lump of flesh must be in embryo stage since it raised no foul odour. He brought it to his hut and kept it in a clean corner.

After a lapse of fifteen days, the lump of flesh was seen to have divided into two separate units. The hermit took greater care of the object on seeing these strange developments. In another fortnight's time, each lump was found to have bulged in five places where the head, two arms and two legs would appear. The hermit attended to them with greater care than before. In another fifteen days time, one was transformed into a boy with golden body and the other into a girl with a golden body.

The love developed by the hermit for the infant boy and girl was so intense that it was like that of a parent for his own offsprings. The two thumbs of the hermit turned into fountains from which milk gushed out. From then onwards, the hermit received gruel cooked with milk from the village of the cow-herds (by virtue of the babies' merit). The hermit ate the solid portion of gruel and fed the babies with the fluid that remained. Whatever went inside their bodies could be seen like objects going through a glass vessel. They were therefore named 'Licchavi'<sup>1</sup> after their soft, delicate, thin skin.

Having to attend to the babies, the hermit could go to the village for alms-round only very late in the morning; and he had to rush back to his hermitage in a hurry. When the villagers came to know about his worries, they addressed the hermit, "Venerable sir, looking after the babies is a great hindrance to the observance of the precepts incumbent on recluses. May you hand the babies over to our care; we will relieve you of the burden of looking after them; then you could attend to your Dhamma practice without any obstruction". The hermit agreed to their request, saying, 'Yes, you may'.

On the following day, the villagers made the roads smooth, level and clean, scattered flowers on it and after planting streamers and banners

---

<sup>1</sup>*Licchavī*, derived from *Nicchavī*; Ni = soft, thin; Chavi = having skin, one having delicate thin skin. Ni is changed into Li to form *Licchavī*.



on the sides of the road, gathered at the hermitage playing various kinds of musical instruments, to receive the children from the hermit. The hermit then gave them words of advice: "Lay devotees, these babies are of great power and glory (because of their great accumulation of past merits). Bring them up with much care, attention and heed till they come of age; and arrange for their matrimonial ceremony when they come of age. Go ye, then to the king of Baranasi and having paid him tributes of milk, curds, ghee, butter milk, butter (five kinds of produce of the cow, gorasa), make a request to him to grant you some land for the founding of a city. Then having founded the city, appoint the young man your king holding the coronation ceremony in the new city." With this advice the hermit handed over the babies to the care of the villagers. After giving him the promise to follow his advice, the villagers took away the babies and brought them up in accordance with the instructions given by the hermit.

When they grew up, they played together with the children of the cowherds. But whenever there was dispute while at play, they beat and kicked their playmates. When the parents saw their children crying, they asked them why they were crying. The children replied, "The two orphans cared for by the hermit beat and kicked us." Even the adopted parents of the two children along with other villagers, rebuked them, making remarks such as. "These two children bully our children; they are too troublesome. We should not gratify them; we should avoid the pair of brother and sister". Ever since that time, the region measuring thirty yojanas where the cowherds village was situated came to be known as '*Vajji*' country<sup>2</sup>.

In due course of time, the cowherds approached the king, as instructed by the hermit, with offerings consisting of five 'gorasa' and requested for the allotment of a place and founded a city there. As the boy had reached the age of sixteen, he was crowned as king of the region. This was followed by a matrimonial ceremony in honour of the

---

<sup>2</sup>Based on the words uttered by the villagers including the foster parents of the two children cared for by the hermit, namely, *Vajjetabba Ime* = we should avoid these two, the brother and sister. The region, measuring thirty yojanas came to be known as Vajji country.

two youths. The people of the region agreed then to make a ruling that, no woman from other place should be made their queen, and none of their women should be given away in marriage to those outside of their country.

The crowned King and the queen produced their offsprings in due course, the queen giving birth to a pair of twins, one male and female for the first time. The queen gave birth to twins in like manner for sixteen times in all. When those children came of age, they, in turn, gave birth to twins for sixteen times each.

The population of the city grew by leaps and bounds, so much so, that there was no longer sufficient land in the city to accommodate all the princes and princesses with their palaces, pleasure parks and their large retinues. Therefore the city had to be extended by one gavuta each on all four sides, entailing the construction of a second walling to enclose the whole city.

After a long time, the growth of the city in like manner demanded further extension to meet the requirements of the increasing number of royal families. As before, it was extended again by one gavuta each on all four sides with the construction of another walling round the entire city. As years rolled by, the city had to be extended again by one gavuta on all four sides in the same way for the third time. Thus the city grew and flourished with the march of time; in due course, it came to be known far and wide, as the city of Vesali, throughout the southern sphere of the universe, Jambudipa.

This section gives an account of the origin of the nomenclatures such as Licchavi kings, the Vijji country and the city of Vesali. (as given in the Khuddakapatha Commentary and Sarattha dipani tika).

End of founding of the city of Vesali.



### Buddha gave protection and peace to the city by teaching Ratana Sutta.

Vesali city was thriving and prosperous, like its contemporaries Rajagaha and Savatthi, in the time of Gotama Buddha. At that time the city was inhabited by seven thousand seven hundred and seven reigning monarchs with their crown princes, generals of the army, finance ministers, and various officials, each of them numbering seven thousand seven hundred and seven. For their accommodation, there were seven thousand places and mansions with decorated terraced roofing and equal number of Law courts, assembly halls, gardens, pleasure parks and lakes. The city was thickly populated and food was abundant.

As years rolled by, the rulers and the ruled of the city failed to observe their bounden duties (*aparihāniya Dhamma*)<sup>3</sup>

They eventually fell victims to disasters such as drought, poor harvest, shortage of food, famine etc.

#### (The first disaster)

The disaster had caused a great number of deaths from amongst the poor people; the dead bodies thrown heiter-skelter out of the city were soon in varying stages of decomposition, raising foul ordour. Such a condition gave the opportunity to evil spirits (ogres) to enter the city and play havoc with the people.

#### (The second disaster)

Disastrous famine and evil influence of ogres combined to bring about more deaths and suffering. To make matters worse there occurred an epidemic of an infectious disease known as snake-wind-sickness, *ahivata roga*, which shook the morale of the people and took a heavier toll than before.

---

<sup>3</sup>*Aparihāniya dhamma*: Factors of non-decline, discourse taught to Vajji princes by the Buddha in order to maintain their prosperity and welfare. For full particulars reference may be made to Mahāparinibbana Sutta, Maha Vagga, Digha Nikaya.

**(The third disaster)**

The citizens reeling under the continuous shocks of the three disasters, namely, the famine disaster, the havoc caused by the evil spirits and the outbreak of the epidemic, went to the king and made the following address:

"Your Majesty, the city of Vesali is facing three kinds of scourges; no such disaster had ever occurred during the reigns of the immediate past seven kings. The consensus of opinion now is that such disasters are brought about by the negligence of duty on the part of the sovereign rulers."

The King then caused all the citizens to assemble at the Court of Law and addressed them: "Citizens, you may hold an inquest to find out if there was any failure on my part in the discharge of my royal duties towards my people." On systematic inquiry of all the daily performances of the king, people found that there was nothing wanting on the part of his Majesty in the discharge of his duties towards his people. They then put their heads together to find a way to overcome the disasters that had fallen on them.

The disciples of the six teachers of heretical sects suggested that the city of Vesali would be rid of the three scourges as soon as the six heretic teachers set foot in the city. But some of the citizens (who had faith in the Three Jewels) said, "Friends, it is said that Buddha has appeared in the world; he is said to have expounded Dhamma for the welfare and prosperity of all beings; he is powerful and glorious. Our city may be free from all disasters once he is in our city".

All the people were delighted with the proposal. But some people wanted to know the whereabouts of the Buddha and expressed their doubt, "He may not care to come here even if we invite him". Whereupon, some intelligent persons expressed their optimistic view:

"Buddhas are always helpful and have compassion on sentient beings; so why wouldn't he come if we invite him? There is, however, one thing to note. The Tathagata is now residing in Rajagaha; King Bimbisara (a sotapanna and doner of the

monastery) is attending upon him providing him with four requisites. He might stand in the way of Buddha's coming to our city".

The people unanimously decided 'that they should approach king Bimbisara and acquaint him with the circumstances they are faced with and with his approval should request the Buddha to make a visit to Vesali.' Accordingly they sent two Licchavi princes to Rajagaha charged with the responsibility of seeing king Bimbisara of Rajagaha, carrying numerous gifts for him and accompanied by armed guards and troops.

The two princes went to Rajagaha and presented the valuable gifts to king Bimbisara; they then told him the situation in their city and the reason why they had been sent to Rajagaha and made the request. "May your Majesty present the request, on our behalf, to the Buddha to visit Vesali". The king did not comply with their request, but advised them, "You should approach the Buddha yourself and enquire as to the Buddha's intention."

The two Licchavi princes went to the Buddha and addressed him with profound respect: "The Glorious Tathagata, our city of Vesali is being visited by three calamities; if out of compassion, you would kindly make a visit to Vesali, it will be a blessing to all of us, the citizens of Vesali".

Upon kind consideration of their request, the Tathagata perceived, "the recitation and preaching of Ratana Sutta in Vesali would bring one hundred thousand crores of universes under protection against diseases; and at the end of the discourse, eighty four thousand sentient beings would be emancipated through realization of the Four Noble Truths'. The Tathagata, therefore, accepted the reverential invitation of the two Licchavi princes.

#### **King Bimbisara's preparation for a ceremonial send off.**

On hearing the news of acceptance by the Tathagata of the invitation to visit Vesali, King Bimbisara caused it to be proclaimed all over the city: "Know, ye, all men, the Tathagata has accepted the invitation to

visit the city of Vesali". He then went to the Buddha and asked, 'Most Exalted Buddha, have you accepted the invitation of the citizens of Vesali?'; the Tathagata replied, 'Aye, I have accepted, your Majesty'. 'If that be so, may the Tathagata wait till all necessary preparations for ceremonial send-off are completed'.

Then King Bimbisara caused the road between Rajagaha and the river Ganges, five yojanas in length, to be levelled up and made even; and temporary pavilions were set up at every yojana along the route. When the Tathagata was then informed that every thing was set, he started the journey in the company of five hundred bhikkhus.

The five yojana long route was strewn with flowers of five different colours knee deep high; colourful streamers were erected along the route, pots filled with water and plantain trees were placed in order on either side of the road. Two white umbrellas protected the Tathagata from the weather; likewise every bhikkhu was protected by a white umbrella. The king and his retinue of courtiers and army made offerings with flowers and scents along the route and at every stop, giving the Tathagata and the company of bhikkhus enough time to take rest. After a comfortable journey of five days, the whole procession reached the bank of the Ganges.

While the Royal barge was in the process of being decorated, King Bimbisara sent a written intimation to the Licchavi rulers, saying, "The Tathagata is en route to Vesali; necessary arrangements should be made to keep the roads in a good state of preservation for a grand reception to the Buddha and his bhikkhus by all the Licchavi rulers."

When the members of Licchavi clan received the great news, they unanimously made the decision to organise a welcoming ceremony which should be twice as grand as the reverence shown by King Bimbisara. They levelled up the roads between Vesali and the bank of river Ganges, a distance of three yojanas. They kept four white umbrellas for the Tathagata and two white umbrellas each for every bhikkhu accompanying the Buddha. The whole city came out in a grand procession to the bank of the river Ganges to await the arrival of the Tathagata.

In the meanwhile, King Bimbisara caused two big boats to be kept side by side and firmly tied together to form a huge barge. On the top of it was erected a pavilion decorated profusely with bouquets of flowers and scents, suspended wreaths of flowers fashioned like a fan; inside the pavilion was installed the throne for the Tathagata studded with seven kinds of precious jewels. On arrival at the bank of the river Ganges, the Tathagata and the bhikkhus went aboard the royal barge; the Tathagata took seat on the throne and the bhikkhus took seats at appropriate places.

After conducting the Tathagata and the bhikkhus to the barge, Bimbisara went down the Ganges river up to his neck, and holding the barge, addressed the Tathagata, "Most Glorious Buddha, I will be waiting for the return of the Buddha from the bank of this river Ganges", and he gently released the royal barge from his hand as he came out of water.

Celestial beings of the deva world including the Brahamas of *Akanittha Brahma* realm paid honour to the Buddha. Similarly, beings from the lower planes, such as Kamhala Naga king and Assatara Naga king also paid their homage to the Buddha.

Thus amidst great festive celebrations, men and devas vying with one another in paying him honour, the Tathagata was conducted across the Ganges, measuring one yojana from bank to bank; until eventually entering the territory of the Vesali rulers.

The Buddha was received on the opposite bank of Ganges by the Licchavis who were ready waiting for the arrival of the Buddha. They paid the Tathagata twice as much honour as the King Bimbisara had shown, going down the deep river up to their neck to welcome the Buddha with profound respect.

***Pokkhravasa* rain fell as soon as the Buddha stepped ashore.**

As soon as the royal barge carrying the Tathagata touched the opposite bank of the river, wave after wave of dark rain clouds gathered from all sides, accompanied by flashes of lightning and

deafening roar of thunder, presaging a violent thunderstorm. The setting of Tathagata's right foot on the bank of the river was marked by falling of torrential *Pokkharavasa* rain which wetted those who wished to get wet, leaving alone those not wanting to get soaked. Streams of rain water with varying depths, ranging from the depth of the knee to the waist, the chest and to the neck, rushed all over the city of Vesali, washing away smelly dead bodies left unattended, as they flowed into the river Ganges. The whole city became clean once again, free from rubbish of all descriptions.

The Licchavis conducted the Tathagata from the river bank to Vesali, three yojanas away, amidst enthusiastic masses and festivities, stopping one night at every pavilion constructed at one yojana intervals. On the way offerings were made which were twice as much as shown by king Bimbisara, finally arriving at Vesali after three days.

When the Tathagata arrived at Vesali, Sakka accompanied by devas came down from their celestial planes to pay homage to him. The congregation of powerful devas at Vesali caused most of the ogres (who had hitherto played havoc with the citizens) to flee the city.

The Tathagata stood at the city gate and gave instructions to the Venerable Ananda:

"Dear Ananda, after learning this *Ratana sutta* from me, you should recite it within the three walls of the city as a preventive measure, (Paritta), going round the city accompanied by the Licchavi princes who should be instructed to carry in their hands offertory for sacrificial offerings to gods."

#### **Preventive measures taken by the Venerable Ananda by the recitation of Paritta.**

Having learned the *Ratana Sutta* from the Tathagata at the gate of Vesali on the very day of arrival, the Venerable Ananda went round between the three walls of the city reciting it rhythmically, with correct intonation, pronunciation, accent and punctuation. He took with him as he went round, the Tathagata's alms-bowl, filled with water which he sprinkled all over the city.



As soon as the Venerable Ananda started reciting the first stanza of the sutta with the words, '*Yamkiñci vittam*' those ogres, ghosts, ghouls, goblins, demons who had not yet fled the city but had remained taking shelter under garbage dumps or clinging to the walls etc. made off in great haste through the four city gates. As the gates got jammed with fleeing evil spirits, some of them were forced to break through the walls of the city. With the fleeing of brute beings from the city, those who had suffered from their evil influences, regained their health and all pestilences disappeared. These citizens came out from their houses, with bunches of flowers and scents, and paid homage to the Venerable Ananda.

### **The Buddha expounded the Ratana Sutta at the Legislative Assembly Hall of the city.**

The king and the citizens decorated the Legislative Assembly Hall in the heart of the city with garlands of flowers and scents, setting up a canopied ceiling with studded ornaments. Then they installed the throne for the Tathagata in a proper place and conducted the Tathagata to the Hall. The Tathagata took his seat on the throne while the bhikkhus, kings and princes, and citizens sat down at appropriate places. The Sakka accompanied by the devas of the two celestial realms of Catumaharajika and Tavatimsa as well as Brahmas and other devas also came to pay homage to the Bhagava.

The Venerable Ananda, having taken preventive measures by reciting the *Paritta* all over Vesali, arrived at the City Hall with the crowd of citizens and they all took seats at suitable places.

At this huge gathering of men, devas and Brahmas, the Tathagata gave the same discourse of *Ratana Sutta*<sup>4</sup>, (which he had taught Ananda)

(N.B. The *Ratana Sutta* text which the Buddhist public see, read and study nowadays is made up of three sections:

---

<sup>4</sup>This Ratana Sutta text with full exposition is dealt with in the chapter on the Jewel of Dhamma.

- (a) The portion beginning with '*Panidhānato patthāya*' up to '*Parittam taṃ bhanāmahe*' is the preface in prose and verse composed by scholars of the ancient past.
- (b) Fifteen stanzas, beginning from '*Yanidha bhūtāni samagatāni*' to '*Khinam purānam nava natthi sambhavam*' are the original Pali text expounded by the Tathagata.
- (c) The last three, '*Yānidhabhūtni samāgatāni*' etc. were uttered by the Sakka at the congregation.)

At the conclusion of discourse on the Ratana sutta on the first day, the Licchavi royal families together with all the citizens of Vesali were freed from suffering and gained happiness; all kinds of dangers and pestilence were removed and peace was restored. Eighty four thousand sentient beings were emancipated through realizing the Four Noble Truths.

It dawned upon Sakka then, 'The Tathagata had brought happiness and prosperity to the people of Vesali by speaking words of Truth about the attributes of the Three Jewels; I should also utter words of Truth concerning the virtues of the Three Jewels for the welfare of the citizens of Vesali'. He therefore rose to recite the three stanzas, '*Yānidha bhūtāni samagatāni*' etc., which appear at the end of the Sutta.

**The Tathagata continued to expound the *Ratana Sutta* for seven days.**

After reciting the three stanzas, Sakka paid homage to the Buddha by circumambulating the Buddha three times and left for the world of devas accompanied by his celestial followers. But the Tathagata went on expounding the Sutta on the second day when eighty four thousand sentient beings were again emancipated through realizing the Four Noble Truths. In this way, the Tathagata continued to expound the same sutta for seven days in succession, emancipating eighty four thousand sentient beings on each day.

(N.B. A total of  $(84000 \times 7 = 588000)$  five lakhs eighty eight thousand beings were emancipated through realization of the Four Noble Truths.)

### The fundamental principle of administering *Paritta* recitation.

*Paritta* means, 'the Buddha's word, otherwise known as *Sutta*, which serves as a protective measure, dispelling all forms of danger from all quarters: pacifying and making those presently arising to cease and disappear; preventing the impending dangers from arising at all.

*Mangala sutta*, *Ratana sutta*, etc. are discourses taught by the Buddha, and they are powerful enough to protect both the reciter and the listener from impending danger, also to repel or disperse the danger presently falling. They have special attributes of bringing well-being and prosperity; hence they have the special name of *Paritta*.

In order to bring about such beneficial effects, it is necessary that the reciter should have the four accomplishments and the listener should also possess the four accomplishments as set out below:

(a) Four accomplishments of a reciter<sup>5</sup>.

1. The reciter must be capable of reciting passages, phrases, syllables of the Pali text with correct mode of articulation, enunciation, and accent.
2. He must have full and exact understanding of the Pali text he is reciting.
3. The reciter should chant *Paritta* without expectation of gifts or presents.
4. *Paritta* should be recited with a pure heart full of loving-kindness and compassion.

---

<sup>5</sup>The author gives two versions: 3 accomplishments and 4 accomplishments. As the second version includes the first version also, we translate only the second version of 4 accomplishments.

*Paritta* should be recited only with the fulfillment of these conditions so as to be really effective in warding off and dispelling the impending dangers to the listener Unless these conditions are fulfilled by the reciter, no beneficial results will accrue and no advantages gained as intended by reciting a *Paritta*.

The above modes of reciting and listening *Paritta* are prescribed on the lines laid down in the Digha Nikaya Commentary. Systematic study and scrutiny of words and phrases should be made, proper attention being paid to the understanding of Pali terms employed. Unless proper attention is paid to study correct enunciation and meaning of the Pali Text, the chances of securing the desired result are remote. Only recitation by those who have carefully studied the modes of reciting will bear powerful effects. Recitation of *Parittas* by those with intention to receive gifts or offerings will not produce any real result. Recitation of *Paritta* by those with hearts full of loving-kindness and compassion and with an inclination towards freedom from cycle of suffering will be advantageous.

[N.B. Therefore one who administers *Paritta* must first and foremost study the Pali Text together with relevant Commentaries under a qualified teacher, special attention being paid to mode of enunciation, accent and punctuation. Any omission or deletion of words, phrases from the Pali Text may render the recitation altogether meaningless. Correct mode of recitation with full understanding of its meaning are the vital forces of the *Paritta* which will bring about the desired result.

Mistakes in the way of administration, lack of correct enunciation and understanding of its true meaning, coupled with a desire to receive something in return, will undermine the strength of the *Paritta* and no desirable result will be obtained.

It must, therefore, be emphasised that it is necessary to administer *Paritta* according to the conditions laid down, with a heart full of loving-kindness, and compassion and resolute inclination towards release from the Samsara and curbing one's desire to receive offerings.]

**(A) Failure and Success of one who administers *Paritta*.**

Failure of one who administers *Paritta* arises from two causes, namely, *Payoga vippatti* and *Ajjhāsaya vippatti*.

- (1) *Payoga vippatti* means inability to express words and phrases of all Text with accuracy and exactness and full understanding of their meanings, through lack of effort and diligence.
- (2) *Ajjhāsaya vippatti* means administration of *Paritta* with a desire for gains and fame.

Success of one who administers *Paritta* arises from two causes, namely *Payoga sampatti* and *Ajjhāsaya sampatti*.

- (1) *Payoga sampatti* means proficiency in administering *Paritta* through diligence, through learning correct modes of enunciation, with full understanding of the meaning.
- (2) *Ajjhāsaya sampatti* means proficiency in administering *Paritta* through loving-kindness, compassion with an inclination towards emancipation and without selfish motive for rewards.

(This section on *Vipatti* and *sampatti* are excerpts from *Atanātiya Sutta* Sub-commentary).



**(B) Four accomplishments of a listener.**

(1) The listener should be free from the guilt of five grave transgressions which bring immediate retribution (*pañcanantariya kamma*), namely,

- (a) killing father, (b) killing mother (c) killing an Arahant
- (d) causing bleeding in an attempt on Buddha's life
- (e) causing schism amongst the disciples of a Buddha.

- (2) The listener should be free from wrong views with fixed destiny (*Niyata-micchaditthi*)<sup>6</sup>.
- (3) The listener should possess unshakable faith in the efficacy and beneficial results of *Paritta*.
- (4) The listener should listen to the *Paritta* recitation with due diligence, full attention and profound respect.

These are the qualifications which should be possessed by a listener of *Paritta*; in *Milinda Panha Pali* Text (chapter on *Mendaka Panha*), *Pasamutti Panha*) are mentioned the first three accomplishments as follows: "Your Majesty, hindrances such as (a) the five grave transgressions, (b) wrong views or heretical beliefs and (c) non-confidence in the *Paritta* cannot serve as a means of protection against dangers." "These are the words of the Venerable Nagasena spoken to King Milinda. In view of this it must be concluded that those who are free from the three hindrances stand to enjoy the benefit of the *Paritta*.

#### **Failure and success of one who listens to *Paritta* recitation.**

Failure of one who listens to the *Paritta* arises from two causes, namely *Payoga vippatti* and *Ajjhāsaya vippatti*.

- (1) *Payoga vippatti* means failure to listen to *Paritta* recitation with due respect, raising the palms together; with one's mind fixed on the *Paritta* without any distractions, through lack of diligence and effort.
- (2) *Ajjhāsaya vippatti* means listening to the *Paritta* half-heartedly, without confidence in the efficacy and the beneficial result of *Paritta*; listening to the *Paritta* just to oblige and please the person who invites one to the ceremony of *Paritta* recitation.

---

<sup>6</sup>*Niyata-micchādītthi*; Uncausedness of existence (*ahetuka dītthi*); Inefficacy of action (*akiriya dītthi*); Nihilism (*natthika dītthi*). (See Buddhist Dictionary by Nanatiloka).

Success of one who listens to the Paritta arises from two causes, namely, *Payoga Sampatti* and *Ajjhāsaya Sampatti*.

- (1) *Payoga Sampatti* means making necessary effort in listening to the *Paritta* recitation by raising the hands with palms together with profound respect with one's mind fixed on the *Paritta* without any distractions.
- (2) *Ajjhāsaya Sampatti* means listening to the *Paritta* wholeheartedly, with full confidence in the efficacy and beneficial result of *Paritta* listening to the *Paritta* not just to oblige and please the person who invites one to listen to the *Paritta* but with wholesome desire to gain merit.

Listeners of the *Paritta* should abandon the two factors of *Vippatti* as mentioned above and strive to be accomplished in the two *Sampattis*, so as to secure the true benefit of protection from impending dangers.

Just as the *Paritta* reciter has to abandon the two factors of failure and to become accomplished in the two factors of success, so also the listener has to do likewise.

End of the administration of the *Paritta* recitation.



### Parittas that possess unique power.

1. *Ratana Sutta* is possessed of power which extends over one hundred thousand crores of world systems. It has brought about the realization of *Magga Phala Nana* and attainment of *Nibbana* by five lakhs eighty eight thousand men, devas and Brahmas. It is therefore a ward-rune or *Paritta* of great authority or influence.

2. *Mangala Sutta* is also possessed of power which extends over one hundred thousand crores of world systems. Innumerable number of men, devas and Brahmas have realised *Magga Phala Nana* and attained *Nibbana* through listening to this *sutta*.

3. *Metta Sutta* is a well known sutta of great power. Its authority extends over one hundred thousand crores of world systems. It had helped forest dwelling bhikkhus attain Arahatsip, through extinction of *Asavas*. By assiduously and fully cultivating the moral instructions laid down in the *Sutta*, one can assuredly gain the Path to emancipation. It is also a powerful *Paritta* too.

4. *Khandha Sutta*. It is another powerful *sutta*, the authority of which extends over one hundred thousand crores of world systems. It has the power to ward off dangers from various poison at all times. The *sutta* contains certain portions that describe the virtues and glories of the Buddha, the Dhamma and the Sangha and also the good effects of loving-kindness (*metta*). Thus it is a powerful *Paritta* which can bring about unique beneficial results.

5. *Dhajagga Sutta* is also a sutta of great power which extends over one hundred thousand crores of World systems. Contemplation of the virtues of the Buddha, the Dhamma and the Sangha extolled in the *sutta* is a means to strengthen one's intellectual power, to enjoy celestial bliss for three thousand world cycles, to be reborn as Sakka for eighty times, as a Universal Monarch for one thousand times, as an ordinary king or emperor for countless number of times; to be always rich and prosperous in every existence, when the properties he possesses cannot be lost, stolen or destroyed. For one hundred thousand world cycles, he would not be reborn in the planes of woes nor would he be disturbed or shaken through fright which caused hair to stand on end and goose flesh to appear. Such is the immense power of this sutta which will ultimately lead one to Arahatsip.

6. *Bojjhaṅga Sutta* wields great authority which extends over one hundred thousand crores of world systems, possessing power to ward off danger and ailments. Thorough and complete cultivation of the seven Factors of Enlightenment contained in the *Sutta* leads to Nibbana in this very life through realization of Magga and Phala Nana.

7. *Ātānātiya Sutta* was originally composed by the four Guardian Devas of Catumahrajika Deva realm, having gathered together in the celestial city of Atanata. They first paid homage to the Seven Buddhas,



praising their virtues and attributes. They then composed the *sutta* and made a proclamation, 'Those unruly wild celestial beings such as *yakkhas* who are not amenable to the instructions of the Buddha nor to the code of conduct laid down by ourselves will be punished according to the celestial laws'. The Guardian Devas then came to the Tathagata accompanied by a great number of celestial guards and troops and presented the powerful *sutta* they had composed to the Bhagava. The Tathagata taught the *sutta* to the Bhikkhus which thus became a powerful authoritative, protective word-rune, *paritta*.

The relevant Commentary lays down the method of administering the *sutta* as follows:

In the case of those possessed by demons, *petas* and unruly beings, *Ātānātiya Sutta* should not be administered initially; for seven days continuously, *Metta sutta*, *Dhajagga sutta* and *Ratana Sutta* should be recited first. Should the possessed person become normal after these recitations, there is no need for administering the *Ātānātiya sutta*.

Only when the desired result is not achieved by the recitation continuously for seven days of the first three suttas, should the *Ātānātiya sutta* be recited. The bhikkhu who would recite the *Ātānātiya sutta* should not eat cakes made of flour, meat and fish; nor should he reside in a cemetery. This is because if such a bhikkhu eats flour cakes, meat or fish and reside in a cemetery, he is liable to be possessed by evil spirits. The place chosen for recitation of the *paritta* should be kept clean and tidy and besmeared with turmeric power.

The bhikkhu who would administer the *paritta* should be conducted from the monastery to the house, surrounded by a security guard of men armed with bows and arrows, shields, swords and spears. The bhikkhu should not recite the *paritta* in the open; the gate door, windows and doors of the house should be securely closed and the bhikkhu should sit down closely surrounded by the armed guard. Then, with a heart full

of loving-kindness he should administer the *paritta* according to the following guide lines:

It is essential that the afflicted person should be first established in *sila* by observance of the precepts, followed by the recitation of *paritta*. Should such measures fail to drive away the evil ones, the possessed person should be taken to the monastery and kept lying on the pagoda platform. The pagoda platform should be swept clean and offerings of light should be made; then Pali prose and verses such as '*Diva tapati adicco*' etc. which generally bring auspiciousness should be chanted. An announcement should then be made to the effect that all bhikkhus have gathered together at that place.

Then some one should go to the nearby forest grove where would be a tree which is conspicuous by special features such as size, height etc. and invite the guardian dryad, saying, 'All the bhikkhus are desirous of your coming to the gathering' (Such an invitation by the bhikkhus can never be refused).

Then the person possessed should be asked, 'What is your name?' (Should it be Naradeva, for instance,) He should be addressed by that name, 'O Naradeva, you have been given the share of merits gained from provision of accommodation to the Sangha, the share of merits gained from offerings of scents and flowers, from offering of meals to the Sangha; the bhikkhus have also recited auspicious suttas such as *Mangala Sutta* etc. as a gift of Dhamma to you. So out of consideration for these deeds of kindness and out of respect to the bhikkhu Sangha, we pray that you release this patient'.

Should such measures fail to secure the release of the demoniacal possession, the situation should be made known to the benevolent devas, "O good devas, you are fully aware that this unruly evil spirit does not take notice of our request made with loving-kindness; we have no alternative but to have recourse to invoke the authority of the Buddha". So saying, the *Atanatiya sutta* should be recited.

The above method is applicable only to lay people. For the bhikkhu who is possessed by demons, *petas* and unruly beings, his room should be swept clean and made tidy; then all the Sanghas should be invited to assemble there. After sharing the merits gained from offerings of flowers, scents etc., the *Atanatiya sutta* should be recited as described before.

Thus the administration of *Atanatiya sutta* is elaborately described in the Commentary on the *Atanatiya sutta*. When recited systematically as laid down in the Commentary, the *Atanatiya sutta* is of immense authority, wielding great power and influence.

Likewise, the other Parittas are also of great power and influence in their own way. In short, the words of the Buddha, as Pitaka consisting of the Five Nikayas, are of great authority, its influence pervading over one hundred thousand crores of world system. promoting welfare and prosperity both in mundane and supra mundane spheres. It wards off all kinds of dangers and paves the way to attainment of Nibbana through realization of Magga Phala Nana. These words of the Buddha, enshrined in the Nikayas of the Pitaka are the noblest of all the spoken words and it should thus be confidently taken to be of immense authority, wielding great power and influence.

*Yam Buddho bhāsate vācaṃ  
khemam Nibanna pattiyā  
dukkhassantakiriya  
sā ve vācānamuttamā*

The Fully-Self Enlightened Buddha has expounded out of great compassion the Five Nikayas with the object of attainment of Nibbana, cessation of all sufferings. The words spoken by the Buddha as contained in the Nikayas of the Pitakas excel all other words, free of any fault and conducive to peace and happiness. (Sagatha Vagga Samyutta Pali Text)

### Discourse on the life of the Bodhisatta Brahmin Sankha.

After a fortnight's stay in the city of Vesali, the Tathagata told the Licchavi princes, 'we are leaving' by way of farewell. Whereupon the Licchavis honoured the Buddha as much as twice that of King Bimbisara and in three days they conducted the Tathagata to the bank of the Ganges.

The Naga devas in the region of the Ganges agreed amongst themselves saying, 'Men have made homage to the Tathagata on a lavish scale and why should we not do likewise?; we shall do likewise.' They proceeded to create golden boats, silver boats, and emerald boats mounted with golden, silver and emerald thrones, covering the entire surface of the Ganges by a blanket of five different species of lily. They then approached the Tathagata and made the solemn request, 'Most Exalted Tathagata, may you grant us a favour by gratifying our wish out of compassion for us?'

The Tathagata conceded to their request and went aboard the craft created by Nagas with ornamentation of jewels; each of the five hundred bhikkhus also occupied a jewelled boat provided for every one of them. Whereupon the Naga kings conducted the Tathagata and the five hundred bhikkhus to the Naga realm. The Tathagata spent the whole night expounding discourses for the benefit of the Naga audience. The next morning a great offering of celestial food was made to the Tathagata and the bhikkhus by the Naga kings. After teaching a discourse in appreciation of the offerings, the Tathagata made his departure from the Naga land.

Devas having dominion over that region of the earth (*Bhumma Devās*) also agreed amongst themselves, saying, 'Men and Nagas have made great homage to the Tathagata, why should we not do likewise? we shall follow suit'. They proceeded to do honour to the Tathagata by setting up excellent umbrellas all over the hills, forest and trees. In this manner similar offerings were made right up to the Brahma plane of *Akanittha*.

King Bimbisara, making great homage twice as much as that of the Licchavis, conducted the Tathagata and the bhikkhus to Veluvana monastery, Rajagaha, making the whole journey as before, in five days.

After the arrival of the Tathagata at Veluvana monastery, Rajagaha, bhikkhus assembled at the Main Hall in the afternoon to discuss matters relating to meditation. Their discussion was often interrupted by conversations such as:

"The glories of the Tathagata are really wonderful. The stretch of land on this side of the Ganges is five yojanas and on the other side of the Ganges it is three yojanas, a total of eight; the surface of the land on both sides was without bumps or hollows at any place. It has an even surface all over and strewn with white sand and flowers.

The surface of the river Ganges, with a width of one yojana, was covered by a blanket of five-hued species of flowers. The whole region was decorated with white umbrellas right up to the Brahma plane of Akanittha "Their discussion on meditation was often interrupted by such words of praise in honour of the Tathagata.

Being aware of what was going on, the Tathagata left the Scented Chamber and going to the Assembly Hall sat on the reserved seat. He then asked the bhikkhus. "Bhikkhus, what is the subject of your discussion at this moment?" When explained what it was, the Tathagata said:

"Such a wonderful manner of making obeisance is not attributable to my glories as a Buddha nor to the powers of Nagas, Devas and Brahmas. It should be attributed to the beneficial results which accrue from a small deed of mine done in the past."

When the Tathagata had given such a hint, bhikkhus approached him with the request, "Most glorious Bhagava, we have not any knowledge of the small deed of charity done in the past. Most Exalted Buddha, we

pray that we may be enlightened so as to know about it fully" The Tathagata, thereupon, proceeded to reveal the facts as stated below:

"Bhikkhus, what happened in the past was this ... There was a Brahmin in the city of Takkasila by the name of Sankha. He had a son called Susima, aged sixteen. One day Susima approached his father with great respect when his father asked him, "My dear son, what is the matter with you?" Then the lad replied, "O Father, I should like to go to Baranasi to acquire education" His father said, "My dear son, there is a Brahmin professor in Baranasi. He is my boy-hood friend; you might go to him and receive your share of learning". He then gave his son the sum of one thousand pieces of money for necessary expenditure.

Susima paid due respect to his parents and taking the money set out on his journey and arrived at Baranasi in due course of time. He approached the Professor with profound respect and in a customary way. He told the Professor that he was the son of Brahmin Sankha of Takkasila. The Professor gave him a warm reception making the remark, 'So you are a son of my friend'.

After a moment of rest, Susima went again to the Professor, and placing the sum of money at his feet, requested him for permission to acquire education under his care. The permission was willingly granted. He took pains in learning much in a very short time, adding every thing to the fount of his knowledge, just like the precious grease of lion retained in a golden cup for the sake of security. As he was endowed with *paramis* he completed the full course of learning in a few months instead of twelve years as an average lad would have to spend.

As Susima was in the middle of studying a Veda text, he discovered that the treatise contained only the beginning and middle of the subject they treated; the final section was not to be found therein. He brought the matter to the notice of the Professor, saying, 'O great Professor, this Veda text deals only with the beginning and middle of the subject; the final portion is not found in it'. Whereupon, the Professor also admitted that he too did not find it'. Susima then asked the Professor, 'O Professor, is there any one who knows all about the subject from

beginning to end. The Professor replied, 'My dear son Susima, those Pacceka Buddhas who live in the forest of Isipathana, Migadaya may probably know'. "If so, may I have your kind permission to go and ask those Pacceka Buddhas about it" requested the youth Susima. The Professor granted his permission, saying, 'My dear son Susima, you may please yourself as you like'.

Susima who was accomplished in *parami* went to the forest of Isipathana, Migadaya, approached the Pacceka Buddhas with due respect and asked, "Venerable Sirs, do you know (the subjects) in Vedas from beginning to end?" "Aye, we do, lay devotee Susima" was their reply. Then he requested them, "Kindly teach me the last part of the knowledge which is missing in the Veda". The Pacceka Buddhas told him, "Lay devotee Susima, you will have to renounce the world and become a recluse; no one other than a bhikkhu could learn that". Susima agreed and gave his word, "Very well, Venerable Sirs, please ordain me as a bhikkhu; you may direct me to do anything that is necessary so long as it helps me learn the last portion of Veda knowledge". He was ordained as a bhikkhu as requested and taught how to wear the robes properly keeping the edges (borders) of both the upper and lower robes in a tidy circular fashion. They could teach him only this precept of very good conduct, *ābhisamācārika sīla*, and not any meditation, (because unlike Omniscient Buddhas, they had not the ability to give instructions on how to practise Vipassana meditation.)

The newly ordained bhikkhu Susima devoted himself earnestly to the observance of the *ābhisamācārika sīla* as instructed by the Pacceka Buddhas. Having performed deeds of merit in the past which formed sufficing conditions (*upanissaya*) for attainment of Pacceka Buddha Nana, after a brief period of practice, he became a Pacceka Buddha. He was soon held in high repute and reached the height of his glory acquiring great fame and gains with a large number of followers and disciples. But because of his past misdeeds which prohibited longevity, he did not live long and passed away while still young. His remains were cremated by the Pacceka Buddhas and the citizens of Baranasi. The relics of his body were enshrined in a stupa built near the gate of the city.

The old Brahmin father Sankha thought of his son one day, "My son had been gone for a long time now and no news had been received from him". So he left Takkasila with a longing to see his son and eventually reached the gate of the city of Baranasi. He saw quite a number of people gathered together near the shrine there; and thinking some one from amongst the crowd would perhaps know something about his son, approached them and enquired, 'Friends, there is a young man by the name of Susima who came to Baranasi to learn; perhaps some of you might know something about him'.

"Aye we do, old Brahmin. That young man Susima, after acquiring the complete knowledge of Vedas under the care of the Professor of Baranasi, received ordination at the place of the Pacceka Buddhas, and eventually became a Pacceka Buddha through realization of Pacceka Buddha Nana. He had passed away now, attaining *Amupādisesa Nibbana*. This is the shrine where his relics are enshrined."

After hearing this shocking news, the poor old Brahmin wept most hopelessly, beating the earth with his palm many a time. After mourning the loss of his dear son to his heart's content, he went into the precincts of the shrine and removed grass, spreading white sand which he had brought from a nearby place with his shoulder towel. He poured water from his jug all over the place to keep the dust from arising; then he collected as much wild flowers as possible and offered them to the shrine. He put his shoulder towel into the shape of a streamer and wrapping it round his umbrella, he placed it high above the shrine, tying them tight to the shrine. Then he departed.

Having thus told the story of the past, the Tathagata correlated the events of the past with those of the present by giving the following discourse:

"Bhikkhus, you might be wondering who the Brahmin Sankha of the said story could be; you need not ponder any more about it. The Brahmin Sankha was no other person than myself.



(1) I, who was Bodhisatta then, had cleaned the precincts of the shrine containing the relics of Susima Pacceka Buddha removing the grass roots, stump etc. As a beneficial result of this act of merit, the people made the road clean and free of tree stumps and levelled it for a stretch of five yojanas on this side of the Ganges and three yojanas on the far bank.

(2) I, then Bodhisatta, had spread white sand in the precincts of the Pacceka Buddha shrine; as a benefit accruing from this act of merit, people spread white sand all along the route measuring eight yojanas.

(3) I, then Bodhisatta, had collected as much wild flowers as I could and offered them to the shrine. This meritorious deed of mine resulted in men and devas strewing various kinds of flowers on land and the river covering a distance of nine yojanas.

(4) I, then Bodhisatta, had sprinkled the precincts of the Pacceka Buddha shrine with water from my jug to prevent the dust from arising. As a result of this act of merit of mine, *Pokkharavasa* rain (from a cloud bank the size of a lily leaf) fell the moment I set foot on the land of Vesali.

(5) I, then Bodhisatta, had set up a streamer at the shrine of the Pacceka Buddha and erected an umbrella on top of it. For that act merit, streamers were set up all the way to the Akanittha Brahma realm and white umbrellas were erected all over the regions.

Bhikkhus, making homage to me in such wonderful manner is not attributable to my glories as a Buddha, nor to the powers of Nagas, devas and Brahmas. It should be attributed to the beneficial results which accrue from a small deed of merit done by me as a Bodhisatta in my existence as Brahmin Sankha. The Tathagata in winding up the discourse expounded the following verse:

*Mattāsukhapariccāgō*  
*Passe ce vipulaṃ sukhaṃ*  
*caje mattāsukhaṃ dhīro*  
*sampassaṃ vipulaṃ sukhaṃ*

When it is known with certainty that a generous abandoning by way of sacrifice of pleasurable sensations which give a small amount of happiness will bring a vast amount of reward such as the happiness of Nibbana, then surely a wise person should forego such an insignificant reward of a small pleasure in favour of the great reward of Nibbanic happiness.

At the conclusion of the exposition, many sentient beings attained *Sotapatti Magga Phala* etc.

End of the discourse on the Bodhisatta Brahmin Sankha.



### **The story of richman's son Uggasena, the acrobat.**

In the time of Buddha, a theatrical troupe of five hundred entertainers used to stage shows to entertain the king of Rajagaha for seven days annually or bi-annually, for which they received enormous amount of rewards in gold and silver. The prize awarded by the enthusiastic general public in their honour at intervals of performances was inestimable. The citizens sat upon rows and rows of four-legged bedsteads of their own, arranging them behind and above one another, each row getting higher and higher than the one in front.

Their show usually started with the appearance on the stage of a young maid, the daughter of the troupe's leading acrobat. She displayed her skill in acrobatics in various styles on a string of bamboos at a certain height from the ground; she moved from end to end gently and steadily, as she danced and sang with a pleasant voice.

**Uggasena, son of a richman.**

Amongst the audience was a youth named Uggasena, the son of a richman. He was enjoying the show together with a friend; he gazed attentively at the impressive performer displaying her acrobatic skill in different postures and styles, softly bending, raising, stretching her delicate hands and feet. He went back home driven mad with intense attachment and affection for the youthful actress. On arrival at home, he threw himself down on bed, saying, "I will live only if I can get her or else I will die on this bed" and sentimentally went on hunger strike.

His parents asked him, "Dear son, what ails you?" "O dear mother and father, ... I will live only if I win the hands of the acrobatic actress whom I have seen performing in the precincts of the royal palace; if not I will die on this bed-stead" was his frank, blunt reply. His parents consoled him by saying, "Dear son, don't get so sentimental; we will find a fair maid suitable for you from amongst our own clansmen of wealthy status". But Uggasena was not moved by the pleadings of his parents; he reiterated his wish as before without any change and kept on lying on his bed.

Uggasena's father made several attempts to persuade his son to change his mind, talking to him privately with soothing words, but to no avail; finally the parents sent for his friend and asked him to negotiate with the head acrobat, the father of the girl, on their behalfs, saying, "Friend, please take his sum of one thousand and give it to the father of the young actress with a request to accept it and to give his daughter in marriage to my son, Uggasena".

The head acrobat's reply to the messenger's request was "I am not prepared to accept the money in exchange for my daughter. If the richman's Uggasena cannot live unless he wins the hands of my daughter, he will have to come along with us. I will give away my daughter only on this condition that he follows us wherever we go.

### **Richman's son Uggasena followed the actress.**

When his parents conveyed the news to him, Uggasena said, "O mother and father, in that case I will go along with them", and so saying he left for head acrobat's place, inspite of repeated requests of his parents and relatives. The head acrobat was as good as his words; he gave away his daughter and they all wandered about towns and villages staging shows and acrobatic performances.

A son was born of the union of Uggasena and the actress. The mother used to coax and coddle the child by singing a lullaby:

Son of a watchman of the carts ... I wish you would sleep.

Son of a wicked man, the custodian of prize money ... I wish you would sleep.

Son of an ignoramus ... I wish you would sleep.

She sang this in a mocking, ridiculing manner.

This lullaby reflected on the life being led by Uggasena. When ever the entertainment troupe rested during the course of wanderings, he was charged with the responsibility for securing food for the oxen and feeding them, and for security of the camp. He was also responsible for safe custody of the proceeds from the performances.

Uggasena realized that by singing mocking lullabies the actress was making insinuations and ridiculing him. He asked the actress, "Are you singing to despise me?" She replied, "Yes, it was intended for you" Uggasena retorted, "Then I will have to abandon you and go back to my parents". The actress was unmoved by this threat and she replied "I don't care at all whether you go away or come back" and went on repeating the lullaby again and again (knowing that it was irritating to Uggasena). (The actress was puffed up with pride of her beauty and her fine art of dancing which enabled her to earn her living easily)

### **Uggasena became an acrobatic artist.**

Uggasena thought over how the actress became so conceited and finally realised, "Her pride is rooted in her prowess as an acrobatic artist". He made up his mind to learn the skill in acrobatic feats. Approaching his father-in law, the acrobatic master, he sought and received permission from him to be trained in the art of gymnastics until he became an expert in it. He went from place to place staging shows in villages and marketing towns and finally he came back again to the city of Rajagaha. There he had it announced widely throughout the city that "seven days from now, Uggasena, the son of the richman, will stage a performance, demonstrating the amazing feats of acrobatics and somersaults".

The citizens vied with one another in setting up bedstead seats with longer legs to get better view of the performances and they assembled round the stage on the appointed day. Uggasena appeared; he climbed up a pole sixty cubits high made up of many lengths of bamboo affixed one to the other firmly. He stood on top of the pole poised to stage a performance.

### **Richman's son Uggasena appeared on the mental screen of the Buddha.**

On the day fixed for the staging of performance by Uggasena, the Tathagata looked into the world of beings before dawn and perceived by means of Omniscience, the vision of Uggasena caught on the supernormal mental screen, like a fish trapped in a net, and reflected on what would come to pass. He saw in his mind's eye:

When the morning comes, Uggasena will stand on top of the pole sixty cubits high to stage a performance and the citizens will appear to witness it. At that assemblage of people, I will expound the Dhamma made up of four verses. As a result of hearing that discourse of mine, eighty four thousand sentient beings will gain emancipation through realization of the Four Noble Truths; and Uggasena will attain Arahatship.

As the time came to go for alms-round, the Tathagata went into the city in the company of his bhikkhus as usual. Just before the Buddha's entry into the city, Uggasena had signaled to the audience by pointing his index finger towards them that he was about to begin the show; that brought thunderous applause from the crowd. Uggasena, who was then standing on top of the pole took a leap up into the air and somersaulted seven times in the air before he came down and stood on the pole.

The Tathagata who had now come into the city caused the audience through his super normal power, to pay exclusive attention to him, thus diverting their interest which was directed to Uggasena a moment ago. Watching the mood of the audience from atop the pole, Uggasena noticed their attention which was fixed on him suddenly changed towards the Tathagata. He felt down-hearted that the audience had lost interest in him. He thought to himself, "I can stage this acrobatic show only once a year; yet as soon as the Buddha has come into the city, the audience is no longer interested in me; they give their attention only to the Bhagava. All my efforts to demonstrate my skill in the acrobatic feats are in vain, fruitless."

The Tathagata knew what was passing in the mind of Uggasena and asked the Venerable Moggallana "Dear son Moggallana, go ye to the son of the richman and tell him that he is wanted to go on with the performance of acrobatics". The Venerable Moggallana went as instructed by the Tathagata and standing at the base of the pole gave encouragement to Uggasena by the following verse:

*Igha passa naṭaputta  
Uggasena mahabbala  
karohi rañgaṃ parisāya  
hāsayassu mahājanaṃ.*

O gymnastic artist of great strength, Uggasena, I urge you to resume your display of skill in somersault with ease of mind. Look at the crowd that has gathered. Let the mass of people enjoy your amazing entertainment and praise your skill with uproarious cheers.

On hearing the words of the Venerable Moggallana, Uggasena felt greatly delighted and encouraged; he thought that the Tathagata was desirous of seeing his skill. He replied while still standing on top of the pole by the following verse:

*Igha passa Mahāpanna  
Moggallāna mahiddhika  
karomi rañgaṃ parisaya  
hasayami mahajanam.*

Venerable Moggallana of great wisdom and of the highest degree of supernormal power! Please watch; I will entertain the crowd that has gathered by displaying my skill with ease of mind. I will perform such an amazing feat that the audience will give enthusiastic cheers and praise uproariously.

So saying, he threw himself up and made fourteen complete rounds of sommersault in the air before coming down on his feet on top of the bamboo pole.

#### **Exhortation by the Buddha.**

At that moment, the Tathagata exhorted Uggasena by these words' "Dear son Uggasena, a wise man should abandon attachment to the five aggregates which had arisen before, to the five aggregates which will arise in the future and to those which are presently arising. Not clinging to the five aggregates, he should strive for the release from the suffering of birth, the suffering of ageing, the suffering of death." The Tathagata went on expounding the Dhamma by means of the following verse:

*Muñgca pure muñca pacchato  
majjhe muñgca bhvassa paragu  
sabbatta vimuttamānaso  
na punaṃ jātijaraṃ upehisi.*

Dear son Uggasena, give up, abandon the craving for the fivefold aggregates of mind and matter of the past, .... of the future .... of the present. Once you have completely forsaken the attachment to these aggregates of the past, the future and the present, you will have

transcended the round of suffering of the three realms, namely, the sensual world, (*kāma bhava*), the world of form (*rūpa bhava*) and the formless world (*arūpa bhava*) and reached perfection and become an authority in matters pertaining to special wisdom (*abhiñña*), full comprehension (*pariñña*), abandonment (*pahana*), mental development (*bhavanā*) and realisation (*sacchikariyā*); you will live fully emancipated from all forms of the conditioned and pass beyond the stages of birth, ageing, ailing and death.

At the conclusion of the discourse, eighty four thousand sentient beings became emancipated through realization of the Four Noble Truths. The richman's son Uggasena attained Arahatsip complete with Analytical wisdom (*Paṭisambhida Nana*) while still standing on top of the bamboo pole. He came down from it and went towards the Buddha, paying homage with full reverence. He then requested for permission to receive ordination. The Tathagata stretched out his hand and pronounced '*ehi bhikkhu*' to let him become a full-fledged bhikkhu. The form of an acrobatic artist disappeared instantaneously and Uggasena assumed the form of a Maha Thera of sixty years standing (aged eighty) fully equipped with the eight requisites of a bhikkhu.

### **Bhikkhus asked Uggasena whether he was afraid or not.**

Fellow bhikkhus asked Uggasena "Did you not feel afraid when you came down from the top of the bamboo pole sixty cubits high?" Thereupon, Uggasena replied "Friends, I had not the slightest fright." The bhikkhus went to the Tathagata and reported, "Most Exalted Tathagata, Uggasena has claimed to be an Arahata by telling lies that "he did not feel the slightest fright when he was coming down from the top of the pole'.

The Tathagata gave them a brief explanation in support of Uggasena: "Dear bhikkhus, all the bhikkhus like my son Uggasena through eradication of *asavas* by cutting off the ten fetters, *Samyojana*<sup>7</sup> are free from fright."

---

<sup>7</sup>*Samyōjanas*: bonds or fetters binding all beings to the wheel of existence. When they are completely broken or eliminated, emancipation results. The ten



The Tathagata continued to expound the following verse which is included in the *Brahmana vagga* of Dhammapada.

*Sabbasaṃyojanam chetvā  
Yo ve napaṇitassati  
saṅgātigaṃ viṣaṃyuttaṃ  
tamataṃ brumi brāhmaṇaṃ*

Bhikkhus, a bhikkhu who has attained Arahantship through eradication of *asavas* has indeed cut off the ten long fetters by the sword of *Arahatta Magga*; he cannot therefore be moved or startled by fright which has its origin in greed, *lobha*. I praise and proclaim such an Arahant who has overcome seven kinds of clinging, *sanga*, namely, sensuous passion, ill-will, conceit, wrong view, moral defilement, physical, verbal and mental misdeeds, and who has nothing more to do with four *yogas* (*kama*, *bhava*, *dhitthi* and *avijja*) as a truly noble, pure person, *Brahmana*, who has done away with all kinds of evil.

Many people attained *Sotapatti Magga* etc. at the conclusion of the discourse.

#### An account of Uggasena's past deeds.

One day bhikkhus were assembled again in the Main Hall to discuss the mode of Uggasena's attainment to Arahantship. "Friends, one wonders in the first place how a person such as the Venerable Uggasena who was predestined to attain Arahantship, got entangled through an actress with the troupe of acrobatic performers, following

---

fetters are: (i) *sakkāya ditthi*, belief in *atta* or soul, the view that the body and mind is 'myself' (ii) *vicikiccha*: doubt or wavering concerning the Buddha's Enlightenment, his Teaching and his Order. (iii) *silabbataparāmāsa*: the belief that there are paths other than the Ariya Path of eight constituents that can liberate one from *dukkha*. (iv) *Kāmarāga*, sensual desire, sensuous passion. (v) *patigha*: ill-will. (vi) *rūparāga*: craving for existence in the Fine-material (Brahma) realm (vii) *Arūparāga*: craving for existence in the Formless (Brahma) realm. (viii) *Māna*: pride, awareness of superiority or inferiority. (ix) *uddhacca*: restlessness, agitation, mental unrest. (x) *avijja*: ignorance, lack of real or correct knowledge as to the nature of existence, as to the Four Noble Truths. It is the main root of *dukkha* and of rebirth.

them wherever they wandered round; and in the second place, what was the cause of the powerful sufficing condition for attainment of arahatship." The Tathagata came into the Main Hall and asked, "Bhikkhus, what is the subject of your discussion?" When explained what the subject of their discussion was, the Tathagata explained them briefly thus, "Bhikkhus, Uggasena himself had been the cause of these two events, the one that entailed his engagement with the dancing troupe and the one that resulted in his attainment to Arahatsip". He then went on to relate the full account as below:

"Long, long ago when a pagoda was built to enshrine the relics of Kassapa Buddha, men and women of Baranasi went in large numbers to the pagoda site to contribute necessary labour carrying plenty of food in their carts. On the way they met a Maha Thera entering the city for his round of alms-food.

At that time one woman noticed the Maha Thera and told her husband, "My dear lord, the Thera is still on his round of receiving food; please go and bring his bowl so that we may offer some thing to him; we have brought along in the cart plenty of food". The man went and fetched the bowl from the bhikkhu and after filling it with hard and soft food to its brim, they returned it to the Maha Thera and both the husband and wife declared their wish: "Revered Maha Thera, for this deed of merit, may both of us be blessed with a share of the Supramundane knowledge which you have realized".

The recipient of their gift food was not an ordinary bhikkhu; he happened to be an arahat devoid of taint of defilements, *asavas*; he foresaw, by means of his *Anāgata Ñāna*, knowledge of the future, that their wishes would be fulfilled and so smiled happily. The woman caught a glimpse of it and she muttered, "My dear lord, the Maha Thera who received our offering might be an actor. The husband also agreed, saying, "Yes, he might be an actor" They then departed from that place. This then was the deed the husband and wife had done in the past.

The couple lived to the end of their life span in that existence and were reborn in the realm of the devas. After enjoying the life of devas, the wife was born as the daughter of the leading acrobatic performer in

her present (last) existence. The husband was born as the son of a rich man in the last stage of his existence, by the name of Uggasena. Although born as a son of a richman, he had to accompany the dancing troupe in their wanderings, for the demeritorious deed of giving a wrong word of agreement. "Yes, he might be an actor" to his wife in a past existence. But for the good deed of offering food to an arahat, in pure piety and devotional faith, he attained arahatship.

### **The young actress also attained Arahathship.**

When Uggasena attained arahatship and became an "*Ehi bhikkhu*" his wife, the young actress thought to herself, awakened by the meritorious deed of the past, "whatever level of intelligence possessed by my husband, my level of intelligence should also be the same as his". Reasoning in this way she approached the bhikkhunis and received ordination from them. Then devoting herself to the practice of dhamma, in due course she also attained arahatship, having eradicated all the *asavas*.

End of the account of Uggasena's past deeds.



### **War between the Sakyans of Kapilavatthu and the Sakyans of Koliya over dispute about sharing of Rohini river waters.**

There was a small river by the name of Rohini between the two countries of Kapilavatthu and Koliya. The two kingdoms took turns in perfect harmony to water their respective arable lands by controlling the flow of the channel with a single dam.

The level of the water in the channel was at its lowest in the month of *Jetthamasa* and the crops usually withered. The farmers of the two countries called a meeting to discuss the matter of sharing the water in the channel. At the meeting the farmers of Koliya said:

"Friends, if the small amount of water in the reservoir were to be divided and shared by both of us, none of us would receive sufficient amount to water our fields. One more flood of water

would suffice to bring maturity to our crops. We request you therefore to let us make use of this small amount of water."

Farmers of Kapilavatthu had their say also in this manner: "Friends, we can't go from door to door of your houses carrying baskets and our purses filled with gold, silver and precious jewels in search of paddy, in a dejected manner, while you all sat down with your minds at ease having filled your granaries with paddy to their full capacities. Our early crops, too, are about to mature and need watering in like manner."

Heated arguments ensued, one side saying 'we are not going to yield', the other side retorting in the same words. Exchange of words eventually led to blows, a farmer on one side starting to attack a farmer from the other side and the latter retaliating in a like manner. The affray that started between the farmers on both sides ultimately grew into hostilities (like a small brush fire which grows fierce and finally burns down a palatial mansion) to the extent of decrying the royal clans on both sides. The Koliyan farmers began the quarrel:

"You have threatened us placing your reliance on the royal clan of Kapilavatthu. These Kapilavatthu royal clan you depend upon behave like common dogs and jackals of the forest making their own sisters their wives<sup>8</sup>. What harm can their elephants, horses and armours can do to us?"

The Kapilavatthu farmers retaliated in no less acrimonious tone:

You threatened us relying on your little lepers inflicted with horrible leprosy. The Koliya descendents on whom you lean for support are themselves in a miserable plight ever since they were banished from the city and lived like animals in the hollow of Kola trees<sup>9</sup>. What harm can their elephants, horses and armours can do to us?"

---

<sup>8</sup> For background story, reference may be made to Malalasekera's 'Dictionary of Pali Proper names' under Sakya, Sakka, Sakiya.

<sup>9</sup> For background story, *ibid*, under Koliya.

The farmers returned to their respective cities and reported the matter to the Ministers of Agriculture, who in turn, brought the state of affairs to the notice of their chiefs.

Consequently, the Sakyans of Kapilavatthu prepared to wage war on Koliyas and came out of the city, shouting the war cry, 'The husbands of their own sisters will demonstrate their feat of arms'. The rival royalities on the side of Koliyas also prepared for war and came out, their war cry being, 'Those taking shelters in the hollows of Kola trees will display their feat of arms'.

At that time, the Tathagata was still residing in the Jetavana monastery of Savatthi. On the very day on which the two rival communities of Kapilavatthu and Koliya were all prepared to go to the battlefield, the Tathagata looked into the world early at dawn and perceived that a bloody battle was imminent between the two opposing sides that very evening'. The Tathagata further perceived that he would be able to avert the war by going to the scene of hostilities and expounding three Jatakas, namely, *Phandana*, *Duddaba* and *Lathukika*. This would bring about peace; then he will have to teach the two Jatakas of *Rukkhadhamma* and *Vattaka* followed by *Attadanda* Sutta to bring home the benefits of unity and harmony. Having heard the discourses, the Sakyans and Koliyans will each give him two hundred and fifty youths to enter the Order: "I will ordain them to become bhikkhus culminating in the convening of Great Assembly of Maha Samaya."

Having perceived thus, the Tathagata decided to go to the place of hostilities and save the warring kinsmen from mutual destruction. He went early for the usual round of receiving alms-food and stayed the whole day in the Scented Chamber. Towards the evening, he left the Chamber carrying the big robe and alms bowl himself for the scene of strife all alone, without informing any one. On arrival at the spot, he sat cross-legged in the sky in the middle of the rival groups, and caused dark-blue rays to be emitted from his hair so that darkness prevailed all over although the sun had not yet set. This was meant to cause contrition in the heart of the warring factions.

While all the people were greatly frightened by the strange phenomenon, the Buddha sending out six-coloured rays from his body, manifested himself to them.

### **Royalties of the two countries abandoned their arms.**

When members of the Sakyan clan saw the Tathagata, they began to contemplate thus: "The Buddha of our own blood has come; perhaps he has full knowledge of our strife." They made discussion among themselves and decided, "It is not right and proper for us to let our weapons fall upon the bodies of others in the presence of the Buddha; let Koliyans kill us or take us captives, should they desire to do so". By mutual consent they abandoned all their weapons and sat down respectfully making homage to the Buddha.

The Koliyans also arrived at the same decision among themselves; they too abandoned their weapons and sat down paying obeisance to the Tathagata who then descended from the sky and sat upon a reserved seat on the delightful sandy plain with all the grace and glory of a Buddha.

### **Discourse on end of Strife.**

The Tathagata knowingly asked, 'Why have you all come to this place?' The kings of both the countries replied, 'Most Exalted Bhagava, we have not come just to see the river, nor to sport in the river; as a matter of fact we have come to wage war upon one another on this sandy plain.'

The Tathagata again asked, "Your Royal Highnesses .... what is the actual cause of your strife?" Then they replied, "water of this Rohini stream is the actual cause of it".

The Tathagata then asked, "Your Royal Highnesses .... what is the value of water of this Rohini stream?" They replied, "Exalted Bhagava, it is of small value". The Tathagata made an additional question, "What is the value of the earth?" "Its value is limitless" was the reply.

Whereupon, the Tathagata made this direct question: "How would you evaluate the noble royal Khattiya race?" They replied "The value of noble royal Khattiya race is unlimited" The Tathagata then made this address:

Your Royal Highnesses .... For some water of this Rohini channel that is of small value, why do you wish to destroy the priceless royal race of Khattiya by fighting one another. Not the slightest amount of pleasure could be found in worthless conflicts and wasteful strifes. O Your Royal Highnesses .... there was a glaring instance where the seed of enmity sown by a tree deva and bear remained potent throughout the Bhadda world system".

The Tathagata then went on to expound the *Phandana* Jataka (of Terasa Nipata), the brief account of which is as follows:

#### *Phandana Jataka*

Your Royal Highnesses .... Long time ago, during the reign of King Brahmadata in Baranasi, there was a village of carpenters just outside the city; and there was a brahmin who was a carpenter by profession. He brought wood from the forest and made them into chariots for his living.

At that time there was a Kyo tree (*Melicoca trijuna*) tree in the region of the Himalayas. A bear used to come and sleep under that tree with ease and comfort after his meal. One day a dried branch got broke due to a strong wind and fell on the bear's back hurting it slightly. The bear ran away through fright but soon returned to find out the cause of his injury. He did not see any enemy.

So he thought to himself: "There is no wild beast such as lion, leopard or tiger around here to harm me; and there can't be any one except the tree spirit who might be jealous of my sleeping under the tree, and have caused me harm. I will surely have my revenge on him" thus making a mountain out of a molehill, the bear hit the tree with its tusk, scratched it with its paws, saying, "I have not eaten your leaves, nor broken your branches; you

don't show any spite towards other animals taking rest under young tree, but you are jealous of me. What fault have I got. You just wait for two, three days: I will have your tree uprooted and cut up into pieces".

Having threatened the tree spirit, the bear kept on knocking round in the neighbourhood, looking for a person capable of causing damage to the tree.

The carpenter brahmin, accompanied by a few hands, went into the forest in a small vehicle in search of wood for the construction of chariots. They left the vehicle in a place and went into the forest with hatchets and choppers. They went round looking for the right type of wood and eventually reached near the melicoca trijuna tree.

When the bear saw the brahmin carpenter, it thought, 'Today, I shall have my retaliation against my enemy' and he went and stood at the base of the tree. As the carpenter passed by the tree, the bear seized the opportunity of addressing<sup>10</sup> him thus:

"My dear man, you have come into the forest with a hatchet in your hand. Tell me frankly which tree you have in mind to cut down?"

When the carpenter heard the words of the bear, he uttered in amazement, "Dear boys, it is strange that a bear speaks the language of the humans, a thing I have hitherto never seen or heard". He thought to himself then, such a bear speaking the human language would know the kind of wood suitable for making chariots, and so he asked the bear:

"Dear bear king, you have wandered all over, up the hills and down the valleys. Please tell me honestly, which kind of wood is most suitable for construction of chariots?"

When the bear heard of this, he felt that his wish was going to be fulfilled then and he replied in verse:

---

<sup>10</sup> The conversation between the bear and the carpenter was made in seven verses. The verses in Pali, which are not so important, are not reproduced; only their translation is provided here.



'Pidauk (*Pterocarpus Indicus*) is not strong enough to use as frame work; cutch (*Acacia Catechu*) is equally unsuitable; Ingyin, the Sal tree (*Shorea Siamensis*) is the same; and Myaukngo (*Lythrum fruticosum*) is out of the question (equally weak). There is a certain kind of tree known as *Melicoca trijuga*; the wood of that tree is the strongest for the construction of chariots.

The carpenter was delighted to hear it and so he thought to himself: "I've come into the jungle on a truly auspicious day and even a beast like the bear pointed out to me the most suitable kind of wood for the construction of chariots. What a fortune", and he asked the bear:

"My dear bear .... how about the branches and leaves of that tree and its stem? Dear good friend, please tell me every thing so that I know all about that tree".

**The bear gave his reply in two verses:**

"My dear friend, Brahmin, there is a certain tree whose branches and twigs bend downwards and keep on hanging down. They are pliant, durable and strong. I am now standing at the base of that tree: it is called *Melicoca trijuna*. Its wood is the right stuff for making circumference of wheel, axle, shaft and all other components of a chariot.

After uttering these two verses, the bear made off with a happy mind to some other place suitable for seeking his prey. Then the carpenter started to make arrangements for cutting down the tree. The guardian spirit of the tree thought: "Although I had not thrown down anything on his back, the bear has been harbouring a grudge against me and sowed the seed of enmity for nothing. He has now plotted to cause destruction of my habitation; with the destruction of my dwelling, I am certain to be destroyed too; I shall have to bring about his destruction with a ruse". He then transformed himself into the form of a human labourer and approaching the carpenter asked him. "O man, you have got a beautiful tree; what do you intend to do, once you have cut it into wood?" The carpenter replied, "I will make it into a chariot frame".

"Who has told you that the wood of this tree is good for making chariot", queried the tree spirit. 'A bear told me so' was the reply. The tree spirit said, 'that's good; the bear has given you a good advice. Indeed, the chariot you are going to make, according to the advice of the bear, should turn out to be a fine looking one; and I too should like to give you a suggestion, that is to strengthen your chariot frame work with a girdle of bear's skin removed from round its neck; it will make it stronge: than if it were secured with tin plates, and increase your income from the chariots".

When asked by the carpenter, 'O my dear man, from where can I get the bear's skin?', the tree spirit said;

"O man, are you still a young boy not to know that the tree is inanimate; it will remain here and will not run away. Just hurry after the bear who has told you about the tree and ask him by showing great respect, "O my Lord, which part of the tree you have shown me should be cut?" and persuaded him back to the tree. Then suspecting nothing, he would point out with his long stretched-out snout, 'Cut here, cut here'; at that moment, you cut him down with a sharp axe and put him to death. Then strip him off his leather, eat his flesh and attend to the business of cutting down the tree'.

Thus the seed of enmity was sown. On hearing the guardian spirit of the tree, the brahmin carpenter expressed his feeling of delight in these words: O How marvellous, this is an auspicious day for me. "He returned home after killing the bear and cutting down the tree.

The Buddha concluded his discourse by expounding the following *Abhisambuddha* verses in order to exhort and instruct the feuding kinsmen.

*Iccevam phandano issam  
Isso ca pana phandanam  
aññamaññam vivādena  
aññamaññamaghatayum*

Your Royal Highnesses .... In this manner, the tree spirit quarrelled with the bear; and the bear in turn disputed with the tree spirit. Their animosity finally led to their destructions.

*Evameva manussānam  
Vivādo yattha jāyati  
mayuranaccaṃ naccanti  
yatha te issaphandanā.*

Your Royal Highnesses .... When people fight against one another, they do so like the bear and the tree spirit in the manner of a dancing peacock. Just as a peacock could not dance without exposing the private parts of its body, so the people fighting one another are not capable of concealing what is to be concealed .... (a reference to the derogatory remarks concerning the origin of the Sakyans and Koliyans made by the warring factions).

*Taṃ vo vadāmi bhaddaṃ vo  
yāvattettha samāgatā  
samodatha mā vivadatha  
mā hotha issaphandanā*

Your Royal Highnesses, may you always be blessed with glory and graciousness, you who have gathered together on the banks of the Rohini. I exhort you to act after the manner of the waters of the two rivers, Ganges and Jumna, harmoniously mixing together with loving-kindness. Avoid fighting one another causing mutual destruction. Do not follow the example of the bear and the tree spirit.

*Sāmaggimeva sikkhetha  
Buddhe hetam pasamsitam  
samaggirato Dhammattho  
yogakkhemā na dhansati*

Your Royal Highnesses, strive only for unity; every Buddha has praised the virtues of unity. He who delights in harmonious

living, established in the ten modes of good conduct (*sucarita*<sup>11</sup>) is bound to achieve nothing less than the happiness of Nibbana, the end of all attachments, *yogas*, which yoke one to rebirth.

The two rival factions of Sakyans and Koliyans were amicably reunited after hearing the discourse of the Buddha. In winding up the discourse, the Tathagata revealed that he was the Chief Guardian deity of the whole forest who had personal knowledge of the conflict between the bear and the tree spirit.

End of *Phandana Jataka*.

••••☆••••

*Duddubha Jataka*.

The Tathagata then went on giving exhortation to the assembled crowd. "Your Royal Highnesses, do not believe what others say without giving careful consideration. All the quadrupets of the Himalaya forest, which was three yojanas in extent, were once about to plunge into the great ocean for trusting, without reasoning, the word of a hare that ran away screaming 'The earth has crumbled, the earth has crumbled. You should never allow yourself to become a person who is taken in by what others say without careful consideration.'" With these introductory words, the Buddha gave the discourse on Duddubha Jataka of Catukka Nipata<sup>12</sup>.

---

<sup>11</sup> *Sucarita*: 1. Avoidance of killing, of stealing sexual misconduct, telling lies, slandering, harsh, abusive language, frivolous speech, avarice, ill-will, wrong view.

<sup>12</sup> This Jataka treats of the story of a hare who was unduly scared by the fall of a bale fruit on the palm leaf under which it was sleeping. It ran towards the ocean through fright screaming, 'The earth has crumbled'. Equally frightened without any reasoning, all the four-legged animals of the Himalayan forest ran along until they were stopped by the Lion King who saved them from the impending danger after careful investigation into the aspect of the matter. (For more details, may refer to the Five hundred and fifty Jataka).

**Discourse on *Latukika Jataka*.**

Then the Tathagata went on to explain them that sometimes it is possible that a weak one could get an opportunity to destroy a strong one while on other occasions the strong one gets the chance to wreak havoc with a weak one. Giving the instance where a young skylark had caused the death of a full grown elephant, the Tathagata gave the following discourse on *Latukika Jataka* of *Pancaka Nipata*:

Excellencies .... Once upon a time Bodhisatta was born as an elephant during the reign of King Brahmadata in Baranasi, when grown up he had a fine appearance with a huge body. He lived in the forests of Himalayas governing a herd of elephants numbering eighty thousand.

At that time a female skylark happened to have laid her eggs on the beaten tracks of elephants. The Bodhisatta elephant came out in the company of eighty thousand elephants along the route at a time when the chicken skylarks were not yet capable of flying. Eventually the Bodhisatta and his herd of elephants arrived at the spot where the skylarks were staying.

When the skylark saw the King elephant she was worried about the safety of her chickens. She thought. "If I did not approach the King elephant, it would surely tread upon my chickens and kill them; I would immediately approach it with a request for a rightful protection of my chickens". So with her wings closed together as if to make obeisance, she stood right in front of the King elephant and made her submission:

*Vandāmi tam kuñcara satṭhihayanam  
āraṇṇakam yuthapatim yasassim  
pakkhehi tam pañcalikaṃ karomi  
mā me vadhī puttake dubbalāya.*

O Your Majesty, King of elephants .... one whose strength wanes only at the age of sixty, chief of the herd of elephants that roam in the forest, I salute you, paying my homage to you with clasped wings. I pray that my children be spared their lives by not treading upon them.

Whereupon the Bodhisatta gave her comfort with those words, "O young female skylark, don't be downhearted, I will protect your chickens so that no harm will come to them", and he stood over the young ones shielding them with his body. All the elephants by-passed him and the young-skylarks were saved. The Bodhisatta then called the female skylark and gave an advice before he left: "Young female skylark, a large rogue elephant, with no companions, will come this way after us. He will not take our words. When he comes along, you had better approach him also for the safety of your children, praying him to spare their lives."

When the female skylark saw the rogue elephant coming along, she approached him with her wings clasped in homage and beseeched him thus as advised by the elephant King!

*Vandami taṃ kuṅjara ekaṅgariṃ  
āraññakam pabbataśāmyogaram  
pakkhehi taṃ pañcalikaṃ karomi  
mā me vadi puttake dubbalāya*

O elephant king, a lone wanderer of the forests, grazing in the valleys of rocky and sandy hills, I salute you, paying my homage to you with clasped wings. I pray that my young ones will be spared their lives by not treading upon them.

On hearing the female skylark's humble request, the rogue elephant replied:

*Vadissami te laṭukike puttakāni  
kiṃ me tuvaṃ kahasi dubbalāsi  
satam saḥassanipi tadisīnam  
vāmena pādena papothayeyyaṃ*

Hey, you female skylark .... (Why do you keep your young ones in my way? That's enough of your insolence). I shall tread upon them and crush them to death. How can you revenge on me when you are weak and I am powerful enough to pulverise one lakh of your kind with my left foot."

So saying the rogue elephant crushed the young ones of the female skylark to dust, and caused them to be washed away in the stream of his urine and departed, shouting with the voice of a crane.

Perched on the branch of a tree, the female skylark threatened: 'Hey, you silly brute of an elephant! you have the upper hand this time and go away, crowing gleefully in the tone of a crane. You just wait! within two or three days you will see my move. You are not aware that intellectual might is more powerful than physical force, I will let you know that fact within a few days.

*Na heva sabbattha balena kiccaṃ  
balaṃ hi bālassa vadhāya hoti  
karissāmi te nāgarājā anattaṃ  
yo me vadhī puttake dubbalāya*

O elephant king .... not every thing could be accomplished by means of physical force alone; unwise use of physical strength could be suicidal. You have mercilessly crushed to death my helpless children; I will bring about your destruction within a few days.

After thus making the war-cry, the female skylark managed within two or three days to gain the friendship of a crow by waiting upon it. Being delighted by the skylark's pleasant behaviour, the crow asked her, "Is there any thing I can do for you?" The skylark said, "What I want to ask you as a favour is to cause damage to the pair of eyes of the rogue elephant that used to roam about alone; that is the assistance I need".

The crow gave his word, "I will do it". The skylark then went to a big dark-blue female fly and formed friendship with it in a like manner. When the fly asked her what she wanted, she requested, "When my friend the crow has once damaged the eyes of the lone rogue elephant, it is my wish that you help me by laying your eggs in the sockets of the elephant's damaged eyes." When the dark-blue female fly gave her assurance for co-operation, saying, "Yes, I will", the skylark approached a frog and sought its friendship as before. The frog asked her what it could do to help her and she replied, "When the lone rogue

elephant has gone blind through the assistance of my two friends, the crow and the fly, and is looking for water to quench his thirst, I wish you to croak from the top of the hill; when the elephant climbs up the hill after hearing your voice, you might get down to the bottom of the cliff to make sound from there. This is all the assistance I look for from my frog friends". The frog gave, like wise, his promise to assist the female skylark.

On the following day, the crow pounded the eyes of the elephant with its beak as requested by the skylark; the dark-blue fly laid its eggs in the damaged eyes. Suffering painfully from damaged eyes now infested with maggots and from intense thirst, the lone rogue elephant groped blindly after water.

The frog then started croaking from the top of the hill; hearing the frog croaking, and thinking, "where the frog croaks, there must be water" the elephant climbed up the hill with great hope. The frog went down the cliff and started making noise from the bottom of the hill. Heading towards the cliff from where the sound seemed to come, the elephant went tumbling down the hill and died through the fall.

The skylark was delighted when it came to know the death of its enemy, the rogue elephant and uttered, out of joy, "Oh I have seen the back of my enemy"; so saying, it strutted to and fro on the back of the elephant several times and made off to a place of its liking.

The Tathagata exhorted the two groups of the royal family, saying "O your Royal Highnesses, you should not engage in hostilities with any one; as explained, even an elephant of great strength could be brought to ruin by the combined efforts of small powerless creatures such as the crow, the dark-blue fly, the frog and the skylark", and he continued to teach the following verse of *Abhisam Buddha*:



*Kākañca passa latukikam  
mandḍhūkam nīlamakkhikam  
ete nagam aghātesuṃ  
passa verassa verinaṃ  
tasama hi veraṃ na kayirātha  
appiyenapi kenaci.*

O members of the Sakyan clan! Look at these small creatures, the crow, the skylark, the frog and the dark-blue fly; these four creatures, because they were united, had brought about the complete downfall of a powerful bull elephant. You can see the outcome of hatred accruing to a person who wish to engage in hostilities. Therefore you should not carry on a feud with any one, not even with some one you do not like."

In winding up the discourse, the Tathagata revealed that "the rogue elephant that time was Devadatta of today and the noble leader of the elephant herd of that time was myself".

End of *Latukika Jataka*.

..... ☆ .....

### **Discourse on *Rukkha Dhamma Jataka*.**

Having expounded the three Jatakas, namely, *Phandana*, *Duddhubha* and *Latukika*, the Tathagata proceeded to expound two more Jatakas to bring home the advantages of unity:

"O Your Royal Highnesses .... You all are related to one another by blood; and it would be only right and proper for blood relatives to be closely united and work together in harmony. No enemy can harm you when you stand united. Unity is necessary even for trees that are inanimate, leave alone conscious creatures such as human beings. I will cite you a relevant instance:

Once upon a time, a forest of Sala trees in the Himalayas was struck by a violent storm. But not a single tree suffered the slightest damage, as they stood in a body, securely fastened to one another by plants and bushes. The storm could not touch the trees but brushed against the topmost part of the tree and broke away. In contrast a lone tree complete with big trunks and branches was blown down, root and branch, by a strong wind for want of solidarity and united front in close association and collaboration with other trees, plants and bushes. It is essential, therefore, that you all stand in a body united through co-operation and co-ordination."

Whereupon the members of the royal family requested the Tathagata to expound the appropriate Jataka in more details:

"Royal Highnesses .... It was during the reign of King Brahmadata in Baranasi that a Vessavana deva passed away and Sakka appointed another deva in his place. During this transitional period, the new Vessavana deva issued a fresh order permitting all the devas to accommodate themselves in the places of their own choice amongst trees, plants and thickets.

The Bodhisatta was then a sylvan deity in charge of a Sala forest in the region of the Himalaya. He gave advice to his relatives thus: "My dear men, don't you choose the trees growing in the bare plane as your dwelling places; you will be well advised to dwell on the trees surrounding the one which I have chosen as my abode in the forest".

The wise ones among the deities occupied the trees surrounding the abode of the Bodhisatta as he had advised. The unwise deities agreed amongst themselves "No useful purpose would be served by residing on trees amidst the forest away from human habitations. Only those living in the vicinity of villages and towns could better their prospects, both for gain and fame." So deciding, they chose to occupy trees along the main road in the bare plains.

After sometimes, a violent storm accompanied by torrential rain visited the area and all the trees including trees of great dimensions got their boughs and branches broken away and they fell down by the

roots. When the violent storm reached the Sala forest controlled by the Boddhisatta, they blew wildly all over the forest, but none of the trees fell being knitted closely together.

Those who were rendered homeless went, holding their young ones by hand, to their friends dwelling in the Sala forest of the Himalays and acquainted them with their miserable plight. Their friends in the Sala forest recounted in turn, the story of their woes to the sylvan deva Boddhisatta.

Whereupon, the Boddhisatta made it plain to them, "It is quite natural that the people who decided to dwell in such places against the advice of the wise, have to face such difficulties" and expounded the following discourse in verse:

*Sādhu sambahulā ñāti  
api rukkhā araññajā  
vāto vahati ekattham  
brahmahantampi vanappatim*

"O My relative devas .... when a great number of friends and relatives live close together dependent upon one another, even the trees growing all over the forest, dwell comfortably free from oppression by the enemies. But the tree growing in isolation on the open plain inspite of its huge trunk and many thick branches cannot withstand the tempest which uproots it with all its branches and leaves."

After giving this discourse, the Boddhisatta passed away at the expiry of his life span.

The Tathagata concluded the discourse by exhorting them thus: "O Royal Highnesses .... all the relatives should first strive to achieve unity; having achieved it, live happy, harmonious life, suffusing one another with loving-kindness. The Tathagata finally revealed that "the audience present today were the deities of the Sala forest; and I was the wise sylvan diety who gave them guidance".

End of *Rukkha Dhamma Jataka*.



**Discourse on *Vattaka Jataka* (or *Sammōdamāna Jataka*)**

The Tathagata then made further exhortation .... "O Royal Highnesses, it is not at all proper to quarrel amongst own relatives. There was an instance in the past where even animals could conquer their enemies and live together harmoniously through unity, and they perished due to internal strife". At the request of the kinsmen, the Tathagata then gave an exposition of the *Vattaka Jataka*.

Excellencies .... Long time ago, Boddhisatta was born as a quail and lived in a forest with thousands of companions during the reign of King Brahmadata in Baranasi.

A bird-hunter used to go to the place of the quails and enticed them by imitating their cry. Once the quails came and formed a gathering at a spot he spread out his nest over them. He then walked around the edge of the net to drive the quails to the centre of the net. The quails were then seized and put in a basket and taken away for sale; the hunter earned his living by catching and selling the quails.

One day the Boddhisatta addressed all the quails in the group under his care.

"My dear quails, the bird-hunter has caused serious damage to our kind for several times now. I have now hit upon a plan to avert danger of being caught by the bird-hunter, and this is what each and every one of us should do. Once we are caught under the net thrown over us by the hunter, every one should shoot his head out of the holes in the netting and then simultaneously lifting the net, fly away; You should all perch on a cluster of bushes in a safe place where the net will remain entangled with them. We can make our escape from beneath the net and fly away."

All the quails in his group accepted his advice saying "Very well". On the following day, all the quails lifted up the net simultaneously at the moment they were caught in the net of the hunter, and flew away. They threw the net on a bush and flew away in different directions.

The hunter could free his net from the bush only after dusk and went back home empty handed. The next day also the quails acted in the same manner; the hunter took a long time to retrieve his net and went home empty handed again. It dragged on in this way for some time. The hunter's wife became cross with her husband and asked him, "You come home late and empty handed day after day; it is as if you have some one to be maintained like myself".

"O my woman .... I have no one to maintain except you. The thing is that the quails are still there flying about the places, but they are closely knit as before. As soon as I spread the net over them, they lift it up and carry it away and drop it on the thorny bushes. But, my dear, they cannot remain united for ever; so don't you trouble yourselves with suspicion on me. There will surely come a time when the quails start quarrelling with one another. Then I will catch them all and bring them to you to make you smile" consoled the hunter, who recited the following verse:

*Sammodamānāgacchanti  
jālamādaya pakkhino  
yadā te vivadissanti  
tadā ehinti me vasam*

"My good lady, with harmonious unity and co-operation, the quails carry away the net I have thrown over them, drop it on the thorny bushes and make their escape. There will be a time when they start quarelling amongst themselves; at that time they will have to yield to my wishes".

### **Quails brought to destruction through dissension.**

A few days later a quail accidentally treaded on the head of another quail as it came down into the pasture. The sufferer asked, in a threatening tone, and showing anger, "Who is that that tread on my head?". The other bird replied meekly, "Please pardon me, my dear friend, I have done it through carelessness; please don't be angry with me". But the angry quail could not be pacified. The two began to make scurrilous attack upon each other very often beginning from that day.

When the two quails were found to be in quarrelsome mood, arguing as to who could lift the hunter's net, the Bodhisatta foresaw a trail of consequences:

"Where there are heated arguments, there can be no peace and happiness. As of now, the quails will fail to take part in the lifting and carrying away of the net. The lives of numerous quails are at stake; the hunter will undoubtedly take advantage of the situation. It will not be proper for me to stay at this place any longer".

He therefore departed from this place taking along with him all the quails which are the associates forming his group. Only the group of quails headed by the future Devadatta remained in that forest.

The bird-hunter went into the place a few days later and made the sound in imitation of the quail, and threw his net over the quails headed by Devadatta. (Instead of working unitedly for their freedom), the quails started finding faults among themselves, quarrelling and challenging one another as to their superiority in strength and ability in lifting the net. The bird-hunter lost no time in capturing and taking them to his house as handsome presents for his wife.

The Tathagata, in winding up the discourse said, "Excellencies, strifes amongst relatives are on no account justifiable; it is the causal condition of destruction", and finally revealed that "Devadatta was the leading ignorant quail and I was the wise leader of quails of the other group at that time.

End of *Vattaka Jataka* or *Sammodamāna Jataka* of Ekaka Nipata.



**Discourse on *Attadaṇḍa Sutta*.**

The Tathagata after expounding the five Jatakas, proceeded to teach the *Attadaṇḍa Sutta*<sup>13</sup> of Sutta-nipatta Pali Text, as the final discourse.

The members of the royal families of the two countries, finally reconciled and appeased, and with devotional faith and full of gratitude, agreed amongst themselves; "Had not the Tathagata come and intervened, we would certainly have destroyed one another and made the blood flow in a stream. We have been saved from mutual destruction only because of the Tathagata. Above all, had the Tathagata not chosen to renounce the world, he should have been enjoying the life of a Universal Monarch, ruling over the Four Continents surrounded by two thousand smaller islands. Accompanied by thousands of his sons of great intellectual and physical strength, he would have roamed over all his dominions followed by a large retinue. But our royal kith and kin of noble blood, the Tathagata had renounced all the pleasures and luxuries of a Universal Monarch to become a recluse and he had blossomed forth as a Fully Self-Enlightened Buddha. It would be only right and proper, now that he had become a Buddha, we should let him have bhikkhus of royal blood attending upon him." With this unanimous decision, the royal members of the two countries offered two hundred and fifty princes from each country to the Buddha for ordination.

The Tathagata accepted them and ordained them as *Ehi Bhikkhus* and took them to Mahavana Grove near the city of Kapilavatthu. From the following day onwards, the Tathagata took alternate turns to receive alms-food from Kapilavatthu and Koliya in the company of those five hundred bhikkhus. The people of the two countries offered the Sangha large amount of alms-food.

---

<sup>13</sup> *Attadaṇḍa Sutta*: Readers may refer to Sutta Nipata Pali for details of the discourse.

### **Five Hundred Bhikkhus not feeling happy in the Sāsana.**

Those five hundred bhikkhus had taken up the ascetic life not out of their own volition, but because they were unable to refuse the request of their parents and relatives. Thus within a few days, the five hundred bhikkhus found their life tedious, uninteresting, and boring. News from their homes also did not help to make them happier in the monastery. "We beseech you not to take delight in the life of a bhikkhu; from the time of your departure, our private business have been deteriorating day by day", wrote their wives to them.

### **Tathagata taught *Kuṇḍala Jātaka*; Five Hundred bhikkhus attained *Sotapanna*.**

The Tathagata kept constant watch upon the bhikkhus by personal contact, three times in a day and three times at night, a total of six times a day just as a pheasant looks after her eggs, a fabulous beast Camari regards for its tail, a mother cares for her only son, a one-eyed man regards for his lone good eye. The Tathagata became well aware of the unhappy state of their minds and he considered, "These bhikkhus felt discontented and tedious even in the company of such a person as myself, the Buddha; what kind of discourse would be suitable for them?" He perceived that *Kuṇḍalā Jātaka*, (which mentions frailties and weaknesses in the character of women) would be the best for them. Therefore the Tathagata made the decision, "I shall first take these bhikkhus to the Himalayas; then by relating *Kuṇḍalā Jātaka*, I shall bring home to them the imperfections and defects in the character of women. In this way, I shall remove the unhappiness and discontent which had risen in their hearts and give them the knowledge of Path, *Sotapatti Nana*".

The Tathagata entered the city of Kapilavatthu in the morning for the usual round of alms-food, and in the afternoon he asked the five hundred bhikkhus "Have you ever seen the pleasant forests of the Himalaya regions?" and they replied, "We have never seen them, Lord". The Tathagata asked them again, "Do you like to pay a short visit to the forest of Himalayas?" "Most Glorious Bhagava, we do not possess



any supernatural power, how should we go there then". Whereupon the Tathagata asked, "But if some one who has the power offers to take you there would you like to go along with him?" The bhikkhus answered, "Yes, Lord, we will".

The Tathagata, exercising his supernormal power, took them all through the space towards Himalayas, and in the course of the journey, while still remaining in the sky, they were shown the golden, silver, emerald, vermillion mountains, mountains of glass etc., the five great rivers and the seven great lakes. The Himalayas was of huge dimension, five hundred Yojana high with an area of three thousand Yojanas. The Buddha was revealing to the five hundred bhikkhus by his supernatural power only a small portion of the delightful splendours of the Himalayas. He also showed them four-legged animals such as lions, tigers, elephants as well as enchanting parks and gardens teeming with various kinds of flora and fauna, abounding in numerous species of birds, aquatic and land flowers. They were shown also the sheer cliff on the east side of the Himalayas, the whole surface of which was golden and the cliff on the west completely covered with vermillion.

From the moment they had witnessed the rare spectacle and the strange sceneries of the mighty Himalayas, all those five hundred bhikkhus had virtually cut off their attachment to their former wives. Then the Tathagata, with all the five hundred bhikkhus, descended on the western slope of the Himalayas where there was a massive vermillion slab sixty yojanas in extent, on which was a huge Sala tree (that will last to the end of the present world system) with a height and width of seven yojanas. Under the shade of that tree on a vermillion platform, three yojanas in width, the Buddha took his seat surrounded by the five hundred bhikkhus. With brilliant six-hued rays emitting from his body, the Buddha sat there looking like the morning sun whose rays were being reflected from the surface of the ocean. The Tathagata then addressed the bhikkhus, "Bhikkhus, you may ask me if there is anything in this vast region of the Himalayas you have not seen before."

At that moment, a king of cuckoos, seated on a stick that was carried by a pair of youthful hen cuckoos with their beaks on either end of the

horizontal stick, was seen coming down from a higher altitude. They were accompanied by groups of eight youthful hen cuckoos, each group taking their positions above their heads, below them, on their right and left and on their front and back. Struck with wonder at the sight of the strange spectacle, the five hundred bhikkhus made their request to the Tathagata, "Exalted Tathagata, what kind of birds are they and how are they called?"

"Bhikkhus .... those birds are the descendants of a succession of generations of cuckoos that owe their origin to a species of bird I was born in long ago. Such youthful hen cuckoos had treated me in like manner at the very outset, their number being three thousand five hundred in my days. The number has dwindled in time and there is now just enough to preserve the species".

Then the bhikkhus requested the Tathagata to recount how those three thousand five hundred cuckoos had attended upon him in those forests, Whereupon the Tathagata expounded the *Kuṇḍala Jātaka* of *Asiti Nipata* in three hundred verses to draw lessons from.

#### **Bhikkhus becoming *Sotapannas*.**

At the end of the discourse, all the five hundred bhikkhus, the descendents of the Sakyan clan, attained *Sotapatti Phala*. At the moment of entering the *Sotapatti Magga*, all the bhikkhus became endowed with supernormal psychic powers, such as flying through space etc.

(N.B. An ordinary worldling has to practice the *Kasina* method of Concentration meditation in order to attain the mundane Jhanas with supernormal psychic powers (*abhiññas*)).

Certain Ariya puggalas, after realization of the Path and Fruition, practise the Concentration Meditation and attain the mundane Jhanas with *Abhinna*s; other Ariyas, having attained mundane Jhanas with *Abhinna*s even while they were still worldlings, have no need to practise Concentration Meditation afresh; they can enjoy the privileges of mundane Jhana and *Abhiññas* easily at will.

Still there is another type of Ariyas who were not endowed with mundane Jhanas and *Abhiññās* while still ordinary worldlings and yet, the moment they realize the supara-mundane Path and Fruition, they become endowed with mundane Jhanic and *Abhiñña* powers which they can enjoy at will easily. Such Jhanic attainments are termed '*Magga siddhi Jhāna*' meaning Jhana attained through realization of Magga; and such *Abhiññās* are called '*Magga siddhi Abhiññās*' meaning *Abhinmas* attained through realization of Magga.

Those five hundred bhikkhus, due to former applications and deeds of merit, achieved *Magga siddhi Jhāna* and *Magga siddhi Abhiññās*, without having to specially practise Concentration meditation for them. They can enjoy these privileges freely at will.)



The Tathagata considered that the Path and Fruitional stage of *Sotapatti* should be sufficient for the five hundred bhikkhus for the time being and departed for the Mahavana forest through the space. The bhikkhus who had relied upon the Tathagata on their outward journey, found their way back to the Mahavana forest on their own powers accompanying the returning Tathagata.

#### **Five hundred bhikkhus attaining Arahata-ship.**

#### **The occasion of the Great Assembly (Mahāsamaya)**

Taking his seat on the prepared throne in the Mahavana Forest the Tathagata caused the bhikkhus to be assembled and addressed them:

"Dear bhikkhus .... come on, sit down, I shall teach you the meditation practice that leads you to the three higher stages of the Path, *Magga*, through eradication of defilements". The Tathagata then instructed them on the meditation method for attainment of the three higher *Maggas*.

The bhikkhus thought to themselves:

"The Tathagata, being well aware that we were not happy leading the life of a bhikkhu in the Dispensation, took us to Kunala lake and then having removed our discontent and unhappiness led us to the first stage of *Sotapattiphala*. And now that, in this Mahavana forest, the Tathagata has taught us the meditation method of attaining the three higher *Maggas*, we should not become lax with the thought, "We are *Sotapanna Ariya*' but strive hard like those pioneers who have gone before us attaining the state of perfection through application".

They all paid homage to the Tathagata and left; in the secluded place at the base of trees, each of them spread their own small mats, and sat on them.

The Tathagata perceived: "these bhikkhus, being *Sotapannas*, know the technique of attaining the Path and Fruition and as such, they will not have any difficulty to achieve the higher stage of the Path and Fruition. Each and every one of bhikkhus who have now gone to practice the Vipassana meditation will return in the evening to acquaint me with the virtues of Arahatsip he has gained. All the devas and Brahmas from the ten thousand universe will also gather together in this Universe at the same time. Then this will be an occsion of a Great Assembly, *Maha Samaya*. It would be better for me to wait for such an assembly from a secluded place".

Having considered in this way, the Tathagata went to a secluded spot and sat on the reserved place abiding in *Phala Samapatti*.

### **Five Hundred bhikkhus attained Arahatsip.**

Of the five hundred bhikkhus, the one who left first after receiving instructions on meditation attained Arahatsip complete with four *Paṭisambhidā Nāna* before the rest. The bhikkhu who left second after receiving instructions attained Arahatsip with *Paṭisambhidā Nāna* like the first one. He was next followed by the third bhikkhu in a like manner. Thus all the five hundred bhikkhus had their knowledge of the Four Noble Truths blossoming out as *Arahattaphala* one after another

like *Paduma* lilies blooming forth into beautiful flowers in order of maturity.

The first bhikkhu who attained Arahatship, rose from his seat picking up the small mat on which he had been sitting with a view to go to the Tathagata to acquaint him with his attainment. The second and the third bhikkhu and all the rest of them followed suit and headed towards the refectory. Then they all came to where the Tathagata was waiting for them in a long queue as if they had lined themselves according to seniority in monkhood.

The bhikkhu who arrived first sat on the small mat at a suitable place and prepared to address the Tathagata with the virtues of the *Arahataphala* he had attained. But first, he turned round to see if there was any one coming behind him with the same idea, and saw the second bhikkhu, the third bhikkhu, all the five hundred bhikkhus lined up in a row after him.

When all the bhikkhus had taken their seats at suitable places, each one looked at the other with a searching eye to form an idea of one another's intention and discovered, that "each one of them felt shy to address the Tathagata about his attainment".



### Two qualities of Arahats.

(1) Noble Arahats always have the welfare of all beings at heart and their sincere wish that "men, devas and Brahmas acquire the penetrative Insight-wisdom which they attained".

(2) They have no desire to reveal their attainment of Arahatship for conspicuousness unlike the person who has discovered a pot of gold.



### Expounding of *Mahā Samaya Sutta*

The Great Assembly of the five hundred bhikkhus took place in the cool of the evening on the Full moon day of *Jetthamasa*. No sooner had the five hundred Arahats taken their seats than the moon came rising from the top of mount Yugandhara in the eastern hemisphere, free from five kinds of obstructions, namely, dew, mist, cloud, eclipse and smoke. The moon, in its fullness, assumed the form of a framed disc of a silver mirror or the frame of a silver wheel turning round and round on its edge, hanging high above the eastern horizon, shining with all its brightness as if to reveal the world that was made delightful and pleasurable by the appearance of the Enlightened Buddha. At that auspicious moment, the Tathagata was still in residence in the forest of Mahavana near Kapilavatthu of Sakka country, in the company of five hundred Arahats.

#### The gathering of Devas and Brahmas.

The devas residing in the environs of Mahavana, in great excitement, hailed one another, "O friends, Come, let us go; to pay homage to the Buddha is meritorious; to hear the Dhamma is beneficial; to pay respects to the Sangha is to acquire great merit; Come, friends, let us go". Thus clamouring, they congregate in the presence of the Buddha, making obeisance to him as well as to the five hundred bhikkhus who had just attained to Arahatship.

Their rousing clamour, spread far and wide, reaching by stages from a haling distance, to half a *gavuta*, to a *gavuta*, to half a *yojana*, and to a *yojana* and thus extending from the center of this universe to the surrounding ten thousand universes. All the devas and Brahmas, inhabiting these ten thousand universes, therefore congregated in this universe, excepting the few Brahmas, the *Asaññasa* (unconscious) *Brahmas*, *Arūpa* (Formless) Brahmas and those Brahmas who happened to be absorbed in their Jhana attainments (*Samapatti*).

At that time, the universe was entirely packed with devas from celestial regions, reaching up to the Brahma realms (like a needlecase packed tight with needles without any space left in between them.) who

had come to attend the Great Assembly. The distance between the plane of Brahmas and the human world may be reckoned by dropping a boulder (of the size of seven tiers crowning the graduated mansion known as 'Lohapa' of Sri Lanka) from the Brahma land. It took four months for that boulder to reach the human plane. The space between the two planes was so tightly packed with the devas and Brahmas there was no vacuum whatsoever even for the sweet fragrance of flowers to float upwards or a mustard seed to find its way downwards.

When a Universal Monarch sat in congregation with all the monarchs from the vassal states, privileged and powerful rulers who arrived earlier could find their seats which were in the vicinity of the Universal Monarch (not too uncomfortable). But those who arrived later could occupy only back seats which were packed tight and provided little comfort. In a like manner, the space around the Tathagata who was like a Universal Monarch, was comparatively not so tight. All the powerful Brahmas, such as *Mahesakkha Brahmas*, could find their seats close by the Tathagata. But even there, those privileged powerful Brahmas had to make themselves comfortable, occupying a tiny space the size of a yak tails end, in batches of ten, twenty, to sixty, by making their bodies subtler and subtler.

#### Late arrival of four *Suddhāvāsa* Brahmas.

When the Tathagata and the five hundred Arahats together with Devas and Brahmas from ten thousand universes, had assembled (as stated above), four *Suddhāvāsa* (Arahat) Brahmas rose from absorption in Jhana at the expiry of the pre-determined duration. When they looked round the Brahma realms, they found the whole region lifeless (like a deserted mess room after lunch time). On investigating 'where the Brahmas had gone' they noticed that the Great Assembly was in progress.

The four Arahat Brahmas discussed among themselves: "This is a great assembly and we are left behind, and there will be no seats for late comers. Let us not go empty handed; let each of us prepare a verse for presentation to the Assembly. These gift verses will serve as an

intimation of our arrival and as a gesture of our homage to the Tathagata". Having agreed thus, each Brahma composed a stanza before they left the plane of Brahmās and then, one Brahma Arahāt descended on the edge of the eastern hemisphere of the universe; another descended on the edge of the southern hemisphere of the universe; another one descended on the edge of the western hemisphere of the universe and the last one on the edge of the northern hemisphere of the universe.

(1) The Brahma Arahāt who had descended on the edge of the eastern hemisphere entered into Jhāna through meditation device of dark blue object (*nila kasina*); and to signify his presence, emitted brilliant dark blue rays from his body that enveloped all the devas and Brahmās from the ten thousand universes as though they were covered by an emerald blanket. He then traversed along the approach passage, *Buddha vithi*, (free from any hindrance and reserved for easy access to the Tathagata) and stood in front of the Tathagata, paying homage by presenting the verse he had composed:

*Mahasamayo pavamasamin  
devakāyā samāgatā  
āgatamhā imaṃ Dhammasamyam  
dakkhitāye apārājitasamgham*

"Most Exalted, Glorious Buddha .... Today, a Great Assembly of devas and Brahmās from the ten thousand universes is being convened in the forest of Mahavana to pay homage to the Arahats who have conquered the Three Maras with pure devotional faith. Like all these devas and Brahmās, we have also arrived with great delight at this congregation to pay our respect to the invincible victors, the Arahats, with pure devotional faith.

Having presented this stanza, he returned (for want of space in the vicinity of the Buddha's throne) to the edge of the eastern hemisphere of the universe and remained standing there.

(2) The Brahma who had descended on the edge of the southern hemisphere of the universe entered into Jhāna based on meditation



device of golden yellow object (*pita kasina*); and to signify his presence, emitted brilliant golden yellow rays from his body that enveloped all the devas and Brahmas from the ten thousand universes as though they were covered under a cloak of gold. Then after the manner of the first Brahma, approached the Tathagata and presented his verse:

*Tatra bhikkhuvo samādahamsu  
cittamattano ujukamakamsu  
sārathīva nettāni gahetvā  
Indriyāni rakkhanti panditā*

"Most Exalted, Glorious Buddha .... at this congregation of the devas and Brahmas, the five hundred Arahats have kept their minds at peace and perfectly tranquilised through developing the highest state of supramundane concentration of attainment, *appana samadhi*. They have kept their minds perfectly upright, free from mental deviations which may be likened to three deviations from straightness exemplified by zigzag track of urine of an ox; the combshape crescent of the moon and the curvature of a harrow's handle. In the same way a skilful charioteer of a chariot harnessed to well-tamed Sindara horses, held the reins gently without pulling them roughly, to get an easy, comfortable ride, these five hundred Arahats wise with Path Knowledge, *Magga Nana*, have guarded the sense doors, the eye, ear, nose, tongue, body and mind against the inroads of defilements by means of the guardian Mindfulness. Most Exalted, Glorious Buddha .... we have come to this forest of Mahavana with the object of paying homage to these five hundred Arahats.

Then he went back to his place at the edge of the southern hemisphere of the universe like his predecessor and remained standing there.

(3) Then the Brahma who had descended on the edge of the western hemisphere of the universe entered into Jhana based on meditation device of red object (*lohita kasina*); and to signify his presence at the

Great Assembly emitted shining red colour from his body that enveloped all the devas and Brahmās from the ten thousand universes as though they have been wrapped up in a cloak of red colour. Then after the manner of his predecessors, approached the Tathagata and presented his verse:

*Chetvā khīlam chetvā paligham  
Īnda khīlam ūhajjha maneja  
te caranti suddhā vimalā  
cakkhumatā sudantā susunāgā*

Most Exalted and Glorious Buddha, the youthful Arahats who being well instructed, have been subdued and tamed to restrain their six Faculties by the Tathagata who is gifted with five kinds of eye: *Buddha cakkhu*, the eye of a Buddha who sees the heart of men; *Dhamma cakkhu*, the eye of Truth which means attainment of the Path knowledge; *Samanta cakkhu*, the eye of all round knowledge, Omniscience; *Mansa cakkhu*, the physical eye which is exceptionally powerful and sensitive; *Dibba cakkhu*, the deva-eye which is all pervading, seeing all that proceeds in the hidden worlds: these youthful Arahats have done away with the thorns of passion, malice and delusion (*lobha, dosa, moha*) by the sword of the fourfold *Magga Nana*; they have struck off and destroyed the cross-bars and bolts (on the door of the chamber of existence) namely, *lobha, dosa* and *moha*, which hinder escape from the Samsara; by the same weapon of *Magga Ñāna*; they have up-rooted the pillars, namely, *lobha, dosa and moha*, stoutly standing at the gate of the city of 'Sakkāya', (personality-belief) by means of the fourfold *Magga*. Being devoid of craving, free from taints and desires, they freely roam about in all the four directions without any hindrance of defilements. We have come to pay homage to these youthful Arahats.

Then he went back to the edge of the western hemisphere of the universe and like his predecessors remained standing there.

(4) Then the Brahma who had descended on the edge of the northern hemisphere of the universe entered into jhana based on meditation device of white object (*odata kasina*); and to signify his presence at the Great Assembly emitted rays of white color from his body enveloping all the devas and Brahamas from the ten thousand worlds as though they have been wrapped up in robes made of Jasmine flowers. Then like the previous Brahmās, he approached the Tathagata and recited the verse he had composed:

*Ye keci Buddhamaṃ saramaṃ gatāse  
na te gamissanti apāyabhumiṃ  
pahāya mānasamaṃ dehamaṃ  
devakāyamaṃ paripūressanti.*

Most exalted, Glorious Buddha. Any person who has taken refuge in the Buddha with confidence will not be reborn in the four planes of misery viz; plane of suffering, of animal, of *peta*, of *asura*.

After presenting the verse, he went back to the edge of the northern hemisphere of the universe like his predecessors.

The Tathagata observed that the Great Assembly of devas and Brahmās was taking place in the vast space which extended to the edges of the universe in width and to the plane of *Akanittha Brahma* in height. The Tathagata considered, "this is indeed a huge congregation of devas and Brahmās; the five hundred bhikkhus may not be aware of this fact. I will make it known to them presently". He therefore addressed them:

"Bhikkhus, All the devas and Brahmās from ten thousand universes have congregated here now to pay homage to the Omniscient Buddha whose coming (appearance), *sugato*, is just as excellent as those of the Supreme Buddhas of the past, and to the bhikkhus as well. Bhikkhus, just like this great assembly, similar congregations of devas and Brahmās (of the same magnitude, no more no less) had taken place during the time of Buddhas of the past also.

Bhikkhus, just like this great assembly, similar congregations of devas and Brahmas (of the same magnitude, no more, no less) will also take place during the time of the Supreme Buddhas in the future.



**Devas and Brahmas as well as the Tathagata  
formed ideas of their own.**

The devas and Brahmas at the Assembly were of the opinion that, in consideration of the huge number of celestial beings present the Tathagata might mention only the names of powerful devas and Brahmas and those of minor importance might not be brought out. The Tathagata, on considering what the devas and Brahmas might be thinking about, perceived what was going on in their minds, as though he had held their hearts with his hands thrust through their mouths, or just as the case of a thief being caught red-handed with the exhibit, and accordingly decided:

"I shall reveal the names and clans of all the devas and Brahmas from ten thousand world systems, who are present at this Great Assembly irrespective of whether they are of great or small power".

Buddhas are very great and glorious personalities. There is nothing that is beyond their ken. All the six sense-objects that make contact with the sense-organs of men and celestial beings to produce eye-consciousness, ear, nose, tongue, body and mind-consciousness are within the scope of their perception, with no obstruction whatsoever. The Tathagata, therefore, had the power of differentiating between those who were fully matured and developed to be released from the Samsara and those who were not yet ready to gain emancipation. The Tathagata first (mentally) put aside all those beings who were not ready and gave his concentrated attention to those who would be benefitted by his teaching.

Again, amongst those who would gain release from Samsara, the Tathagata divided them (mentally) into six groups according to their

inclinations: viz: devas and Brahmas with a propensity for lust, craving (*rāga citta*); devas and Brahmas with a propensity for aversion (*dosa citta*); devas and Brahmas with a propensity for delusion (*moha citta*); devas and Brahmas with a propensity for thought-conception (*vitakka*); devas and Brahmas with a propensity for faith (*saddhā*); and devas and Brahmas with a propensity for wisdom (*pañña*).

Then, of these six groups, the Tathagata decided that devas and Brāhmas with an inclination towards lust, craving should be taught *Sammā paribbājaniya sutta*; those with tendency towards aversion, *kalahavivāda sutta*; those with inclination towards delusion, *Mahābyuha sutta*; those with inclination towards thought-conception, *Culabyuhā sutta*; those with inclination towards faith, *Tuvattakapatipadā sutta* and those with wisdom tendency should be taught *Purābheda sutta*.

The Tathagata next determined which mode of teaching would be suitable for the assembled devas and Brahmas out of the four modes, namely,

- (1) teaching according to Buddha's free will, *attajjhāsaya sutta nikkhepa*.
- (2) teaching according to the wish of the audience *Parajjhāsaya sutta nikkhepa*.
- (3) teaching according to occasion or prevailing circumstance, *Atthuppattika sutta nikkhepa*.
- (4) teaching in the form of an answer to a particular question, *Pucchāvasika sutta nikkhepa*.

And he perceived that devas and Brahmas would gain emancipation through realization of the Four Noble Truths on hearing a discourse taught by way of answering the question asked in harmony with their inclination. The Tathagata then tried to see if any of the five hundred Arahats was capable of raising such a question that would be in accord with the inclinations of the devas and Brahmas, and perceived that there was none among them. He also found out that the eighty senior

Disciples and the two Chief Disciples were not capable of raising such a question.

He perceived that a Pacceka Buddha was equally incapable of raising such a question. The Tathagata then considered whether Sakka or Suyama Deva could fulfill his need, but they were also found to be incapable of raising such a question.

Finally realising that only a Fully Enlightened Buddha like him would be able to raise a question in accord with the inclination of devas and Brahmas, the Tathagata looked into the innumerable world systems with his infinite power of vision to see if there was another Enlightened Buddha in any of the universes, and he discovered that there was none of his equal in any of the universes.

((N.B. There is no wonder that he could find none to equal him now (there being none). Indeed there was none of his equal, amongst the humans and devas, even at the time of his last birth. As baby Prince Siddhattha, he uttered then the bold words, 'Aggohamasmi lokassa'. I am supreme in the whole world'. Needless to say that there was no one to equal him now that he had become a Fully Enlightened Buddha.))

### **Creation of an image with true likeness of the Buddha.**

Preceiving there was not another Buddha like himself, the Tathagata considered that 'These devas and Brahmas would not get a penetrative insight into the Dhamma if I were to ask a question and then provide the answer myself. Only if another Buddha raised the question and I gave the answer to it, would it be a wonderful feat and the devas and Brahmas would get a penetrative insight of the teaching. I would have to create an image with my true likeness'. To that end, the Tathagata entered into the Fourth *Rupāvacara (kiriya) Jhāna* which formed the foundation for development of supernatural power, *Abhiñña*. Then arising from the Jhana, the Tathagata made the resolution, through exercise of '*Mahākiriya Nānasampyutta Adhiṭṭhan javana*' thought-process, that a Buddha of complete likeness to him, in all respects such as handling the bowl and robe, looking straight forward and glancing side ways, bending and stretching the limbs, should come into being.

Thus the Tathagata created another Buddha, an exact replica of himself, as though it had emerged from the surface of the Full moon which was then just rising from the top of Mt. Yugandhara in the eastern hemisphere.

### Varying Views held by Devas and Brahmas.

At the sight of the created Buddha, the devas and Brahmas expressed their views saying, "Friends, another moon has appeared besides the existing one". When the created Buddha was seen emerging from the surface of the moon and coming closer to them, they changed their views and said, 'Friends, that is not the moon but the appearance of the sun'. As the image came nearer, they said, 'Friends, that is not the sun but the mansion of a deva'. When it was coming closer and closer, they said, 'Friends, that is not a mansion but a deva' and again they said, 'Friends, that is not a deva but a great Brahma', and finally as it came quite close to them, they concluded, 'Friends, that is not a great Brahma, but in fact, it is another Buddha coming to us".

Of the celestial beings, ordinary (*puttḥujana*) devas and Brahmas thought to themselves: "When the universe was packed to its capacity by devas and Brahmas congregating to pay homage to a single Buddha, the number of devas and Brahmas for two Buddhas would be beyond imagination". But the Ariya devas and Brahmas concluded that there could not be two Buddhas in one and the same universe at the same time; therefore the other Buddha must be a creation in his own likeness by the Tathagata".

In the meanwhile, the created Buddha came closer to the Tathagata as the devas and Brahmas were looking on, and sat face to face with the Tathagata, on a seat kept in reserve on equal level, without paying homage to the Tathagata.

There were thirty two characteristics of a great person on the body of the Buddha, and the created (*nimmita*) Buddha also bore the same characteristics. Six-hued rays emanated scintillating from the body of the Buddha; and the same kind of six-hued rays also emanated scintillating from the body of the Nimmita Buddha. The rays of the

Buddha got reflected from the body of the Nimmita Buddha; just as the rays of the Nimmita Buddha were reflected from the body of the Buddha. The flashes of the rays from the body of the Buddha and those of the Nimmita Buddha shot up to the *Akkanittha Brahma* plane and retracing their paths, rested on the heads of the devas and brahmas before they scattered towards the edge of the universe. The whole universe assumed the form of a scaffolding, made of bent rafters of gold, enclosing a stupa, looking graceful and glittering.

All the devas and Brahmas from the ten thousand universes, grouped together in this single universe, lay enveloped in the chamber formed of the meshing rays emanating from the two bodies of the Buddha and the Nimmita Buddha.

The Nimmita Buddha in his sitting posture put forward a question, after a formal address in verse in praise of the Buddha for his conquest over defilements, *kilesa*, on the throne of Enlightenment under the Bodhi Tree.

Before proceeding to deal with the question presented by the Nimmita Buddha, (i.e. before teaching the *Sammaparibbājaniya Sutta*), the Buddha, in order to make the minds of devas and Brahmas malleable, pliable, firm and imperturbable, decided to greet them, as it were, by announcing their names, families and clans etc. without any distinction as regards to rank or status. Therefore, the Buddha proceeded to give the discourse on '*Mahāsamaya sutta*', which began with words, '*acikkhissamai bhikkhave devakāyanam namāmi*' etc., which means 'Bhikkhus, I shall disclose the identity of the audience by announcing their names, the names of their families, clans etc.'

(*Mahāsamaya Sutta* has been dealt with in great details by various eminent scholars giving the Pali Text and the translation (including word by word translation, *nissaya*, based on the Mahavagga Pali Text. Special mention must be made of the treatise entitled 'Exposition of *Mahāsamaya sutta* with Pali Text and word-meanings' by the Venerable Bhadanta Nandiya, Presiding Thera of Mahavisutarama Monastery of Pakokku. There is a section, at the tail end of the treatise, on six inclinations dealt with by the Buddha in the six discourses such



as *Sammaparibbajaniya* following the *Mahasamaya Sutta*; their Pali text and word for word translation are also provided therein."))

### Large number of Devas and Brahmas achieved emancipation.

At the conclusion of the discourse on *Mahasamaya Sutta*, one hundred thousand crores of devas and Brahmas attained Arahathship; and those who attained *Sotapanna* Ariyaship were beyond calculation (according to Mahavagga Commentary).

### Venerable Sayadaw U Budi's note of clarification.

When we look at *Mahāsamaya Sutta* as a whole, we find that the discourse was given with emphasis placed on the nomenclature of the devas and Brahmas, mentioning their family and clan names; and the question may arise:

In the absence of exposition of Ultimate Truth how should devas and Brahmas realise the Four Noble Truths and achieve emancipation (attain the state of Sotapannas etc.) by hearing only their family and clan names?

Here is the answer: (1) The Tathagata was aware that by hearing the discourse on *Mahasamaya Sutta* the mind of devas and Brahmas had become imperturbable, malleable, free of hindrances, exulted and pellucid, and therefore at that moment expounded the Four Noble Truths which he himself had discovered. Having thus heard the discourse on the Four Noble Truths, devas and Brahmas became Ariyas. (2) In other words, by hearing the *Mahāsamaya Sutta*, there arose in the mind continuum of the devas and Brahmas, continuous mental states one after another, the preceding one serving as the cause for the arising of the following, which developed joyful satisfaction, *pīti*; tranquility, *passadhi*; happiness, *sukha*; concentration, *samādhi*; knowledge according to reality or absolute knowledge, *yathābhuta Ñāna*; getting thoroughly tired of worldly life, *nibbida Ñāna*; fading away of lust or passion, *virāga Ñāna*; knowledge of release, *vimuccana Ñāna* or knowledge of the Path, *Magga Ñāna*; Knowledge of emancipation, *vimutti Ñāna* or Knowledge of Fruition, *Phala Ñāna*;

insight arising from knowledge of the emancipation, *vimutti nanadassana* or *Paccavekkhana Nana*. It was only because of development of series of these mental states that devas and Brahmas became Ariyas.

In providing these clarifications, the Venerable Sayadaw U Buddh quoted the authority of pertinent Commentaries.

**Mahāsamaya Sutta was held in high esteem by  
Devas and Brahmas.**

*Mahāsamaya Sutta* has been held in high esteem by celestial beings. Therefore a wise person who wishes welfare and prosperity in both mundane and supra mundane matters should recite this sutta on auspicious occasions such as construction and occupation of houses, monasteries and villages.

((When we think of why *Mahāsamaya Sutta* was held in high esteem by devas and Brahmas, we find that) The Tathagata was naturally the chief personality at the Great Assembly which comprised of a variety of beings from the lowly earth deities to the most powerful *Harita Brahmas*. *Mahāsamaya Sutta* was, in fact, the opening address by the Buddha in his capacity as the Chairman of the Great Assembly.

The Great Assembly was attended by three categories of celestial beings: those of the highest rank and power, those of the middle status and those from the lowest strata. To an audience of different social status, it would be a tactful measure for the Chairman to evince interest in the members of the lowest rank by announcing first their presence to the congregation, followed by mentioning those of the medium status and finally the most powerful devas. Any attempt to introduce the devas of rank and power at the outset by announcing their family and clan names might cause displeasure and dissatisfaction among those of the lower rank.

As it happened, the Tathagata had made it a point to mention the members of the lowest rank of devas, such as the earth deities at the beginning of the address of welcome, followed by giving recognition of

the presence of the devas of medium status, and closing his address by giving attention to those of the highest rank. The Tathagata thus gave delight to all classes of the audience, the lowest rank feeling happy that they were welcome first and the devas of position and influence satisfied that they were given prominence by being mentioned at the crucial closing of the proceedings. This can be regarded as how the Tathagata had set a fine example for the guidance of those who are responsible for delivering address of welcome to a great gathering.

In view of the facts stated above, all the devas have since been looking forward to hearing the *Mahāsamaya Sutta*, as they wander about in the four directions of the universe.

The following is an illustration of how *Mahāsamaya Sutta* is held in high esteem by the devas.

There was a cave known as 'Nagalena' in the precincts of 'Kotipabbata' monastery. A celestial damsel was dwelling on an ironwood tree standing at the gate of the said cave. One day a young bhikkhu dwelling in the cave was reciting the *Mahāsamaya Sutta* and the female deva listened ardently to the recitation of the Sutta. When the bhikkhu's recitation came to a close, the celestial damsel uttered 'Sādhu, Sādhu' at the top of her voice and a dialogue ensued between the youthful bhikkhu and the female deva:

(Q) Who is that who is saying 'Sādhu' ?

(A) Venerable Sir, it is me, a female diety.

(Q) Why have you said, Sādhu' ?

(A) It is because, I had had the good fortune to hear *Mahāsamaya Sutta* for the first time when the Buddha propounded it in the forest of Mahavana and for the second time heard it today. I understand that you have learnt the Sutta well exactly as taught by the Buddha not making the slightest variation from the original even for a single letter. (I said *Sadhu* on that score).

(Q) Had you heard the recitation of Buddha by yourself?

(A) Yes, I had, Reverend Sir.

(Q) It is said that there was a great assembly of devas and Brahmās at the time of recitation by the Buddha of the Sutta. From which place did you hear the recitation?

(A) Venerable Sir, I was then a resident of the forest of Mahavana near Kapilavatthu, but I was unable to acquire a place in the whole of Jabudipa because the powerful devas and Brahmās crowded in. I was compelled to go across to Sri Lanka, and as I was attempting to listen to the discourse standing at the port of Jambukola, powerful devas came crowding in again; I was again pushed further and further backwards until I got to a small village of Rohana near Mahagama where standing in the ocean to the depth of my neck, I was finally able to hear the recitation.

(Q) O Celestial maiden, how could you see the Buddha at Mahavana forest which was at such a great distance from where you happened to be at the time?

(A) Venerable Sir, I did see the Buddha really; it appeared as if the Buddha was looking at me fixedly from the forest of Mahavana all throughout the time of expounding the discourse so much so, I felt afraid and abashed and I felt like hiding myself between the foamy waves.

(Q) It is said that one hundred thousand crores of devas and Brahmās attained Arahatship on that day (when *Mahasamaya Sutta* was delivered). Had you attained Arahatship too?

(A) No. Venerable Sir, I had not.

(Q) Then I think you had attained Fruitional stage of *Anagami!*

(A) No. Sir, I had not.

(Q) Then I think you had attained the Fruitional stage of *Sakadami!*

(A) No. Sir, I had not.

(Q) O Celestial maiden, It is said that (hearing the *Mahāsamaya Sutta*) countless number of devas and Brahmās attained the three lower paths; I am sure you must have at least become a *Spta anna*.

(A) (As one who had indeed attained the Fruitional stage of *Sotapanna*) the celestial maiden felt shy and said, 'Venerable Sir, you should not have asked me such a question', (thus side-tracking the issue.)

The young bhikkhu then asked the celestial maiden, 'Can you manifest yourself to me?' She replied, 'Venerable Sir, 'not the whole body but only the top of a finger' and so saying, she thrust one of her fingers through a key hole, exposing just the tip of it. The whole cave was then brightly illumined as though thousands of moons and suns had thrown beams of light into it. (The celestial maiden did not manifest her whole person so as to save the young bhikkhu from the danger of temptation, which would ruin his life as a recluse.)

Then the celestial maiden departed after giving her respects and urging the young bhikkhu not to be remiss in his effort to practise precepts prescribed for bhikkhus.

This is how *Mahasamaya Sutta* is being held in high esteem by the devas and Brahmas.

### Preaching the discourses in harmony with the inclinations of the Audience.

After delivering the *Mahāsamaya Sutta*, the Tathagata proceeded to give discourses to the same Assembly, on the following suttas in accordance with the dispositions of different groups of devas and Brahmas.

(1) *Samma paribbājaniya Sutta* was taught to the devas and Brahmas who had propensity towards lust, *raga* (by way of a dialogue between a Nimmitta Buddha and the Buddha himself). One hundred thousand devas and Brahmas attained Arahantship at the conclusion of the discourse and countless devas and Brahmas attained the three Lower Paths at the same time.

(2) *Kalahavivāda Sutta* was taught to the devas and Brahmas with inclination towards aversion, *dosa*; devas and Brahmas achieved emancipation in a like manner.

(3) *Mahabyūha Sutta* was taught to those who had inclination towards delusion, *moha* and devas and Brahmas gained emancipation like wise.

(4) *Cullabyūha Sutta* was taught to those who were inclined to thought-conception, *vitakka*, with the same results.

(5) *Tuvattakapaṭipada Sutta* was delivered to the audience with a tendency of Faith, confidence, *saddha* (in the Three Gems) with same results.

(6) *Purābheda Sutta* was taught to those who were inclined towards wisdom, *panna* in the same manner and with similar results.

((For full particulars in respect of these six Suttas, reference may be made to Myanma version of Suttanipata Pali Text and especially, to the treatise entitled 'Exposition of *Mahāsamaya Sutta* with Pali Text and word meanings' by the Venerable Bhadanta Nandiya, Presiding thera of Mahavisutarama Monastery of Pakokku.))

End of Chapter Twenty two.

..... \* .....

## CHAPTER TWENTY THREE

### TATHAGATA RESIDED AT VESALI FOR THE FIFTH LENT

Having accomplished an incumbent duty of a Buddha by teaching *Mahā Samaya Sutta*, *Sammāparibbājaniya Sutta* etc., to the five hundred Arahats of Sakyan descent and establishing seven hundred thousand crores of devas and Brahmas in *Arahattaphala*, and countless number of them in the three lower Paths, as stated above, the Tathagata took up residence at Kutagara monastery with terraced roofing and crowning pinnacle in the country of Vesali to observe the fifth lent.

#### Two forests with the name of Mahavana.

((There were two forests bearing the name of Mahavana: one near Kapilavatthu and the other near Vasali. Of these two, the one (where the Buddha taught the *Mahā Samaya Sutta*) near Kapilavatthu extended from the edge of Kapilavatthu to the Himalayas on one side and to the ocean on the other side. The one near the city of Vesali was a great forest with its marked boundary on all sides.))

#### Royal father King Suddhodana attained Arahathship.

When the Buddha was keeping the fifth lent in the Mahavana forest near Vesali, the royal father King Suddhodana entered Nibbana after attaining Arahathship<sup>1</sup> under the white umbrella in his golden palace.

---

<sup>1</sup>An account of King Suddhodana's attainment of Arahathship under the white umbrella in his golden palace and entering Parinibbana has been dealt with in detail in the treatise entitled 'Tathagata Udana Dipani'. In view of this, it is only briefly mentioned here as treated in the Anguttara Commentary.

### **Permission given for ordination of women at the request of step-mother Mahapajapati Gotami.**

Step-mother Mahapajapati Gotami had approached the Tathagata since the time of Buddha's first visit to Kapilavatthu with a request for admission of women to the Order by formal ordination; she had made the requests then for three times repeatedly and the Tathagata had rejected her request every time.

The reason for such rejection was because the Tathagata had decided to grant admission of women to the Order not easily but only after pains-taking efforts on the part of women to gain permission for ordination. Only then would they realize that becoming a bhikkhuni in the Dispensation was a thing difficult of attainment and would safeguard their bhikkhuni status with constant vigilance. The Tathagata wished them to cherish the hard won admission to the Order obtained after a great struggle.

Thus when the step-mother Mahapajapati Gotami made her first request repeated three times to the Tathagata at the Nigrodha monastery of Kapilavatthu, her request was rejected by the Tathagata for reasons as stated above. Mahapajapati Gotami had to abandon her hope and return to the royal palace for three times in the past.

Now an opportunity had presented itself for her to make another attempt when the Tathagata had taken up residence at Vesali to keep the fifth vasa.

As stated in the previous chapters, those five hundred bhikkhus of royal blood prior to their attainment to Arahatship had messages sent to them by their former spouses, requesting them to return and live a household life again. These ladies made their earnest appeal again sending messages as before to the five hundred bhikkhus who had become Arahats now. But the Arahats sent the reply, 'We are no longer in a position to lead a worldly life'.

The five hundred deserted wives considered that 'it would not be appropriate to seek for new married life' and decided unanimously to go to Mahapajapati Gotami to appeal to her 'to obtain permission from the Tathagata for admission to the Order as bhikkhunis' Accordingly



they went in a group to the step-mother Mahapajapati Gotami and made their appeal to her.

Their request reminded her of her failure to obtain permission for the women to receive ordination when the Tathagata was taking up residence at Nigrodha monastery on a previous occasion and so she caused a hair-dresser to shave their heads, including that of her own, and asked the ladies to wear dyed clothes to assume the form of bhikkhunis while they were still in the royal palace. Then they made arrangements to set out all together for Mahavana forest of Vesali where the Tathagata was then residing.

The distance between Kapilavatthu and Vesali was fifty yojanas; and when Sakayan and Koliya royal families considered arrangements for their journey, they concluded 'It would not be possible for these princesses and royal ladies brought up so regally and gently to make the journey on foot' and they arranged to provide them with five hundred sedans to solve the problem.

The five hundred ladies agreed amongst themselves that such a mode of traveling might be tantamount to an act of disrespect to the Tathagata and they therefore made the journey of fifty one yojanas on foot. Royal families of both countries arranged for regular provision of food at every stop and sufficient number of escorts for their security en route to Vesali.

Having made the difficult journey of fifty yojanas, their delicate feet were swollen with boils that took turns to rise and burst, looking as if they were covered with seeds of clearing-nut, *Strychos potato rum*. All the five hundred fair ladies headed by Mahapajapati Gotami who arrived at Vesali with swollen feet, bodies besmeared with dirt and dust, with tears streaming down their cheeks and in sore distress, stood in a group at the gate of the Kutagara monastery in the forest of Mahavana. (They dared not enter the precincts of the monastery at once).

((Step-mother Maha Pajapati Gotami thought to herself that she had taken on the dress of a bhikkhuni without the permission of the Tathagata; and the news of her action had

already spread through out the land. It would be well if the Tathagata would be pleased to admit her into the Order; but failing that she should have to stand reproached. That was the reason why she stood bewailing at the gate without daring to seek entry)).

When the Venerable Ananda noticed Mahapajapati Gotami in such a plight at the gate, he came to her and inquired: "O dear Step-mother, why do you look so miserable? Have the royal relatives of Sakya and Koliya families met with tragedies and are ruined? Why are you in an unsightly appearance such as this, with swollen feet, and looking shabby, a grief stricken face, standing helplessly and weeping at the gate?"

Whereupon, Step-mother Mahapajapati Gotami replied "O ... Venerable Ananda, we have been standing at the gate with tears for failure to get Tathagata's permission for women to receive formal ordination that they might lead the life of bhikkhunis in the Dispensation of Dhamma-Vinaya." Ananda soothed her by saying a few words of encouragement:

"Step-mother... if that is the case ... I will go and approach the Tathagata for admission of women into the Order by formal ordination, so that they might lead the life of bhikkhunis in the Dispensation of Dhamma-Vinaya; please remain at the gate till I come back", and so saying Venerable Ananda went to the Tathagata and made this request:-

"The Most Exalted Tathagata ... Step-mother Mahapajapati Gotami is standing at the gate with her feet swollen, her body covered with dirt and dust, her heart sore, tears streaming down her cheek, and in a miserable plight, for failure to obtain your permission for women folk to receive formal ordination, so that they might lead the life of bhikkhunis within the Sasana. May I pray solemnly that they be granted your permission for receiving formal ordination!"

The Tathagata said in response: "That is not a proper thing... dear Ananda and I advise you not to be interested in the matter of admitting

women folk into the order as bhikkhunis" With an undaunted will, the Venerable Ananda made similar requests for the second time, for the third time, but received the same words of discouragement from the Tathagata.

### A Renewed Request

The Venerable Ananda thought of a new approach, after failure to obtain permission for admission of women folk to the Dispensation of Dhamma-Vinaya for three times, and accordingly went to the Tathagata and addressed him:

"Most Exalted Tathagata... could woman folk attain Ariyaship ranging from Fruitional Stage of *Sotapatti*, *Sakadāgāmi*, *Anāgāmi* to *Arahatta*, by leading the life of bhikkhunis within the frame-work of Dhamma Vinaya Sasana?"

Whereupon, the Tathagata replied: "Ananda.. women folk could attain Ariyaship ranging from Fruitional Stage of *Sotapatti*, *Sakadāgāmi*, *Anāgāmi* to *Arahatta*, by leading the life of bhikkhunis within the frame-work of Dhamma Vinaya Sasana."

"Most Exalted Tathagata..., if women folk were capable of attaining the four Stages of Ariyaship by way of their being bhikkhunis within the frame-work of Dhamma Vinaya Sasana, may I submit a case that is worthy of the Tathagata's sympathetic consideration in support of my request:-

Most Exalted Tathagata... Mahapajapati Gotami had rendered great service to you besides being your step-mother. She was responsible for feeding, nursing you and for your physical and mental well-being ever since the time of your birth. She used to tidy you up by showering with scented water twice a day. Indeed, she was responsible for feeding you exclusively with the milk that flowed from her breast."

(Mahapajapati Gotami gave birth to prince Nanda a few days after Maha Maya Devi had given birth to Boddhisatta. She entrusted her own child Nanda to the care of wetnurses, and she volunteered to act

as Boddhisatta's wet-nurse and care-taker; hence this additional weight applied to his request!)

"Most Exalted Tathagata ... I humbly pray for favour of granting your permission for the women folk to receive ordination as bhikkhunis within the frame-work of Dhamma Vinaya Sasana."

The Buddha finally acceded to Ananda's entreaties, saying, "Ananda, if Mahapajapati accepts the Eight Special Rules, *Garu-dhamma*, let such acceptance mean her admission to the Order."

The Eight Special Rules are:

(1) A bhikkhuni, even if she enjoys a seniority of a hundred years in the Order, must worship, welcome with raised clasped hands and pay respect to a bhikkhu though he may have been a bhikkhu only for a day. This rule is strictly to be adhered to for life.

(2) A bhikkhuni must not keep her rains-residence at a place that is not close to the one occupied by bhikkhus. This rule is also to be strictly adhered to for life.

(3) Every fortnight a bhikkhuni must do two things: To ask the bhikkhu Sangha the day of Uposatha and to approach the bhikkhu Sangha for instruction and admonition. This rule is also to be strictly adhered to for life.

(4) When the rains-residence period is over, a bhikkhuni must attend the *Pavarana* ceremony at both the assemblies of bhikkhus and bhikkhunis, in each of which she must invite criticism on what has been seen, what has been heard or what has been suspected of her. This rule is also to be strictly adhered to for life.

(5) A bhikkhuni who has committed a *Sanghadisesa* offence must undergo penance for a half-month, *pakkha manatta*, in each assembly of bhikkhus and bhikkhunis. This rule is also to be strictly adhered to for life.

(6) A bhikkhuni must arrange for ordination by both the assemblies of bhikkhus and bhikkhunis for a woman novice only after two year's

probationary training under her in the observance of six training practices. This rule is also to be strictly adhered to for life.

(7) A bhikkhuni should not revile a bhikkhu for any reason whatsoever. This rule is also to be strictly adhered to for life.

(8) Bhikkhunis are prohibited from exhorting or admonishing bhikkhus with effect from today. Bhikkhus should exhort bhikkhunis when and where necessary. This rule is also to be strictly adhered to for life.

These are the Eight Special Rules. If Mahapajapati Gotami accepts the Eight Special Rules let such acceptance mean her admission to the Order."

The Tathagata thus permitted the establishment of Bhikkhuni Sasana after expounding the Eight Special Rules for their guidance.

Ananda learned the Eight Special Rules from the Tathagata and returned to Mahapajapati Gotami at the gate and told her what had transpired at his meeting with the Tathagata:-

"Great step-mother .... if you accept the Eight Special Rules, such acceptance means your admission to the Order. The Eight Special Rules are:

(1) A bhikkhuni, even if she enjoys a seniority of a hundred years in the Order, must worship, welcome with raised clasped hands and pay respect to a bhikkhu though he may have been a bhikkhu only for a day. This rule is strictly to be adhered to for life.

#### Etcetera ( Pelayya )

(8) Bhikkhunis are prohibited from exhorting or admonishing bhikkhus with effect from today. Bhikkhus should exhort bhikkhunis when and where necessary. This rule is also to be strictly adhered to for life.

Great step-mother, you can count yourself as one who has been duly admitted to the Order of bhikkhuni, the moment you adhere strictly to these Eight Special Precepts."

Mahapajapati Gotami responded: "Venerable Ananda .... just as a young maiden who is in the habit of decorating herself with flowers with her hair washed and brushed or a man in like manner, would eagerly receive lilies, Moe-swe or Lai-tu flowers with out-stretched hands, for planting on their heads if and when offered; so also I am prepared to adhere to the Eight Special Rules, *Garū dhamma*, with great delight and due respect till I breathe my last.

Thereupon the Venerable Ananda approached the Tathagata again with profound respect and stood at a suitable place and addressed: "Most Exalted Tathagata... Mahapajapati Gotami has vowed to adhere strictly to the Eight Special Rules as laid down, with due diligence and respect up to the end of her life".

(Her enthusiastic acceptance of the Eight Special Rules constitute automatic admission to the Order; she became a bhikkhuni without formal ordination in a *Sima*. Such procedure of admission into the Order is known as "*Attha garu dhamma patiggahana Upasampadā*".

### Permission Granted for Ordination of Bhikkhuni.

Step-mother Mahapajapati Gotami went to the Tathagata and sat a suitable place with due respect and asked. "Exalted Tathagata... what should I do with those five hundred princesses of royal blood?" The Tathagata gave her certain instructions. She left after hearing the dhamma and making obeisance to the Tathagata. Then the Tathagata told the bhikkhus about his instructions to Mahapajapati and laid down the following rules:

"Bhikkhus, I give permission to bhikkhus to help ordination of female candidates to become bhikkhunis."

Bhikkhus proceeded to help ordination of the five hundred royal princesses with Mahapajapati Gotami as their preceptor (*upajjhaya*). They were known as "*ekataṃ upasampanna*" there being insufficient number of bhikkhunis to participate jointly with bhikkhus in the ordination ceremony.

When the ordination ceremony was over, Mahapajapati Gotami attained Fruitional Stage of Arahantship through hearing *Sankhitta Sutta*

(Anguttara), and those five hundred bhikkhunis attained Ariyaship according to their wishes, ranging from Sotapatti, *Sakatagāmi*, *Anāgāmi* to *Arahatta* through hearing *Nandakovāda Sutta* (Majjhima)

((The ordination of distinguished bhikkhunis, such as, Queen Yasodhara, Princess Janapadakalayani, Queen Khema, Dhammadinna, wife of a rich man, Bhaddakapila will be described separately when we come to deal with the Jewel of Sangha.))

### Victory over the Wandering Ascetic Saccaka

The Tathagata conquered the wandering ascetic Saccaka while taking up residence at Kutagara monastery in the forest of Mahavana near Vesali. An account of this wandering ascetic Saccaka will be reproduced here from *Catukka nipatta*, *Culakalinga Jataka* Commentary and *Mulapaṇṇāsa*, *Culasaccaka Sutta* Commentary.

Long time ago, seven thousand seven hundred and seven descendents of Licchavi royal family of Vesali took turns to rule the country. All those royal descendents were very much inclined to investigate into various ascetic views prevailing at that time. Once a wandering mendicant who professed five hundred views arrived in Vesali. Those royal descendents held him in high esteem and treated him well. A female mendicant who also professed five hundred views arrived in the country of Vesali about the same time.

The descendents of the royal family arranged for a debate to be conducted between the two mendicants. The debate ended in a draw, as one could not defeat the other since they were equally matched. A peculiar idea struck the Licchavis: Should the two be united in marriage, they could expect of them an off-spring of great talent. So they persuaded them to remain in their country without taking the trouble of wandering about. They treated them with respect and arranged for their maintenance.

As years rolled by, the couple produced four daughters and one son. The names of the daughters were, (1) Sacca, (2) Lola, (3) Avadharika, (4) Paticchada and that of the son was Saccaka. (According to *Cula*

*Saccaka Sutta Atthakatha*, the names of daughters are shown as (1) Sacca, (2) Lola, (3) Patacara and (4) Acaravati)

When they came of age, they were given instructions on views held by their parents: five hundred paternal and five hundred maternal views, a total of one thousand. Special parental advice was also given to the four daughters:

"My dear daughters .... if you find any one who could refute your views, you might offer yourself as his wife if he is a lay man; should he, however, happened to be a bhikkhu, you might lead a homeless life under him."

After the death of their parents, the wandering Saccaka, being more intelligent than his four elder sisters, studied more and more unorthodox views in addition to the one thousand that he had inherited from his late parents. Without wandering forth he kept on residing in Vesali by giving instructions to young royal princes. Fearing that his belly, which was full of 'wisdom' might burst at any moment he had it wrapped up with iron plates .

His elder sisters held the view that Jabudipa island was conspicuous by the presence of Jabu-tha-bye tree (the golden Eugenia tree). So they used to carry Thabye flowers and fresh leaves as they moved from town to town in search of rivals in the matter of doctrinal views. They used to plant a few branches of Thabye on a heap of sand or earth at the entrance to a town, announcing "Any one capable of refuting our views can smash it" by way of a challenge, before they entered the town.

As they wandered from place to place, they eventually arrived at Savatthi. Here, again, they planted a branch of Thabye at the gate and made a challenging announcement. "Any one, whether a laity or a bhikkhu, who can refute our ideology, can destroy this heap of earth and this branch of Thabye by his feet". They left their word with the children whom they found loitering round the gate, and went into the town.



### The Venerable Sariputta's Feat of Intellectual Power.

On that day, the Chief Disciple the Venerable Sariputta, went for the usual round of receiving food fairly late in the morning, as he had been sweeping certain places in the monastery, filling pots with drinking water and nursing the sick within the precincts of Jetavana monastery. As he reached near the gate he came upon those branches of Thabye. He therefore asked the nearby children about the strange spectacle. They gave a full account of it to the Mahathera.

Whereupon, the Venerable Sariputta asked them to smash the Thabye branches. The boys replied: "Reverend Sir... we dare not do it... we are afraid ..." The Venerable Sariputta urged them again by saying a few words of encouragement: "Boys ... don't be afraid; should they ask you as to who was behind you, just let them know that I, Sariputta, the Chief Disciple of the Tathagata, had asked you do it, and tell them also that if they want to challenge me in debate, to come to Jetavana monastery." The boys summoned their courage and smashed the Thabye branches as instructed. The Venerable Sariputta went on his round of receiving alms and returned to the monastery.

When the four sisters came out of the town, they asked the boys: "Who has asked you to destroy our Thabye branches?" They told them all about it.

The four women went back into the town, each moving along a different route, announcing "We learn that the Chief Disciple of the Buddha, known as Sariputta, is ready to engage in dispute with us; will those wishing to hear the debate come along..." Many people came out and went along with them to the Jetavana monastery.

Venerable Sariputta felt that presence of women folk in the residential area of bhikkhus was not permissible, and so he went to the central part of the precincts of the monastery to meet them. On arrival, the women folk asked: "Did you ask the boys to smash up our Thabye branch?" "Aye... I did it" was the reply. Whereupon those women challenged the Venerable Sariputta to a debate on ideology. The Venerable Sariputta accepted their challenge and asked them as to who should start questioning. They replied "The onus of questioning rests

with us". To which the Venerable Sariputtara said "Yes, you, being women folk, start questioning."

The four women took positions, one on each of the four sides, and thrust a barrage of questions, thousand in number, which they had learnt from their parents. The Venerable Sariputta gave prompt answer to every question, just like cutting off the stalk of lily with a double-edged sword leaving no problem unsolved. He then invited more questions from the four women, who being subdued, replied "Most reverend Sir... We know this much only".

The Venerable Sariputta said: "Well, wanderers ... I have answered all the one thousand questions that you have asked, and now I will ask you only one question and will you answer it?" Knowing by now some what about the Venerable Sariputta's standing, they dared not reply courageously "Please do, Venerable Sir, we will answer your questions"; they said, meekly, "Reverend Sir... please do, we will answer if we possibly can". Before putting forward his question Sariputta made it plain to them that the question which he was about to ask was not of higher standard but one set for prospective novices who have to learn them after becoming Samareras and asked this question: "What is meant by one Dhamma?" (*Ekam nāma kim*).

The four ascetic women could not make head or tail of the problem. The Venerable Sariputta asked them: "Heretic women... answer the question". and they admitted their inability: "Reverend Sir... we have not the vaguest idea of the answer". The Venerable Sariputtara told them: "Now that I have answered your one thousand questions while you cannot answer a single question of mine: who, then, is the victor and who are the vanquished?" Their reply was: "Reverend Sir... you are the conqueror and we are the conquered". The Venerable Sariputta asked: "What would you do in the circumstances?". They told the Mahathera of what their parents had asked them to do in the event of their defeat (as related in the preceding chapters), and expressed their desire to receive ordination under the patronage of the Mahathera.

The Venerable Sariputta gave them this instruction: "This is not the right place for you women folk to receive ordination and you will be best advised to go to the monasteries of bhikkhunis with our

introduction and ask to be ordained there". Accordingly they went to the monasteries of the bhikkhunis with the introduction of the Mahathera and received ordination. (They received ordination under the patronage of Uppalavan theri, according to Jataka Commentary) They attained Arahathship within a short space of time through mindful, earnest effort in the practice of the Path. (The Tathagata expounded an account of this episode in *Culakalinga Jataka*, vide *Catukka Nipatta*. For further particulars, please refer to five hundred and fifty Jataka).

((N.B. This episode happened only when the Tathagata was taking up residence at Jetavana monastery of Savatthi, some time after the emergence of Bhikkhuni Sasana with the approval of Tathagata in compliance with Mahapajapati Gotami's express request while Tathagata was residing in Mahavvana forest, Vesali. This interesting episode has connections with the story of wandering Saccaka, hence its exposition here.)

### The Story of Wandering Ascetic Saccaka.

As stated above, the four women ascetics had a younger brother called wanderer Saccaka, who was acting as an instructor of the royal princes of Vesali.

It was during the period when Tathagata was in residence at Kutagara monastery in Mahavana forest near Vesali, that wanderer Saccaka, son of sectarian Nigandha was proclaiming himself as one skilled in debating, one who was very learned; and people also took him to be a holy person. He was boasting to the Vesali citizens:

"I have never come across any person claiming himself to have bhikkhu followers, to be a sectarian, a sectarian Leader, a Samana Brahmana or one worthy of Homage, a Perfectly Self-Enlightened Buddha, who could resist without perspiring from their arm-pits when I refute and rebuke them on grounds of views; and even senseless logs or wooden blocks could not remain unshaken when I talk about things in terms of views, leave alone the living creatures!

Wanderer Saccaka was, in fact, going about the city and boasting himself as one who was out to find faults with Samana Gotama. On one

morning, as he was strolling about and taking walking exercise, he noticed the Venerable Assaji on his round of receiving alms at a distance. He thought to himself:

"I am a person, who has been contemplating how to dispute with Samana Gotama's teaching though I cannot do it yet, since I have no means of knowing his views. I must therefore try to get to know his views before I could challenge him in a proper manner. The Venerable Assaji is well versed in Samana Gotama's views and I should make him to declare their doctrine firmly before I could find fault with Gotama and rebuke him."

He approached the Venerable Assaji with that end in view, and entered into conversation with the Mahathera after exchanging friendly greetings: "O Assaji... how does Samana Gotam exhort his disciples? In how many ways does he give them instructions in minute detail?"

Whereupon, the Venerable Assaji explained him in this way:

"O descendent of Aggivessana, wanderer Saccaka .... the Tathagata exhorted his disciples in this manner. He gave detailed instructions in various ways:-

"Bhikkhus .... Corporeality (Rupa) is impermanent, sensation is impermanent, perception is impermanent, volitional activities are impermanent, six-fold consciousness is impermanent. Corporeality is not self, sensation is not self, perception is not self, volitional activities are not self, six-fold consciousness is not self (Atta). All conditioned things are not permanent; all dhammas are without self.

O descendent of Aggivessana, wanderer Saccaka.... The Tathagata had exhorted his disciples in this way. He had given many detailed instructions in various ways."

The above is the Venerable Assaji's reply to heretic Saccaka's query.

((Points of special interest worthy of note: From the foregoing statement, it will be seen that, in his reply to Saccaka's query, the Venerable Assaji mentioned facts of 'Impermanence' and 'Unsubstantiality' or Non-self, but nothing was said about the fact of

'Suffering'. The reason for the omission of the fact of suffering has been explained in the Commentary as follows:-

"Had the Venerable Assaji mentioned the fact of suffering as Corporeality is suffering, sensation is suffering, perception is suffering, volitional activities are suffering, six-fold consciousness is suffering, Saccaka might get a chance for disputation. This is because, figuratively speaking, Path and Fruition are counted as suffering (*sankhāra dukkha*); hence omission of the fact of suffering; other wise, Saccaka would have asked: "O Assaji... what is the object of your receiving ordination?" Then the Venerable Assaji's reply would be "For the sake of Path and Fruition". In such a case, he would be exposed to censure: "O Assaji... your Sasana, after all, does not lead to emancipation, in reality, your so called Sasana simply is a place of oppression and destruction; your so called Sasana is a kind of *Ussada* plane of misery! Therefore, your minds are void of desire for joy; indeed, you all have been wandering round striving anxiously after suffering". It was for this reason that the Venerable Assaji had purposely avoided the employment of the figurative term (*pariyāya*), and adopted the abstract term (*nippriyāya*) that could not have another meaning, hence exclusive presentation of 'Impermanence' (*anicca*) and 'Unsubstantiality' (*anatta*).

Where upon, Saccaka said: "O Assaji....what improper things do I hear?; we have heard what Samana Gotama has been preaching; perhaps we could meet with honourable Gotama some time when there might be some discussion. Perhaps we could then rid him of this evil view."

At that time five hundred Licchavi princes were assembled at the Assembly Hall to transact some business. Saccaka thought to himself; "I was unable to decry the views of Samana Gotama in the past for not knowing anything about it. Now I have learnt about them from his great disciple Assaji: I know them fully well; I had better go to his place and reproach him for his views.

He went first to the Assembly Hall where his five hundred Licchavi princes were holding a meeting. He bid them to come out from the chamber, shouting:

"Come forth, honourable Licchavis. Come forth honourable Licchavis. Today, there will be a discussion between Samana Gotama and myself upon his view; it is going to be a grand show! Assaji, one of the five bhikkhus and a well-known disciple of Samana Gotama, has stood firmly on the view of Impermanence and Unsubstantiality. If Samana Gotama also stood firm on the same view of *anicca* and *anatta*,

(1) Just as a powerful man taking hold of a long fleeced ram by its fleece, might pull, push and pull it about; even so will I pull and push and pull Samana Gotama about with my arguments and refutations of his view.

(2) Just as a powerful workman of a liquor shop, taking a big mat from the liquor shop, might throw it into a deep lake and seizing it by the corner, might pull it, push it, and shake it even so will I pull, push and shake Samana Gotama about with my arguments and refutations of his view;

(3) Just as a powerful drunkard, taking hold of a liquor strainer by its edge, might shake it up, shake it down, and toss it about even so will I shake up, shake down and toss about Sammana Gotama with arguments and refutations of his view;

(4) Just as an elephant, which gets infirm only when it is sixty, might get down into a deep pond and play the game of washing hemp, even so will I play with Samana Gotama as in the game of washing hemp with my arguments and refutation of his view;

(N.B. When hemp stalks are in the process of being transformed into fibres, they are made into bundles and dipped in the water for softening. After three days when they are soft and pliant, workmen come with provisions, such as drinks and eatables, for enjoyment when the work is over. They take hold of bunches of hemp and strike them hard against the planks laid on their right, left and front in turn, while they enjoy food and drink.

The royal elephant, imitating the action of hemp workers, goes deep into the pond and drawing water with its trunk,

blows it on its head, on its back, on either side of its body, and in between its thighs. Hence the term, (*Sana dhovika*) playing the game of washing hems.)

"O Licchavi princes... come forth .... come forth. Today there will be a debate between me and Samana Gotama on his view. Its going to be a grand show!" Thus Saccaka invited his disciples.

Among the Licchavi princes there were (1) those who expressed their conviction that 'Samana Gotama is not capable of refuting the views of Saccaka; it is only Saccaka who will be able to refute the view of Samana Gotama. and (2) those who said: What kind of a man is Saccaka that he would be able to refute the Buddha; It is the Bhagava only who will be able to refute Saccaka".

Then Saccaka made his way towards Kutagara monastery in the company of two hundred Licchavi princes. It was noon then and many bhikkhus were walking to and fro to repulse sloth and torpor after having rich food. (In other words, those bhikkhus were mediators in the day time (*divā padhānika*) who usually took a walk to and fro to expose themselves to the sun at noon and then bathed; they found this practice most helpful in developing concentration in their meditation).

Saccaka approached those bhikkhus and asked: "Friends .. where does Honorable Gotama take residence at the present moment? we would like to see him"

Early at dawn on that day, the Tathagata, after abiding in *Mahā Karuṇā Samapatti* looked into ten thousand universes and perceived through his Omniscience, that tomorrow Saccaka would be coming along with many Licchavi princes to rebuke him concerning his view. He, therefore, took his bath early in the morning and went out for receiving alms accompanied by bhikkhus. On return he did not go into the Scented Chamber but went straight into the Mahavana forest and sat under a shady tree for the convenience of the visiting crowd led by heretic Saccaka, in due course of time.

Those bhikkhus whom Saccaka had contacted were the meditating bhikkhus, who had just returned from the Tathagata. They, therefore readily replied indicating with their clasped palms pointing towards the

Tathagata, saying: "O Saccaka, the Tathagata is sitting under a tree in the Manavana forest to spend the day."

Thereupon Saccaka went into Manavana forest, in the company of a huge mass of people. He approached the Tathagata, and after a cordial exchange of greetings with the Tathagata, sat at a suitable spot. (It should be noted that in addition to five hundred Licchavi princes who were his disciples, the huge crowd following him, now consisted of numerous citizens of Vesali who were out to witness the debate between the two distinguished personalities.)

Those who came along with Saccaka may be divided into five categories: (1) Some people paid homage to the Tathagata and sat at suitable places, (2) Some exchanged greetings with the Tathagata, saying words that would remain ever fresh in the their hearts throughout their lives, and sat at suitable places, (3) Some bowed with palms toward the Tathagata and sat at suitable places, (4) Some announced their names and lineage and sat at suitable places, (5) Some simply sat down in complete silence.

Having sat down at a suitable place Saccaka addressed the Tathagata: "May I, with your approval, submit a question concerning a certain subject?" The Tathagata replied: "Ask, Aggivessana, whatever you like" (This is the sort of invitation to questions, peculiar to Fully-Self-Enlightened Buddhas, and beyond the range of Pacceka Buddhas and Savakas.)

Saccaka started questioning: "O Honourable Gotama .... how do you exhort your disciples? What part of your many teachings is most emphasised for your disciples?" To which Tathagata replied :

"O descendent of Aggivessana, Wanderer Saccaka.... I exhort my disciples in this manner. This part of the many teachings is most emphasised for my disciples.

"Bhikkhus.. Corporeality is impermanent, sensation is impermanent, Perception is impermanent, volitional activities are impermanent, six-fold consciousness is impermanent: Bhikkhus corporeality is not self, sensation is not self, perception is not self, volitional activities are not self, six-fold



consciousness is not self (*Atta*). All conditioned things are impermanent; all conditioned and unconditioned things (*dhamma*) are not self (*atta*)

"O descendent of Aggivessana, Wanderer Saccaka..... this is how I exhort my disciples; this part of the many teachings is most emphasis for my disciples."

Saccaka said: "A simile occurs to me". The Tathagata then told him. "O descendent of Aggivessana, reveal it (boldly and vividly).

"Just as seeds and trees cannot grow without depending and resting on the earth that affords support, or just as a manual worker cannot accomplish his task without depending and resting upon the earth that affords support .... O Honourable Gotama .... even so, this individual person produces merit or demerit based on corporeality (that is *Atta* or self): this individual person produces merit and demerit based on sensation (that is *Atta* or self); this individual person produces merit or demerit based on perception (which is *Atta* or self); this individual person produces, merit or demerit based on volitional activities (which is *Atta* or self); this individual person produces merit or demerit based on six-fold consciousness (which is *Atta* or Self).

Thus Saccaka presented his view on *Atta* (Soul) theory by way of similes: (He had likened the five-fold aggregate to the earth; sentient beings are dependent on the five-fold aggregates like the earth. They produce merit or demerit based on the five-fold aggregate.) "The Honourable Gotama has thus discarded the very evident and manifest *Atta* and declared it to be *Anatta* (non-self)". Thus Saccaka presented his Soul theory firmly supported by seeming similes.

The supporting similes presented by Saccaka are notable, quite valid and firm. With the exception of the Fully Self-Enlightened Buddhas, there is no one capable of refuting his criticism and condemning his Soul theory. In fact, there are two types of people (1) those who are tractable by Fully Self-Enlightened Buddhas only and (2) those who are tractable by Savakas. Those in category (2) can be corrected by the

Buddhas and the disciples, but those in category (1) can be guided by the Buddhas alone. Wanderer Saccaka belonged to the first category and could be instructed only by the Buddha. The Tathagata had, therefore, decided to personally rectify and refute his view:

"The descendent of Aggivessana, Saccaka ..... Do you say that corporeality is myself (atta), that sensation is myself (atta) that perception is my body (atta), that volitional activities are myself (atta), that six-fold consciousness is myself (atta)?"

Saccaka came to realize then that "Samana Gotama has put me in difficulty making me to declare, confirm and admit my soul theory (*atta vada*) in the presence of an audience." Should anything untowards happens, I will alone be condemned for my soul theory" and thinking of citing the people of Vesali as co-adherents of *atta*, he replied:

"O Honourable Gotama - Indeed, I do say: "Coporeality is my *atta*, sensation is my *atta*, perception is my *atta*, volitional activities are my *atta*, six-fold consciousness is my *atta*. and the general mass of citizens of Vesali also say this."

Tathagata, being a hundred thousand times superior to Saccaka in matters of beliefs, would not let him make other people to share the same fate with him; he would make his conquest over Saccaka alone, and said to him:

"Saccaka ..... what has the great mass of people to do with this? I urge you, Saccaka, to explain your own view".

(What Tathagata meant to say was this: Not all of these people are out to refute my view You are the only one who have come to refute my view; they are here because you have invited them to witness the debate. The onus of expressing the view rests with you, and don't let them share the same fate with you.)

Saccaka was thus pressed to repeat his own view:- "O Honourable Gotama ..... Indeed, I do say: "Coporeality is my *atta*, sensation is my *atta*, perception is my *atta*, volitional activities are my *atta*, six-fold consciousness is my *atta*."

After causing Saccaka to explain his own view, Tathagata proceeded to ask:

"Saccaka ... since you have admitted that the five-fold aggregates are *atta*, I will ask you in turn about this; answer me as you wish: Saccaka ... what do you think of the question I am about to ask? Would an anointed king like Pasenadi Kosala, or the crowned king Ajatasattu, ruler of Magadha, son of Queen Vedehi, have the power in their respective realm to order the execution of one deserving to be put to death, to order the confiscation of one whose property deserves to be confiscated and to banish one deserving of banishment?"

In answer to the above question, Saccaka replied:

"O Honourable Gotama, a king like Pasenadi Kosala, or the crowned king Ajatasattu, ruler of Magadha, son of Queen Vedehi, have the power in their respective realm to order the execution of one deserving to be put to death, to order the confiscation of one whose property to be confiscated and to banish one deserving of banishment?"

O Honourable Gotama ... even those Federated State Governments like Vajjis or Mallas would have power in their respective realm to order the execution of one deserving to be put to death, to order the confiscation of one whose property deserves to be confiscated and to banish one deserving of banishment?" What more need we say of an anointed king such as King Pasenadi of Kosala or King Ajatasattu of the Kingdom of Magadha, the son of Queen Vedehi? He would have the power, O Gotama; he deserves to have the power."

(Tathagata had purposely brought Saccaka to bay in order to completely crush his soul theory (*Atta vāda*); Saccaka being unwise had even gone to the extent of "sharpening the weapon meant for his execution" by mentioning the Governments of Vajjis and Mallas in support of his statement).

O Saccaka, How do you like the question I am about to ask? You have said "corporeality is my *atta* (self). If so, can you

cause it to obey your words, saying "Let my corporeality should be thus: Let my corporeality should not be thus?"

When the Tathagata asked in such a point blank manner Saccaka remained completely silent.

(N.B. Saccaka had discovered his grave mistake. He thought to himself, "Samana Gotama had brought about the destruction of my view; I was foolish enough to have created a chance for Samana Gotama to defeat me in my own game; I have been ruined beyond redemption; in case I say, "I can prevail my power upon my corporeality", Licchavi princes would stand up and rebuke me for my ugly figure (body) compared with their own beautiful, admirable bodies resembling those of celestial beings of Tavatimsa.

In case I choose to say "I cannot prevail my power upon my body, Samana Gotama would stand up and rebuke me:" O Saccaka ..... you already have said that you have control over your body, and you have retracted your own profession". He has placed himself on the horns of a dilemma. He therefore kept complete silence.

For the second time the Tathagata called upon Saccaka to answer the same question:

"How do you like the question I am about to ask: You have said "corporeality is my atta (self). If so, can you cause it to obey your words, saying "Let my corporeality should be thus: Let my corporeality should not be thus?"

Saccaka remained completely silent, and did not answer the Tathagata's question for the second time in succession.

(If no answer was given to a reasonable question put by a Fully Self-Enlightened Buddha for three times in succession, it constitutes a grave act of excruciation against the Buddha, and the offender's head is liable to be split into seven parts, according to the course of the principle Law of Nature, *Dhamma-Niyāma*.)

Fully Self-Enlightened Buddhas, had fulfilled the Paramis for four *Asankheyya* and a hundred thousand aeons, out of great compassion for all beings, and, as such, the Tathagata did not repeat the question

for the third time, but changed the subject of discussion: "Saccaka ..... speak up now; this is not the time for you to keep silent: the head of one who does not answer a Buddha's reasonable question for three times in succession is liable to get split into seven parts spontaneously".

Then Sakka could not help coming to the scene under the guise of an orgre holding a burning, blazing, flaming thunder bolt and stood right on top of Saccaka's head, as though threatening to punish him should he fail to answer the Tathagata's resonable question for three times. The strange spectacle was visible only to the Tathagata and Saccaka (no one else could see it).

((N.B. Sakka had come holding a thunderbolt in his hand and stood above Saccaka having great compassion for him like the Buddha, and to persuade him to give up his wrong views by threatening him in the guise of a terrible orgre wielding a thunderbolt. He made his appearance, not because he actually wanted to do harm to Saccaka but because no untoward mishap to any one should ever occur in the presence of a Buddha. (Majjhima Tika)

The reason why Sakka came under the guise of an orgre was that, he had a desire to cause Saccaka to turn a new leaf and accept the Right View. Sakka was in the company of Sahampati Brahma when the latter approached the Buddha with a formal request to preach the Dhamma. Both of them requested the Buddha to preach the Dhamma, and they, on their part, undertook to see to it that reluctant people are persuaded to act according to his instructions. "Let yours be the authority of the Dhamma, and ours will be the law of temporal authority." Hence the appearance of Sakka under the guise of an orgre in fulfilment of his undertaking. (Majjhima Commentary).

When Saccaka saw Sakka under the guise of an orgre, his body perspired profusely through fright, beads of sweat streaming down, and waves of sounds swirled right round in his stomach. He looked around to see if there was any one also witnessing the strange phenomenon and saw none. He thought it would be unwise to shout out "a great orgre" when no one saw it, and would be like creating a chance for the people to turn against him saying; "We also have eyes; but you are the only

one seeing the ogre; you see it only because you dispute with Samana Gotama". He was so shaken that his hair stood on end and goose flesh developed all over his body. He found no one but the Buddha to take refuge in, and seeking shelter, protection and refuge only in the Bhagava, spoke to the Buddha thus: "Be pleased to ask me, Honourable Gotama; I will answer."

The Tathagata asked him :

"Saccaka... how do you like the question I am about to ask." You have said, "Corporeality is my atta.' If so, Do you have power over that corporeality and can you say 'Let my corporeality be thus; let my corporeality be not thus'?"

Saccaka replied: "Honourable Gotama .... I do not have the power". Then, Tathagata warned him: " Saccaka ..... think over it again, ponder over it again before you give an answer. What you said before does not agree with what you said later; and what you said later does not agree with what you said before. They do not collaborate one another". and he proceeded to ask:

"Saccaka... how do you like the question I am about to ask." You have said, "Sensation is my atta.' If so, Do you have power over that sensation and can you say 'Let my sensation be thus; let my sensation be not thus'?"

Saccaka replied: "Honourable Gotama .... I do not have the power". Then, Tathagata warned him: " Saccaka ..... think over it again, ponder over it again before you give an answer. What you said before does not agree with what you said later; and what you said later does not agree with what you said before. They do not collaborate one another". and he proceeded to ask:

"Saccaka... how do you like the question I am about to ask." You have said, "perception is my atta.' If so, Do you have power over that perception and can you say 'Let my perception be thus; let my perception be not thus'?"

Saccaka replied: "Honourable Gotama .... I do not have the power". Then, Tathagata warned him: " Saccaka ..... think over it again, ponder

over it again before you give an answer. What you said before does not agree with what you said later; and what you said later does not agree with what you said before. They do not collaborate one another". and he proceeded to ask:

"Saccaka.... how do you like the question I am about to ask." You have said, "volitional activities are my *atta*.' If so, Do you have power over those volitional activities and can you say 'Let my volitional activities be thus; let my volitional activities be not thus?'"

Saccaka replied: "Honourable Gotama .... I do not have the power". Then, Tathagata warned him: " Saccaka ..... think over it again, ponder over it again before you give an answer. What you said before does not agree with what you said later; and what you said later does not agree with what you said before. They do not collaborate one another". and he proceeded to ask:

"Saccaka.... how do you like the question I am about to ask." You have said, "six-fold conciousness is my *atta*.' If so, Do you have power over that six-fold conciousness and can you say 'Let my six-fold conciousness be thus; let my six-fold conciousness be not thus?'"

Saccaka replied: "Honourable Gotama .... I do not have the power". Then, Tathagata warned him: " Saccaka ..... think over it again, ponder over it again before you give an answer. What you said before does not agree with what you said later; and what you said later does not agree with what you said before. They do not collaborate one another".

Tathagata continued to exhort Saccaka by expounding a discourse which involves questioning and answering three times, a mode of teaching known as '*Tepariṅgata dhamma desanā*'.

"Saccaka .... what do you think of this?, Is corporeality permanent or impermanent?"

Saccaka answered: 'Impermanent, O Gotama' "That which is impermanent, is it painful (*dukkha*) or pleasant (*sukha*)? "Painful, O Gotama".

"Would it be proper to consider that this corporeality, which is impermanent, painful and subject to change as. This corporeality is mine (through clinging), this corporeality is I (through conceit); this is my *atta* (through wrong view). Saccaka answered: O Gotama .... It is indeed not proper.

Wanderer Saccaka .... what do you think of this? Is sensation ...p... is perception .... p .... are volitional activities ...p... : Saccaka.... how do you think of the question that I am about to ask: Are the six kinds of consciousness permanent or impermanent? Saccaka answered: Venerable Gotama .... impermanent." That which is impermanent, is it painful or pleasant? "Painful, O Gotama"

Would it be proper to consider the six kinds of consciousness, which are impermanent, painful and subject to change as "This consciousness is mine (through clinging), this consciousness is I (through conceit); this consciousness is my *atta* (through wrong view).

Saccaka answered: "Venerable Gotama, it is indeed not proper."

Just as an expert snake charmer caused the snake concerned to suck its venom out of the bitten part of the body of the victim, even so the Tathagata had caused Saccaka to admit by his own mouth the fact that the five *khandhas* are impermanent, painful and insubstantial, and not permanent, pleasant and substantial as he had primarily maintained by word of his mouth and in the presence of the same audience comprising Licchavi princes. (The venom that is the false view of *atta* which had appeared out of the mouth of Saccaka had been made to be sucked out by the same mouth of Saccaka and an admission to be uttered that it is *Anatta*, not self in the presence of the audience)

In this manner the Tathagata had Saccaka to definitely admit that five *khandhas* are impermanent, painful and insubstantial in the presence of throngs of people, and being desirous of subduing him to accept the Truth with his head hanging down, the Tathagata went on to ask:

Heretic Saccaka, how would you like the question that I am about to ask: When a person clings to *dukkha*, adheres to *dukkha*, cleaves to



*dukkha* and considers *dukkha* (the five-fold aggregates) as this *dukkhu* is mine (through clinging); this *dukkha* is I (through conceit) and this *dukkha* is my *atta* (self) (through wrong view), could he himself accurately understand *dukkha* (with three *prinnas*)?. Could he remain abiding in complete extinction of *dukkha*?

Saccaka answered: "O Honourable Gotamma .... How could it be possible! it is an impossibility! Whereupon, Tathagata went on to ask :

Wnderer Saccaka .... how would you think of the question I am about to ask: If that is so, being clung to those *dukkha* (of five aggregates), attached to those *dukkha* (of five aggregates), cleaving to those *dukkha* (of five aggregates), do you not hold the wrong view, and consider that this *dukkha* (the five aggregates) is mine; (through clinging), this *dukkha* (five aggregates) is I (through conceit), this *dukkha* (five aggregates) is my *atta* or self (through wrong view); in view of all this, you are on the wrong track in respect of view?

Saccaka answered: O Honourable Gotama .... How could it not be so! I do consider it so".

Then the Tathagata gave further exhortation to Saccaka:

"Saccaka, it is as if a man, desiring heart-wood, seeking heart-wood, and wandering about might enter the forest with a sharp hatchet. He might see there a plantain tree with a straight stem, devoid of a budding stalk. He cut off the bottom part and then cut off its crown. Then he might peel off the sheaths of the stem. Having peeled off the sheaths of the stem, that man would not get even the sap wood, let alone heart-wood.

In the same way, Saccaka, as I question and cross-question you for reasons in regard to your view, you prove to be empty, futile and a great failure.

O Saccaka, you have been boasting among the citizens of Vesali, through empty pride thus: "I have never come across such persons as Samana Brahmanas or Fully Self-Enlightened Buddhas, one who could resist me without perspiring from their

arm-pits when I refute and rebuke them on grounds of views; and even senseless logs or wooden blocks could not remain unshaken when I talk about things in terms of views, leave alone the living beings."

The Tathagata then exposing his golden coloured body to the assembly said "Saccaka .... there is no trace of perspiration on my body."

(N.B As a matter of course, a compounded body perspires one time or the other; hence, the Tathagata said: 'there is no trace of perspiration on body at the moment.

As regards 'exposition of the golden coloured body' it does not mean that the whole body was exposed to view. It is customary among the Buddhas to have the button-knob properly fixed to the button-ring of the robe, when they take their seat before an audience. The Tathagata, on this occasion, held the robe above the upper part of the throat and dropped just four inches of it to permit of emergence of red rays, whirling round like a stream of liquid gold or flashes of lightning, right round the head of the Tathagata, resembling a golden tabor and shooting skywards.

The Tathagata had done such a thing to dispel doubt, if any, on the part of the people, In case the Tathagata did not disclose the true aspect by exposing (the body), certain people might gainsay "we can see beads of perspiration streaming down Saccaka's body; Samana Gotama had said he had no sweat but we cannot know if it is true because his body is completely cloaked in a double-layered robe".)

When the Tathagata had said thus, Saccaka sat speechless with a sad look, drooping shoulders and downcast head and at his wit's end.

#### **Licchavi Prince Dummukha's Statement**

Then a Licchavi prince, Dummukha seeing Saccaka speechless with a sad look, drooping shoulders and downcast head and at his wit's end, addressed the Tathagata: "Most Exalted Tathagata.. a simile has come

into my head." The Tathagata urged him; "Dummukha, reveal it" Prince Dummukha addressed the Tathagat thus:

Most Exalted Tathagata .. there was a pond near a village or a marketing place. A crab was living in that pond. Many boys and girls, coming out from that village or town, might approach the pond and might go down into the pond; taking the crab out of the water, they might put it on dry ground. And, Venerable Sir, as often as that crab would thrust out a claw, those boys and girls would cut it, break it and smash it with sticks and potsherds. Just as that crab, with its claws cut, broken and smashed, would be unable to get down into the pond again as before, even so, Venerable Sir, Saccaka will be unable now to come round to the Buddha to make refutations and assertions as the Bhagava has cut, broken and smashed all the distorted, conceited, twisted views of Saccaka."

Whereupon, Saccaka asked Dummukha: "Dummukha.. stop it, Dummukha... stop it; (you are a person with rough speech;) we are not speaking with you, nor are we discussing with you; we have been discussing with the Venerable Gotama." He thus objected to Dummukha's participation in the conversation.

(When other Licchavi princes heard the simile quoted by prince Dummukha, they remembered the contemptuous treatment received at the hands of Saccaka while undergoing training under his care. "They thought the table had turned and it was the most opportune time for them to revenge on their common enemy by quoting different similes, in the manner of delivering blows to a fallen enemy. So they waited their turn thinking of similes they would quote.

Saccaka had a presage of what the princess were planning and what was in store for him. He knew "These princess were impatiently waiting their turn; if each of them gets the chance to come out with his simile, I will never be able to raise my head again in such crowds." He therefore planned to avoid such a mishap by approaching the Tathagata with a request to solve a problem before they could intervene as planned." It was with this intention that he had deterred prince Dummukha from intervention and approached the Tathagata with the request:)

"Venerable Gotama ... please leave aside my words, as well as those of many samanas and brahmas. Such words may be taken as idle talks. To what extent does a disciple of yours practise according to the teaching following the instruction and abide by the teaching of Gotama, having overcome uncertainty, having dispelled all doubts, having gained the courage of conviction and not dependent on others in matters of faith?"

The Tathagata gave the following answer in compliance with his request:

"Wanderer Saccaka, in this Sasana, a disciple of mine, sees any or all corporeality with right understanding as they really are, whether past, future, or present, in oneself or outside oneself, gross or subtle, mean or exalted, far or near, in these eleven different manners, through *Vipassana Nana, Magga Nana*, thus: this corporeality is not I, this corporeality is not mine, this corporeality is not my *atta*, self, ...p... all sensation ...p... all perception ...p... volitional activities ...p... sees any or all six-fold consciousness with right understanding as they really are, whether past, future, or present, in oneself or outside oneself, gross or subtle, mean or exalted, far or near, in these eleven different manners, through *Vipassana Nana, Magga Nana*. Thus: this consciousness is not mine, this consciousness is not I; this consciousness is not my *atta*, self."

Wanderer Saccaka ... it is to such an extent does a disciple of mine practise according to the teaching following the instruction and abide by the teaching, having overcome uncertainty, having dispelled all doubts, having gained the courage of conviction and not dependent on others in matters of faith?

(According to Canonical terms, the three Lower Fruitional Stages are termed *Sikkha bhūmi*, i.e. the *Sikkha* personalities (trainees); Canonical term of Arahatta Fruitional Stage is termed the *Arahatta puggalas* or the abode of *Ariya puggalas* exclusively.

Herein, the term 'sees' signifies a continuing process, not having completed the act of seeing. Although Saccaka was not acquainted with the terms employed in the Sasana, it occurred to him that 'sees' is some what short of 'realization', and so he addressed the Tathagata again.)

"Venerable Gotama ... to what extent (in what manner) does a bhikkhu, become an *arahat*, having eliminated *asavas*, having accomplished *Magga* practices, having done what is to be done, having laid down the burden (of aggregates, defilement and conditioned existence) having attained his own goal of *Arahattaphla*, having destroyed all the fetters of existence, and having become emancipated through full comprehension?."

The Tathagata replied:

"Wanderer Saccaka, in this Sasana, a disciple of mine, sees any or all corporeately with right understanding as they really are, whether past, future, or present, in oneself or outside oneself, gross or subtle, mean or exalted, far or near, in these eleven different manners, through *Vipassana Nāna*, *Magga Nāna*, thus: this corporeality is not I, this corporeality is not I, this corporeality is not my *atta*, self,' ...p... all sensation ...p... all perception ...p... volitional activities ...p... sees any or all six-fold consciousness thus: this consciousness is not mine, this consciousness is not mine; this consciousness is not my *atta*, self." and becomes emancipated having no clinging.

Wanderer Saccaka ... it is to that extent does a disciple of mine become an *arahat*, having eliminated *asavas*, having accomplished *Magga* practices, having done what is to be done, having laid down the burden (of aggregates, defilement and conditioned existence) having attained his own goal of *Arahattaphla*, having destroyed all the fetters of existence, and having become emancipated through full comprehension?.

Wanderer Saccaka ... such a bhikkhu, with the mind thus emancipated becomes endowed with three eminent qualities, namely,

eminence<sup>2</sup> in insight, eminence in practice and eminence in emancipation.

Wanderer Saccaka, a bhikkhu with his mind thus emancipated, reveres, esteems, honours, and venerates the Tathagata saying:

*Buddho boddhāya desesi  
danto yo dhammathāya ca  
samathāya santo dhammaṃ  
tinnova taraṇāya ca  
nibbuto nibbānatthaya  
taṅ lckasaraṇaṃ name.*

- Our Teacher, the Buddha, having gained Enlightenment with regard to the Four Noble Truths expounds the Dhamma to enlighten sentient beings.

- Our Teacher, the Buddha, having subdued or tamed himself, expounds the Dhamma to tame sentient beings.

- Our Teacher, the Buddha, having extinguished the flame of defilements himself, expounds the Dhamma to sentient beings to help extinguish the flame of their defilement;

- Our Teacher, the Buddha, having crossed over Four Great Oghas (floods of sensual desire, rebirth, wrong views and ignorance), expounds the Dhamma for crossing over;

- Our Teacher, the Buddha, having achieved total extinction of *kilesa*, expounds the Dhamma to sentient beings, for achievement of total extinction of their *kilesa*.

### **Offering of alms-meal to the Buddha by Wanderer Saccaka**

When Tathagata had thus explained the Exalted State of the Fruit of Arahatta, Saccaka addressed the Tathagata:

O Venerable Gotama ... we have, indeed, offended you and were impudent to think that we could dispute your views and

---

<sup>2</sup>Eminence in insight means insight into *Nibbana*; eminence in practice means perfect practice, the Ariya Path of Eight Constituents; eminence in emancipation means the attainment of *Arahatta Phala*.

refute them; we have tried to disparage you with harsh and discourteous words.

O Venerable Gotama ... for example: a person might find safety after attacking an elephant in must. But there could be no safety for a man attacking the Honourable Gotama.

O Venerable Gotama ... a man who attacks a blazing mass of fire might find safety but there could be no safety for a man attacking the Honourable Gotama.

O Venerable Gotama ... a man who attacks a dreadful and poisonous snake might find safety, but there could be no safety for a man attacking the Honourable Gotama.

O Venerable Gotama ... we have, indeed, offended you and were impudent to think that we could dispute your views and refute them; we have tried to disparage you with harsh and discourteous words.

((N.B. Saccaka said, "there could be no safety for a man attacking the Honourable Gotama." It meant that, any one who chanced to pass strictures on the Venerable Gotama in a debate on views cannot escape from being destroyed and had to depart with his views completely demolished. It should be noted that, the Tathagata had not caused harm to the life of any one like a big elephant, a great bon-fire or a venomous snake.

Saccaka had made such a statement with three similes not intending to praise the Tathagata, but to blow his own trumpet. For example: a King, who had caused the death of an enemy might speak highly of the defeated by remarks such as: "that man is such a brave and courageous one", just to glorify his feat of arms.

Saccaka had, in like manner, praised the Tathagata who was difficult to be approached by an ordinary being, by the similes of a big elephant, a great bon-fire and a venomous snake just to show that he was the only wise man with great courage to have challenged the Tathagata to a debate on views.)

When Saccaka had thus indirectly praised himself, he turned to the Tathagata and presented an invitation: "Venerable Gotama ... May the Honourable Gotama be pleased to accept my offering of alms-meal together with the community of bhikkhus at my place tomorrow"; the Tathagata accepted his invitation by keeping silent.

Saccaka then turned to the Licchavi princes and said: "Let Licchavi princes listen to me. The Venerable Gotama has accepted my invitation to the food offering ceremony at my place on the tomorrow: you might bring me whatever you think is suitable for them." When the night passed, they all brought five hundred pots of cooked food to him. Then Saccaka having made ready sumptuous food, hard and soft at his place, sent a messenger to inform the Tathagata, "O Honourable Gotama, it is time for meal; the alms-food is ready."

Then, in the morning, the Bhagava, having rearranged his robes and taking alms-bowl and (great) robe, went to the place of Saccaka and took the seat prepared for him, together with the community of bhikkhus. Saccaka served with his own hands sumptuous food, both hard and soft, to the bhikkhus headed by the Buddha, till they were completely satisfied and could not take any more.

When Saccaka knew that the Tathagata had finished taking the meal, he sat down in a suitable place and addressed the Bhagava:

"O Gotama ... May the main beneficial result<sup>3</sup> accruing from the *dāna* and the subsidiary consequences of the great offering be for the well-being of the donors (i.e. the Licchavis)."

Saccaka had said such a prayer under the impression that only Licchavi princes were entitled to enjoy the fruits of the act of merit; it was performed with the food donated by them. But it was Saccaka himself who should enjoy the reward because he had actually made the offering to the Buddha and the Sangha with what he had received from the Licchavi princes. The Tathagata therefore removed his wrong impression by saying:

---

<sup>3</sup>The main beneficial results mean future existence (in the form of five aggregates) in deva realm or happy circumstances in the human world; the subsidiary consequences mean wealth, properties, regalia etc. necessary for sumptuous living conditions.



Wanderer Saccaka, the merit goes to the Licchavi princes for gifts offered to a recipient like you, who is not free from *raga*, *dosa* and *moha*.

Saccaka, the merit goes to you for gifts offered to a recipient like me, who is free from *rāga*, *dosa* and *moha*.

Thus the Tathagata impressed upon his mind the idea of consequences of deeds of merit (so as to let it become part of his nature).

### Expounding of *Mahā Saccaka Sutta*.

The above is *Cula Saccaka Sutta*. This is not the only Sutta that the Tathagata had expounded; *Mahā Saccaka Sutta* was also expounded to him at a later date. *Mahā Saccaka Sutta* deals with two modes of meditation, namely, contemplation of the body (corporeality) and contemplation of the mind, and two types of persons, namely, *Sammuhla puggala* meaning 'bewildered person' and *Asammuhla puggala* meaning 'one who is without bewilderment'. For full particulars, please refer to *Mulapannāsa Pali Text*.

### Natural bent.

The Tathagata expounded *Cula Saccaka Sutta* and *Mahā Saccaka Sutta*. The former is as long as a section for recitation at the Buddhist Council while *Mahā Saccaka Sutta* is as long as one and a half section for recitation at the Buddhist Council. In spite of these long discourses and exhortation by the Tathagata, Saccaka did not attain any stage of the Path and Fruition nor did he receive ordination. He did not take refuge in the three Jewels either. A question might be asked as to why then the Tathagata had preached him such exhaustive Suttas?

The Tathagata preached the discourses to sow the seed of the Noble Truths in him so as to reap the harvest of the Path and Fruition, in due course. This is an explanation in detail: Tathagata perceived that Saccaka lacked sufficing conditions for the attainment of the Path and Fruition during his life time. But he was destined to attain Arahatsip two hundred years after the Buddha's Parinibbana when the Sasana would be in full bloom at Sihala (Sri Lanka). He would be born to the

family of a minister of a king, when he became of age, he would become a bhikkhu and after learning the Tipitaka and practising the Vipassana meditation attain *Arahattaphala*. endowed with *Patīsam̐bhida Nāna*. He would be popularly known as Thera Kala Buddha Rakkhita. Perceiving thus his future destiny through his knowledge of the future, *Anagata Nana*. the Tathagata had instilled into his heart a spark of Truth so that it might develop into a natural tendency in due course.

When Sasana was in full bloom at Sihala, he passed away from the celestial plane and was reborn to the family of a minister at a village that was responsible for the provision of food for a Great Monastery known as Dakkhinagiri. He received ordination when he came of age and studied Tipitaka. He eventually rose to the status of a senior bhikkhu in charge of a section of the Sangha. He went to pay homage in the company of his numerous disciples to his preceptor, who was responsible for his ordination.

The preceptor had made up his mind to censure his own disciple, Buddha Rakkhita, for neglecting the practices for liberation, though he had studied Tipitaka. The teacher had decided, therefore, not to sit face to face with the disciple.

Going to his master's monastery on the following day, Kala Buddha Rakkhita Thera asked his teacher: "Revered Sir ... now that I have come to see you after completion of the full course of learning the scriptures, I find that you do not seem to have the desire to see me. May I know if there is any thing wrong I have done?"

His teacher gave this answer: "Buddha Rakkhita ... do you think that you have accomplished all the tasks incumbent on a bhikkhu just because you have studied the five Nikayas and the Tipitaka? Whereupon, he sought for instructions by asking: "Revered Sir ... if so, what should I do?" His preceptor gave the following instructions: "You must give up all the obligations to your followers (*ganapatibodha*) which obstruct your progress, and cut off all the remaining defilement by repairing to Cetiya Mountain Monastery to devote entirely to the bhikkhu Dhamma i.e. meditation.

Kāḷa Buddha Rakkhita Mahathera did as he was advised by his old master and in due course he attained the Exalted State of *Patisambhida Arahat*. He continued to reside at the Cetiya Mountain Monastery amidst many disciples, and became well-known as the Master of the King and the commoners, as well.

### King Tissa listened to his Discourses.

At that time King Tissa was keeping sabbath in a cave known as Raja on the hill of Cetiya. He left words with a bhikkhu attending upon the Venerable Kāḷa Buddha Rakkhita: "Revered Sir ... Kindly let me know when the Venerable Kāḷa Buddha Rakkhita attends to questions or preaches Dhamma." On a day fixed for preaching, Kāḷa Buddha Rakkhita went to the precincts of Kandhaka pagoda and sat on the Dhamma throne prepared at the base of an ebony tree.

Kala Buddha Rakkhita recited the introductory stanza and started to preach the *Kāḷa Karama Sutta* as laid down in *Catukka nipatta Anguttara Pali* Text. The bhikkhu attendant to the Mahathera went to King Tissa and informed him of the preaching of the Dhamma by Mahathera.

King Tissa reached the site of Dhamma teaching while the Mahathera was still reciting the introductory stanza. He stood listening the discourse on the fringe of the big audience in the guise of a commoner right through out the three watches of the night. He said "Sadhu, Sadhu" at the conclusion of the discourse. Mahathera recognized him to be the King and asked: "How long have you been here?" "Revered Sir ... from the out set of the discourse" was his reply. When Mahathera said: "Your Majesty ... you have done a difficult thing, indeed." To this the king made this solemn reply: "Revered Sir ... this is not a difficult thing at all for me to keep standing and listening the discourse for a night; in fact, I had been taking note of every word and following the discourse without my mind being led astray at any moment from start to finish. I swear that this my statement is true: had I told a lie, I might be stripped off my sovereignty over this island of Sihala, without having any more authority even over a tiny spot of land the size of the tip of a whip. "He thus made a solemn vow very boldly.

### Infinite Attributes of The Buddha.

*Kāla Karama Sutta* illustrates the attributes of the Buddha, and therefore King Tissa asked the Mahathera: "Revered Sir ... should we take it that you have described all the attributes of the Buddha in full or are there any more besides these?" Mahathera replied: "Your Majesty... attributes of the Buddha are infinitely incalculable, many times more than what I have just described."

The King then requested: "Revered Sir ... kindly explain us with an example." Mahathera gave an example in response to the King's request. "Your Majesty ... suppose there is a state paddy field measuring one thousand pais<sup>4</sup>. The amount of seeds, present in an ear or spike of corn is infinitesimal compared with the number of seeds borne by the rest of corn spikes in the whole field; even so the attributes of the Buddha that remain undescribed by me are innumerable times greater than what I have just described."(1)

The King said "Revered Sir ... please give us another example." Mahathera said: "Just as the amount of water that would pass through the eye of a needle dipped in alignment with the current of the river Ganges is negligible compared to the remaining volume of water that flows down the mighty river, even so the attributes of the Buddha that I have described is negligible compared to those that still remain undescribed."(2)

The King said "Revered Sir ... please give us some more example." Mahathera said: "A tiny bird of sky lark species can be seen flying merrily about the sky. Just compare the area of space that is covered by the spread-out wings with the remaining open space, and, tell me which portion of the space is greater?" The King readily responded: "Revered Sir how can you have said it to me ... it goes without saying that the amount of space occupied by the spreading wing of the bird is negligible compared to the remaining infinite portion of the space (sky)." Mahathera told the King: "Your Majesty, even so, the attributes of the Buddha that remain unrevealed by me are far greater than what I have just described."(3)

---

<sup>4</sup>one pai equals to 1.75 acres covered by five baskets of seed paddy scattered

The King then addressed the Mahathera: "Revered Sir ... you have taught well by comparing the infinity of attributes of the Buddha with the infinity of the space. May I express my profound respect and deep sense of gratitude to you. We are incapable of making a fitting homage to you. May I therefore offer you kingship and sovereign power over the island of Sihala with an area of three hundred yojanas! This is an humble offer of a poor man." (The King had evaluated his kingship vis a vis the invaluable discourses on the Attributes of the Buddha; hence he likened the offering of his kingship as a poor man's gift.)

Kāla Buddha Rakkhita Mahathera made this remark in response to the King's offer: "Your Royal Highness ... you have, indeed, shown your profound respect and deep sense of gratitude to me, and I now return your kingship you have offered me with all its glories to you with my blessings: my sincere wish is that you rule the people of the Sihala and govern them with righteousness."

((This Kāla Buddha Rakkhita, the Arahant, had set an example to the members of the Order. The kingship and regalia or emblems of royalty, offered out of deep devotional faith and reverence to bhikkhus are not to be accepted since they are appurtenances and luxurious belongings of worldly people. They should be returned to the donors.))

During the fifth Lent, the Tathagata had made the first and second visit to Sihala to give exhortations to the dragon King Culodara and his nephew Mahodara. But as the Buddha made a third visit to the island during the eighth Lent, we have deferred inclusion of the first two visits in order to give a combined account of the three visits when we describe the events of the eighth Lent.

End of Chapter Twenty Three





## CHAPTER TWENTY FOUR

### BUDDHA TOOK RESIDENCE AT MT. MAKULA DURING THE SIXTH LENT

The Tathagata, as stated elsewhere, took up residence at the forest of Mahavan in Vesali country during the Fifth Lent emancipating those sentient beings who were deserving. He left there after conclusion of the lent, and traveled towards the countries of Savatthi and Rajagaha on a similar mission.

#### Two Kinds of Journey

There are two kinds of journey undertaken by the Tathagata according to circumstances, namely, (1) the kind of journey made suddenly, *Turita cārika* (2) an itinerary with stops at villages and towns, covering distances from one to two yojanas regularly per day *aturita cārika*.

*Turita cārika*: The journey undertaken suddenly when perceiving someone deserving of emancipation: there are many instances such as: The Tathagata setting out all of a sudden to receive Venerable Maha Kassapa covering three gavutas. Then he covered a journey of thirty yojanas in no time to save Ogre Alavaka; he did the same thing at the time of saving Angulimala, a notorious robber; He covered forty-five yojanas swiftly to preach to King Pakkusati after he had become a bhikkhu: He covered one hundred and twenty yojanas in no time to save King Maha Kappina. He covered seven hundred yojanas in no time to save Dhaniya, the wealthy owner of bullocks and his wife. Such journeys covered suddenly on such missions are termed *Turita cārika*.

When the Tathagata left a certain place at the end of a period of lent, and set out on a journey, he usually touched in at every intermediate towns and villages to receive alms or to preach, covering a distance of one or two yojanas per day. Such a journey honouring all people along the route by receiving alms or preaching to them is known as *Aturita cārika*.

### Three Circumferential Dimensions of The Buddha's Journeys

The Tathagata used to make three types of journey with varying circumferential dimensions. viz., (1) a journey covering the most widespread territory- *Mahā maṇḍhala*, (2) a journey with a medium coverage of territory- *majjhima maṇḍhala*, (3) a journey with the smallest coverage of territory- *anto maṇḍhala*.

Of these three types (1) *Mahā Maṇḍhala* has an area of 900 yojanas; (2) *Majjhima maṇḍhala* has an area of 600 yojanas (3) *Anto maṇḍhala* has an area of 300 yojanas. This will be clarified:

(1) The Tathagata held the *Pavāraṇā* ceremony at the end of Vassa or lent on the full moon day of Thadingyut, *Assayujō*. Should there be no special reason to wait, such as to save a worthy sentient being from the round of existence, he started his journey on the first waning moon of Thadingyut, in the company of a large number of bhikkhus, covering one or two yojanas per day. He continued on wandering round thus for nine months till the full moon day of Waso, asalho of the next year.

At each stop en route to the destination, enthusiastic donors from all directions, within an area of one hundred yojanas came in groups to pay homage with offerings. Those who came late scarcely got the chance of extending invitation to the Tathagata to their places. These two other regions formed part and parcel of this *Maha Maṇḍhala* zone. The Tathagata stayed a day or two at villages and towns within the vast zone of *Maha Maṇḍhala*, to bless the people of the locality by receiving alms from them and by preaching to them Dhamma thus developing their merit to escape from the round of rebirth. Thus the Tathagata usually spent nine months en route before he ended his itinerary. The journey lasting nine months covered a distance of three hundred yojanas from one end to another, as the crow flies. With this area of three hundred yojanas as the centre, people from places three hundred yojanas on the left side of the route as well as those on the right also had the opportunity of doing meritorious deeds such as offering alms and listening to the Dhamma. Thus these areas may be considered as also been visited by the Tathagata. Hence the statement



above that a *Mahā maṇḍhala* journey measures nine hundred yojanas, all told.

(2) In case the bhikkhus had not reached maturity in their practice of concentration and insight meditation, 'Pavāraṇā' Ceremony of Sangha which fell on the full moon of Thadingyut, was put off till full moon of Tazaungmon, *Kattika*. Then only on the first waning moon of Tazaungmon, the Tathagata would start the journey attended by the bhikkhus. If for some other reason the Tathagata wished to go on a *Majjima maṇḍhala* range of journey, he would tarry till the full moon of Tazaungmon (a full four months) at wherever he had kept the lent, and then set out on the journey. In the above manner, the Tathagata would spend the eight-month journey honouring the populace with his visits and preaching the Dhamma. The journey of eight months would cover two hundred yojanas from one end to another as the crow flies. Each area on either side of the road measured two hundred yojanas. People from these areas also had the opportunity of doing meritorious deeds such as offering alms and listening to the Dhamma. Thus these areas may be considered as also been visited by the Tathagata. Hence the statement above that a *Majjima maṇḍhala* journey has an area of six hundred yojanas, all told.

(3) Although Tathagata had spent four months, keeping up vassa at a certain place, (i.e. up to and inclusive of the Full moon of Tazaungmon) if deserving beings were still lacking in maturity of faculties, he continued his stay at the same place for another month; when necessary such time of grace was prolonged, month after month even for four months, right up to the Full moon of Pyatho (*Phusso*), as occasion demanded, and then only did the Tathagata leave that place in the company of a great number of bhikkhus, to set out on the *Anto maṇḍhala* journey.

As in the previous case the Tathagata spent these respective months, blessing people by his visits and preaching. The length of time necessary for traversing the country was reduced anything from seven to four months, for reasons as described above. Because of the shortage of time, that seven, or six, or five, or four month journey had a distance of one hundred yojanas, as the crow flies. As in the above

shortage of time, that seven, or six, or five, or four month journey had a distance of one hundred yojanas, as the crow flies. As in the above manner the areas one hundred yojanas on either side of this were also visited. Hence it is said; "*Anto mandhala* journey ranges altogether three hundred yojanas."

It should be borne in mind that, the Tathagata had set out on one of these itineraries not for receiving the four requisites, namely, robe, food, shelter, medicine, but out of compassionate consideration and with the sole object of affording opportunity to the poor, the ignorant, the aged, the sick, who would have no means of paying homage to him at any other time. Of them, some would be pleased just to see him, some would like to offer flowers and sweet scents, or a morsel of hard earned food, and there would be those who had given up wrong view to take up the Right View. Such encounters with him would bring about lasting peace, prosperity and happiness for these people.

This was how the Tathagata, after having kept the fifth vassa in the Mahavana forest at Vesali, traveled to Savatthi and Rajagaha with the villages on their outskirts (by way of one or other of the three kinds of journey) for the uplift of all living beings and having administered the Elixir of the Dhamma with his preaching, kept the sixth vassa at Mount Makula Monastery, situated by the side of the ocean, shaded and walled in by a forest of star flower trees, saving all deserving human and celestial beings and brahams from the sufferings of sentient existence.

#### **A sandal-wood bowl of rich man of Rajagaha**

The Tathagata, having kept the sixth Vassa at the Mount Makula monastery, left for Rajagaha and took up residence at Veluvana monastery there.

At that time, a rich man of Rajagaha, being desirous of disporting himself in the River Ganges, caused a huge net to be constructed in the form of a casket surrounding all four sides of the place where he was to disport, to protect himself against all possible danger from both above and below the spot and against the risk of his jewellery being washed

At that time, a red sandal-wood tree came drifting down the Ganges from the upper reaches of the river. The current of the river had caused it to fall by washing away the sand at its base. The tree lost its size, shape or form as it dashed against the cliffs and rocks while it came floating down the swift current during the course of a long journey. It had been battered, broken into pieces, tattered and finally a heartwood piece of red sandalwood, with the constant abrasion, had taken the form of a block of wood with a smooth surface. As it floated down, it got entangled with the net of the rich man with all the duckweeds wrapped about it. The servants and attendants brought it to their master, the rich man.

At that time, the rich man of Rajagaha was a man without any religious belief; he did not hold the Right View, *Sammā Ditṭhi* or the Wrong View, *Micchā Ditṭhi* either. He brought the bowl of sandalwood to his house and had the upper layer chipped off with an adze. They found the reddish heartwood emitting the sweet fragrance of sandalwood. It set him thinking: "I have so many kinds of sandalwood in my house, and what should I do with this one!" and it eventually dawned on him:

"In the world today, there are many people, who profess themselves to be Arahats. I have no idea as to who is a real Arahata. I will have a lathe to be installed in my house and get the block of sandalwood made into an alms-bowl; the wood dust from the lathe I will use, but the bowl I will donate as charity. I will put it into a containing frame and keep it hanging from a pole made by tying a series of bamboos end to end to a height of sixty cubits, and announce "any one who can prove himself to be an Arahata by flying into the air through jhānic power and securing the bowl can have it for his own. And the Arahata who can actually come by air and claim the bowl as announced, I, together with my family, will accept him and worship him as our teacher."

He accordingly had the sandalwood to be made into an alms-bowl, and kept it hanging in a framework from a series of bamboos tied

together to a height of sixty cubits, announcing: "Any real Arahata in the world may receive this bowl by flying through the space (sky)."

### The Six Sectarian Teachers

At that time there were residing in Rajagaha six sectarian teachers who professed themselves to be Arahats and sages of their own sects. They were:

#### (1) Purana Kassapa:

His proper name is Purana, and he belonged to a clan known as Kassapa, and he came to be known as Purana Kassapa.

This is a brief account of this sect teacher: There was a rich man who had ninety nine slaves, and Purana was born as the 100th slave, hence he was named Purana or "Centenary Slave." He was considered an auspicious slave for being the hundredth one, and he was not criticized for his misdeeds or blamed for negligence of duty.

With all that, he absconded with a conceited idea, "Why should I stay in this house?" and ran straight into a gang of robbers who stripped him bare. He had not enough decency to clad himself in leaves or grass. He went into a village with his body altogether nude. People misplaced their faith in him, speaking highly of him "This recluse is an Arahata; he is so self-denying and continent; there is no one like him." They came to him with offerings of hard and soft food. He thought to himself "my being nude is the cause of gaining such gifts." From that time on, he remained unclothed even when he had clothings offered him. He became fixed in his belief that nakedness was a condition of a recluse. He had five hundred men who became his disciples by adopting such a way of life. In this way he became a leader of a sect, an illustrious teacher, a god to his followers.

N.B. When we examine the life of this sect leader closely, we find that he absconded from his master's place only to run straight into a gang of robbers, who stripped him bare. That was how he was reduced to the state of nakedness. But unintelligent people thought that nakedness constitutes holiness and pronounced him an Arahata. When

accepted as such, he began to style himself as a great sage, a god, even though he had nothing to show in the matter of spiritual development and practice. He and the following five sect leaders, in their self-acclaimed positions, had made speculations and pronounced them as creeds of their own. For details, may refer to 2-*Samañña phala Sutta* of *Silakkhanda Vagga* of *Dīgha Nikāya*.

(2) Great teacher Makkhali Gosala

His proper name was Makkhali; Gosala was added to his name as he was born at the village of Gosala (or as he was born in a cow-shed where bullocks were accommodated during the rainy season).

A short account of his life runs:

He was a slave like Purana. One day as he was going across a muddy spot, with an oil-pot on his shoulder, his master warned him to be careful not to slip and fall : " My lad, don't slip: My lad ... don't slip". But he was so careless that he did slip and fall and so he tried to run away through fear of his master.

When his master caught him by a portion of his nether garment, he abandoned his clothings and escaped through the fingers of his master. (The rest of the story is identical with that of Purana Kassapa.)

(3) Great teacher Ajita Kesa-kambala:

He was also the teacher of a sect. His proper name was Ajita. He used to wear a garment, *kambala*, made of human hair (*kesā*), and he came to be known as Ajita Kesa-kambala.

(4) Great teacher Pakudha Kaccayana:

He was also the teacher of a sect. His proper name was Pakudha. He belonged to Kaccayana clan, so came to be known as Pakudha Kaccayana. He eschewed cold water. He used either warm water or vinegar to tidy up after defecating, or to wash away dirt or dust. He considered himself to have breached the precepts whenever he had crossed a stream or a river. Such lapses had to be atoned for by piling sand in small heaps and taking the precepts before he could continue his journey.

(5) Great teacher Sancaya Belatthaputta:

He was also the teacher of a sect. The Venerables Sariputta and Maha Mogalana lived with him when they started leading the life of a wandering ascetic. His proper name was Sancaya. He was the son of a man called Belattha, and he came to be known as Sancaya Belatthaputta.

(6) Nigantha Nathaputta

He was also the teacher of a sect. He professed, "We have no defilements binding us; we are free from fettering defilements." Hence the term 'Nigantha' (In fact they were far from being free from defilements). His father was called Natha and he came to be known as Nigantha Nathaputta.

The sandal bowl was kept hanging from the top of a pole made up of a number of bamboos, with a height of sixty cubits. A general announcement was made to the effect that "any one who has become an Arahat in this world may receive the bowl by flying through space with jhanic power." Whereupon, the teacher, Purana Kassapa came to the rich man of Rajagaha and said: "Rich man .. I am an Arahat and am also one with power and so give the bowl to me ." He made such a bold claim without any rhyme or reason. The rich man of Rajagaha tactfully made a meaningful reply: "Venerable Sir ... I have already offered the bowl to any real Arahat who possesses power. If you be a real Arahat and if you have such power, bring down and take away the bowl with your powers." (Since Purana Kassapa was not an Arahat replete with jhanic power, he had to return with his hopes dashed to the ground).

The other teachers also came to claim the bowl after the manner of Purana Kassapa: on the second day there came Makkhali Gosala; on the third, Ajita Kesakambala; on the fourth day, Pakudha Kaccayana, on the fifth, Sancaya Belatthaputta; they all met the same fate as Purana Kassapa, since they could not fulfill the condition set out by the rich man.

On the sixth day, teacher Nigandha Nathaputta summoned his disciples and confided to them: "Go ye to the rich man of Rajagaha and tell him: 'The bowl is only fit for our Great Sage; do not make our Great teacher come all the way through space for a negligible wooden bowl such as that; do exempt our Great Sage from such a task and offer it to him.'" He thus sent his disciples to the rich man of Rajagaha.

His disciples went to the rich man of Rajagaham and told him as instructed by their teacher. Whereupon, the rich man gave them a firm reply: "Only those who can come through space may get the bowl."

Nigantha Nathaputta had a desire to go there personally and so he confided these instructions to his disciples:

"I will make a sham attempt by lifting one of my legs and hands, as though I am about to shoot up into the sky .. and you all come saying "O Great Sage .. What are you going to do .. please do not demonstrate the secrets of the virtues of *Arahattaphala* for the sake of a wooden bowl," and then push and fell me to the ground .."

He thus confided to them his plans.

After conspiring with his disciples, teacher Nathaputta went to the rich man and said: "Rich man .. this bowl is not fit for any body else, why should you want me to fly in the air for a paltry wooden bowl; do offer it to me" "Venerable Sir ... Just fly up to the sky and take it," was the rich man's terse reply.

Whereupon, Nathaputta said "If that is the case I will shoot up into the sky" and turning to his disciples he asked them to move aside and he lifted one of his hands and feet. Then his disciples hastened to their teacher and said to him: "O Great teacher ... what do you mean by this! ... it is not worth demonstrating the virtues of *Arahattaphala* for the sake of a worthless wooden bowl" as previously arranged. They pulled him by his hands and feet and caused him to fall to the ground. Nathaputta, while still lying on the ground, told the rich man: "O rich man ... you have seen that my disciples would not allow me to fly into the sky. I urge you to offer me that bowl." But the rich man was not to

be moved. He calmly repeated "Please take it only by flying into the sky."

Thus the six teachers made six attempts for six days in succession, but to no purpose.

### Venerables Maha Moggallana and Pindola

On the seventh day, the two Mahatheras, namely, Venerables Maha Moggallana and Pindola came out of the Veluvana monastery to enter the City of Rajagaha for the usual round of receiving alms food. When they were putting on robes on a huge rock near the city they overheard the calumniating remarks of some drunken persons:

"Friends ... those six sectarian teachers used to go round announcing themselves as Arahats in the past. It is now the seventh day since the rich man of Rajagaha made the announcement, 'If there is an Arahata, let him come through space to take the bowl,' after hanging the sandalwood bowl from a series of bamboo poles tied together to a height of sixty cubits. Not even one person declaring "I am an Arahata" has been able to fly into the sky. Only today we know well there are no Arahats in the world."

On hearing that remark, Venerable Maha Moggallana asked Venerable Pindola: "Friend ... do you hear the derogatory remark of those drunken persons? His sweeping calumniating remark also affects the prestige of Buddha Sasana. You possess power; you are mighty; Go and bring the sandalwood bowl by flying through space." Whereupon, Venerable Pindola Bharadvaja replied: "Friend ... The Tathagata had elevated you to the Chief position (*Etadaggaṃ*) with respect to supernormal power, and, as such, I wish you to do it yourself. I will accomplish the task only if you do not undertake it." (This shows that Venerable Pindola had given priority to Venerable Maha Moggallana out of respect for his seniority). Whereupon, Venerable Maha Moggallana willingly permitted Venerable Pindola to accomplish the task all by himself.



### **Venerable Pindola Bharadvaja Mahathera obtained the sandal-wood bowl by means of supernormal psychic power**

Having obtained permission from Maha Moggallana, the Venerable Pindola entered into the Fourth Jhana state, it being the basis of supernormal psychic power and arising therefrom, he caused the huge slab of rock, on which they stood to put on robes, to rise into space by means of super-normal will. The rock with neatly and elegantly trimmed sides was made to fly like a piece of silk cotton-wool and circle round seven times above the city of Rajagaha which had an area of three gavutas. The huge slab of rock seemed to be an enormous lid covering the city of Rajagaha.

The citizens got frightened at the sight of a huge rock hanging over their heads and thinking "the huge slab of rock has covered and pressed us" ran helter-skelter and took shelter under nearby places, covering their heads with flat trays. When the huge rock had made its seventh round above the city, the Venerable Pindola made himself visible through the rock. Whereupon the citizens appealed to the Mahathera: "Venerable Sir ... please hold the rock fast, lest it destroys all of us." Even as the people looked on the Mahathera caused the huge rock to return to its original position by kicking and tossing it with his toes.

When the Venerable Pindola stood in the sky right above the residence of the rich man, the latter on seeing him, crawled on his breast on the ground and invited the Mahathera to descend. Once the Mahathera was in his house, he had the bowl brought down and filled it with four kinds of nourishment, '*Catu-madu*' to its brim. He then offered it to the Mahathera with due respect.

### **People came rallying round (the Venerable Pindola)**

As the Mahathera was on the way to the monastery with the bowl, people who had missed the opportunity of seeing the super-normal power, for their being away in the fields, came rallying round the Mahathera and requested: "Venerable Sir ... please let us see the super-normal performance like the others." They followed him right up to the monastery witnessing the miracle as demonstrated by the Mahathera.

### The Buddha prescribed a ruling prohibiting demonstration of miracles

On hearing uproarious noises, Buddha asked the Venerable Ananda: "Dear Son Ananda ... whose clamor are those?" The Venerable Ananda replied: "Most Exalted Tathagata ... Pidola Mahathera had flown up into the sky and brought down the sandal-wood bowl offered by the rich man of Rajagaha. Hearing the news many people have followed at his heels. Those clamorous voices are the voices of the people."

Whereupon, the Tathagata caused the Sangha to be assembled and asked the Venerable Pindola: "Dear Son Pindola ... is it true that you had obtained the sandal-wood bowl of the rich man of Rajagaha by means of a miracle (*Patihāriya*)?" When Pindola replied it was true, the Tathagata censured him giving many reasons and preached some discourses by way of exhortation, and then prescribed a ruling: (*Na bhikkhave Iddhipatihāriyam dassetabbam, yo dasseya āpatti dukkatassa*) "Bhikkhus ... no bhikkhu shall display a miracle; the defaulter is guilty of transgression, "*Dukkata Āpatti*"; He then continued that the Sandal-wood bowl be broken into pieces and distributed amongst the bhikkhus to be powdered for use as eye medicine, and prescribed another ruling that no bhikkhu should make use of wooden bowls, any defaulter would be guilty of transgression; "*Dukkata Āpatti*."

### The impudent and arrogant boast of the heretic sects

Upon hearing that Buddha had prohibited the bhikkhus from demonstrating miracles, heretics were confident that all the disciples of the Buddha would not breach such a ruling even on pain of death. They considered how they could take advantage of such a situation. They went about the streets and alleys of the town bragging to the people: "In the past, to uphold our prestige, we had not made any attempt to display our super-normal power for (the sake of) a wooden alms-bowl: only the disciples of Recluse Gotama have shamelessly done such things; It is said that Recluse Gotama, being a wise man, had caused all trace of the bowl to be lost by having it broken into pieces, and has also prescribed a ruling prohibiting the bhikkhus from performing miracles.

We can now take advantage of the situation and challenge Gotama to perform a feat of miracles."

**Buddha's declaration to perform miracles.**

On hearing the above news, King Bimbisara approached the Tathagata and discussed the question with this dialogue:

- (King) Most Glorious Tathagata ... did you prescribe a rule prohibiting the bhikkhus from performance of miracles?
- (Buddha) Aye ... I did, gracious King!
- (King) Sectarians have been going round boasting that they would challenge the Tathagata to feats of miracles; What would you do now?
- (Buddha) If they are going to stage performance of miracles, I too shall stage performance of miracles.
- (King) Have you not prescribed a ruling prohibiting the performance of miracles?
- (Buddha) Gracious King ... I have not prescribed the rule for myself, I have prescribed the ruling exclusively for my disciples!
- (King) Could a ruling be prescribed exclusively for the disciples, excepting the Tathagata?
- (Buddha) Gracious King ... in such a case, I will put a question to you: Are there mango trees and fruits in your garden?
- (King) Yes, there are ... Revered Sir.
- (Buddha) What action would you take against a person who chanced to pluck the fruits and eat them?
- (King) I will have to punish him in that case.
- (Buddha) Have you any right to enjoy the fruits for yourself?
- (King) Yes, I have ... Exalted Lord; no action need be taken against me when I enjoy my own property.

(Buddha) Gracious King ... just as your authority prevails in this country with an area of three hundred yojanas, so my authority extends to one trillion world systems (*āṇākhetta*); there cannot be any ruling for me; only my disciples are subject to restrictions: I shall perform miracles.

(King) Exalted Tathagata ... when will you perform the miracles?

(Buddha) Gracious King ... four months from today, on the Fullmoon day of Waso, *Asalho*, miracles will be performed by me.

(King) Exalted Tathagata ... at which place?

(Buddha) Gracious King ... near the Kandamba mango tree in the country of Savatthi.

(The term *Kandamba*, means white mango tree; what the Tathagata meant by *Kandamba rukkha* was the mango tree planted by a gardener by the name of *Kandamba*.)

The Tathagata had chosen that place firstly because, this is the place where all the previous Buddhas used to perform miracles; secondly to enable a greater number of people to witness the Great Event: the Tathagata had decided this place at a distance of forty-five yojanas and the time, after a lapse of four months.)

### The Sectarrians' Schemes and Pretences

When the sectarians heard of the bold declaration by the Tathagata (that he would perform miracles on the Full moon day of Waso near the Kandamba mango tree in the country of Savatthi) they foresaw that they would be doomed forever. They, however, devised ways to mislead the people by false pretensions. They therefore agreed amongst themselves to dog the steps of the Tathagata en route to Savatthi, and to tell people (should they ask for explanation) that they had declared to stage a parallel performance of miracles in competition with the Recluse Gotama, but that the Recluse Gotama was now running away

from them in fear and thus they were dogging his footsteps not to lose sight of him and give him the chance to escape. "With this scheme of ours, we will even receive much gain and fame," the sectarians entertained the hope.

### **Buddha left Rajagaha for Savatthi**

The matter of performance of miracles cropped up some time about the Full moon day of Tabaung, *Phagguno*, in the year (108) one hundred and eight of the Great Era. It was about the First waning of Tabaung that the Tathagata went on alms-round in Rajagaha and left that city for Savatthi in the company of disciples.

The sectarians also started their journey simultaneously and traveled almost together trailing behind the Tathagata all along the way, receiving food and partaking from the same place, starting off and halting at the same time, sleeping at the same place and resuming the journey after breakfast at the same time the next morning. When asked by the people: "What makes you go along with the Tathagata?" They gave the same answer as stated above. Crowds of people went along intending to witness the performance of miracles.

The Tathagata traveled along the route, and on arrival at Savatthi, took residence at the Jetavana monastery. The sectarians having traveled along with the Tathagata built a pavilion of heartwood of clutch wood out of the fund of one lakh raised by their disciples at their request. They decorated the pavilion in grand and novel way with blue lotus blooms and boastfully announced that this would be their centre for the performance of miracles.

King Pasenadi Kosala went to the Tathagata and asked: "Most Exalted Tathagata, the sectarians have already got a pavilion built. May I have your permission to build a pavilion for you" The Tathagata replied: "Gracious King ... you need not build it. I have a donor at hand who is prepared to build it." "Is there any person capable of building a pavilion for you other than myself?" "Gracious King .... Sakka (the king of Devas) will build it" was the reply. The King asked; "Most Exalted Tathagata .... at which place would you be pleased to perform

miracles?" "Gracious King .. near the Kandamba mango tree" was the reply.

Sectarians were greatly shaken when they heard of the news "the Tathagata will perform miracles near the mango tree," and so they discussed with their supporting lay people to buy and fell all the mango trees, even day-old sprouts, growing within a radius of one yojana around the city of Savatthi.

### **An Account of Kandamba White Mango Tree**

The Tathagata entered the city of Savatthi, accompanied by the disciples, to receive food on the morning of Full-moon day of Waso, *Asalho*.

Incidentally, the Royal gardener, called Kanda, was scaring away crows attracted by the scent of a big ripe mango fruit within the folds of an old nest of red ants on the mango tree. He eventually picked it with the idea of offering it to the King. On his way, he beheld the Tathagata and then a fresh idea dawned on him:

"If the King were to enjoy this mango fruit, his reward would be some thing like eight or sixteen pieces of money, which would not keep me going for the whole of my life; if this was offered to the Tathagata I would get, in return, unmeasureable benefit throughout the cycle of rebirths."

With this devotional faith, he offered it to the Tathagata on his way to the King. Whereupon, the Tathagata turned round and looked at the Venerable Ananda, who being perceptive understood what the Tathagata wanted him to do. He handed the stone alms-bowl that had been offered to the Tathagata by the four Great Brahmas. The Tathagata then lowered the bowl to accept the gift offered by the gardener Kanda. Then the Tathagata showed signs of wishing to sit down at the spot.

The Venerable Ananda spread a robe over the spot for the Tathagata and went ahead to prepare some mango squash and offered it to the Tathagata. After partaking of the mango squash, the Tathagata called upon the royal gardener and said: "Lay devotee Kanda ... scrape the

earth and have that mango seed planted here." When Kanda had sowed the seed, the Tathagata washed his hand right on top of the mango seed.

As soon as Tathagata had washed his hands over the seed, a sprout of the size of the stock of a harrow came up; the sprout continued to grow gradually to a height of fifty cubits even as they looked on. The main stem put out four main branches sideways, into four directions, and the fifth shooting upwards each one measuring fifty cubits. The main branches, in turn, put out small branches and abundance of fruits, till gradually the whole tree was full of bunches of ripe fruit.

All the bhikkhus who arrived later could also partake of the fruits (there being enough and to spare). On hearing the marvellous appearance of the strange mango tree, King Pasenadi Kosala issued a royal order to the effect that no one must cut the tree and caused a number of security personnel to be posted around the tree.

(The mango tree was named after the gardener, Kanda, who planted the tree, hence "*Kandamba Rukkha*." The Tathagata was referring to this mango tree when he had told King Bimbisara and King Pasenadi Kosala that he would perform miracles near Kandamba mango tree, in answer to their query." This was a fact unknown to the sectarians, and they had therefore arranged with their followers for the destruction of all mango trees, inclusive of spouts, in and around the city of Savatthi, at their own expense so that the Tathagata could not perform miracles.

Drunken men of the locality had also their share of fruits to enjoy with great satisfaction. They turned to the sectarians and they decried their low and selfish motives saying "Ha .....you ruined heretics, you have destroyed all the mango trees, and uprooted even day-old sprouts, in and around the city of Savatthi, for fear that the Recluse Gotama would perform miracles near (a white mango tree that you had in mind); but the miracles will take place near the mango tree planted by gardener Kanda," and they attacked the sectarians throwing the seeds of the mangoes they had eaten at them.

**The Pavilion of the Sectar'ians blown down and destroyed  
by the wind 'god'**

Sakka (Indira) ordered the wind god "Blow down the pavilion of the heretics uprooting even the posts and dump it in the garbage. He did as he was told.

Sakka asked the sun god to cause intense heat for the sectarians by taking his mansion down a little. He did as he was bid.

The wind god was asked again by the Sakka to create a whirlwind exclusively at the place of the heretics. He did as he was bid, with the result that they were soaked with perspiration and covered with dust, and they resembled the big red ant-hills.

Sakka then asked the rain god to pour torrential rain together with hail stones. The rain god did as he was bid, with the result that they looked like oxen with white and red spots, all over the bodies.

The sectarians, with their pavilion wrecked beyond repair, could not withstand the intense heat and the force of the whirlwind accompanied by hail; they became crestfallen and helpless under the hopeless conditions, and there was no alternative but to run away helter-skelter wherever their legs could carry.

**The sectarian teacher Purana Kassapa put a noose round  
his neck and drowned himself**

Thus the six heretic teachers ran away in different directions. Mean while, one servitor devotee of Purana Kassapa, who was a farmer, thought; "Now it must be time for my noble teachers, to perform miracles. I will go and see the miracles" He released the oxen from the plough, and carrying the pot in which he had brought his gruel early in the morning, a rope and the goad he arrived at the spot where his Sage was expected to show his feat of miracle. When he saw Purana Kassapa running hastily he asked him: "Most Rev. Sir.... I have come to witness your performance of miracles, and where are you bound for?" Purana Kassapa replied; "What good could your miracle do? Just hand me the pot and the rope." Taking the rope and the pot he ran straight to the banks of a nearby running stream, got the pot filled with sand, and tying



the pot tightly round his neck with the rope sprang into the running current to end his life. This was marked by some bubbles floating on the surface of the stream while he was reborn in the plane of misery known as *Avici*.

#### A Lesson

It is natural that:

- (a) those who are ignorant, unenlightened are destined to suffer long through many transient existences;
- (b) those noble, virtuous, intelligent and enlightened persons enjoy the maximum of peace, joy and benefits.

Such is the nature of the world.

#### Addresses made by the Buddha's Disciples at the Feats of Miracle

Towards the evening on that day, Sakka realized that it was his duty to arrange for the creation of a jewelled pavilion for the Tathagata and so he commanded Vissukamma to create a great pavilion extending over twelve yojanas profusely covered with blue lotus blooms and adorned with seven kinds of jewels. The Sangha and the laity assembled around the Tathagata in this pavilion.

Towards the evening on that day, Tathagata left his Scented Chamber to take up temporary residence at the pavilion created by Vissukamma, preparatory to the demonstration of the feat of miracles, and on arrival sat on the jewelled throne of the size of one yojana and under a white celestial umbrella of the size of three yojanas.

It will be recalled that a period of four months had elapsed since the last full-moon day of Tabaung when the Tathagata had given intimation to King Bimbisara of his desire to demonstrate a feat of miracle near the Kandamba mango tree. This piece of news had spread far and wide ever since, and now all the bhikkhus, bhikkhunis and male and female lay devotees had gathered round the Tathagata on four sides — at the front, back, left and right — 12 yojanas deep on each side; 24 yojanas from end to end and 72 yojanas in circumference. All the celestial

beings from ten thousand world systems had also assembled at this place at the same time.

### An address by Gharani, A Female Lay Devotee

At the assembly, Gharani, a female lay devotee and an *Anāgami* with great power, stood in front of the Tathagata and paying obeisance with palms together, made her address: "Most Exalted Tathagata ... when there is a daughter of yours such as myself, we see no need for you to exert yourself. May I be kindly permitted to demonstrate a feat of miracle?" Whereupon, the Tathagata asked; "Dear daughter Gharani ... how would you demonstrate your feat of miracle?" She replied:

"Most Exalted Tathagata ... I shall cause the earth portion of the universe into water thereby turning the entire world system into a uniform mass of water. I shall transform myself into a water hen and dive to reappear at the eastern edge, then likewise at the western, northern and southern edge of the universe, and then at the centre of the universe.

Whereupon, a certain person might ask as to who I am, and the people would answer "She is Gharani, daughter of the Tathagata, and female *Anāgami*." This would lead the people to say "This display of power is only the prelude, the power of a daughter of the Tathagata, a young woman. The power of the Tathagata must indeed be infinite." In consequence, all the heretics would naturally lose courage and flee without even daring to glance back at the Tathagata."

The Tathagata told her: "Dear daughter Gharani, I knew you have the power to demonstrate such a feat of miracle, but the bouquet of flowers (attached to the winning post) was not meant for you." Gharani considered that the Tathagata had not given her permission for good reasons; it might be that there was some one far superior to her in respect of power in the performance miracles." So she remained at a suitable place.

The Tathagata contemplated "If, in this manner, I should ask my sons and daughters, in the mildest of these spectations, covering twenty four square yojanas, they will rise up bravely and with the mien of a lion

king, make such wildly confident declarations. In this way, the attribute of my sons and daughters will be already revealed. The Tathagata, therefore, asked other disciples, both males and females, about their individual achievements. The disciples courageously disclosed the way in which they would display their feat of miracles in his presence.

### Cula Anathapindika's address

Amongst those male and female disciples, who made such bold statements, Cula Anathapindika was one who had this to say: "Most Exalted Tathagata ... when there is a *Anagami* disciple of yours such as myself, there is no need to exert yourself. Let me be kindly permitted to demonstrate a feat of miracles."

Whereupon, Tathagata asked him: "Dear son Anathapindika ... in what form would you demonstrate a feat of miracles?" The lay disciple Anagami Anathapindika replied: "I will transform my body into that of Brahma's body, which measures 12 yojanas, and then by slapping one of the upper arms with the open palm of the other hand, produce the thunderous sounds of a great rain storm in the midst of the throngs of people present here.

"Whereupon, people would ask 'What sort of sound is that?' and the others would answer 'this is the sound of the clapping of the arms by the young rich man, Anathapindika, who is an *Anāgami* disciple of the Tathagata." This would lead the heretics to say, 'This is only the prelude, the power of a young lay disciple. The power of the Tathagata cannot even be guessed at. In consequence, they would naturally lose courage and flee without even daring to glance back at the Tathagata.

Tathagata told him: "Dear Anathapindika ... I know that you have the power to display the feat of miracles; but you had better wait."

### A Seven Year Old Samaneri Cira's Address

A young samaneri of the age of seven known as Cira, who had acquired *Paṭisambhidā Nāna*, after paying obeisance, requested the Tathagata: "Most Exalted Tathagata ... may I be permitted to display

my feat of miracles?" Tathagata asked her: "Dear young daughter Cira, in what form would you display your feat of miracles?"

"Most Exalted Tathagata ... I will bring three mountains, namely, *Sineru*, *Cakkavalapabbata* and the *Himalayas* to this spot where the feat of miracles is being demonstrated, and place them in a row. I will transform myself into a Braminy duck and coming out from those mountains fly about freely without any hindrance."

Whereupon, people would ask "Who is this little girl?" and the others would answer: "This is Cira, young Samaneri of the Tathagata. This would lead the heretics to say "This is only the introductory performance, the power of only a seven-year old Samaneri. The power of the Tathagata cannot even be conjectured. In consequence, they would naturally lose courage and flee without even daring to glance back at the Tathagata.

(Such remarks are applicable to subsequent cases of similar nature and no attempt will be made to reproduce them hereafter.) The Tathagata gave the same reply, and she was not permitted to display her feat of miracle.

#### A Seven-Year Old Arahat Samanera, Cunda's Address

Next, a young seven-year old Arahat Samanera, Cunda, who had acquired *Paṭisambhidā Nāna*, after paying obeisance, made a request: "Most Exalted Tathagata ... may I be kindly permitted to display my feat of miracles?" Tathagata asked: "Dear son Cunda, in what form would you display your feat of miracles?"

"Most Exalted Tathagata ... I will shake the gold Eugenia tree (which is regarded as the victory pennant of the universe) by its stem and bring the fruits that fall to feed the audience here; and again, I will bring flowers from the coral tree *Erythrina indica* in Tavatimsa and give them to the audience here."

The Tathagata gave the same reply as before and did not permit the young novice to display his miracle.

Next, Uppalavana Theri requested the Tathagata to display her feat of miracle and the Tathagata asked her: "In what form would you demonstrate?"

"Most Exalted Tathagata ... I will create an audience extending to the length of 12 yojanas, occupying a space of 36 yojanas in circumference. I will transform myself into a Universal Monarch and surrounded by a Universal Monarch's attendants come to pay homage to you."

The Tathagata replied "I know that you have the power" but did not grant permission for demonstration as in the previous cases.

### The Venerable Maha Moggallana's Statement

Next, the Venerable Maha Moggallana Mahathera requested permission to demonstrate a feat of miracle. The Mahathera's request took the form a dialogue between the Tathagata and himself.

(Moggallana); Kindly permit me to perform a feat of miracle.  
(Tathagata); Dear Son Moggallana ... how would you demonstrate?

(Moggallana); I will reduce the Mount Meru to the size of a mustard seed, shelve it in between the fissures of my teeth and chew it in the presence of the spectators.

(Tathagata); How else would you demonstrate?

(Moggallana); The earth will be rolled up like a small thin mat and I will keep it in between my fingers.

(Tathagata); Any other way ..?

(Moggallana); Like a potter's wheel (for grinding earth) I will turn up the great earth and feed the populace here with the fertile top soil that lies under the surface.

(Tathagata); How else?

- (Moggallana); This earth will be put on the palm of my left hand, and human beings will be placed on another island continent.
- (Tathagata); Any more...?
- (Moggallana); Most Exalted Tathagata .... I will use Mount Meru like the shaft of an umbrella and placing the earth on top of it like the folds of an umbrella I will walk in space to and fro, holding both in one hand, like a bhikkhu with an umbrella in his hand.

The Tathagata told Maha Moggallana Mahathera: "Dear son Moggallana ... I know you have great power to demonstrate feats of miracles," but did not permit him to perform them. Venerable Maha Moggallana came to understand. "Permission was not given to him because the Tathagata had in mind greater and nobler miracles than his to perform." So he remained at a proper place.

The Tathagata further pointed out to the Venerable Maha Moggallana .... 'Dear son, this victory bouquet is not earmarked for you — I, the Buddha, have the power to accomplish any task that lies beyond the achievement of any other person. It is no wonder that there is no match for me when I have become a Fully Self-Enlightened Buddha. I had no equal even when I was born as an irrational creature and my parami accomplishment was still immature." At the request of Venerable Moggallana, the Tathagata propounded *Kanha Usaba Jataka* (vide Ekanipata: 3-Kurunga vagga, the ninth Jataka ).

#### Creation of a Walk

After recounting the *Kanha Usaba Jataka*, the Tathagata created a jewelled Walk extending from one end to the other of a group of ten thousand world systems, standing from east to west in a row. The ten thousand Maha Merus in the ten thousand world systems served as posts in the creation of the walk. The eastern perimeter of the walk rested on the edge of the eastern-most world system; the western

DEMONSTRATION OF TWIN MIRACLES FROM THE JEWELLED WALK 331

perimeter of the walk rested on the western end of the western-most world system. The width of the walk was twelve yojanas. The bordering surfaces on either side of the walk were golden in colour; the middle portion of the entire Walk was filled with earth of rubies, and the rafters, beams, purloins were finished with various kinds of shining gems, the roofing was of gold, and balusters lining the Walk were of gold; ruby and pearl grains were spread like sand on entire surface of the structure.

On each of the four sides of the walk, extending to 12 yojanas, was the audience of human beings. The number of human beings, devas and brahmas was uncountable. It was in the midst of such an audience that Tathagata demonstrated the Twin Miracles. The following is an excerpt, in abridged form, from the Pali Text.

(1) When there were flames of fire appearing from the upper part of the body, there were streams of water flowing from the lower part of the body; and, *vice versa*, when there were flames of fire appearing from the lower part of the body, there were streams of water flowing from the upper of the body.

(2) When there were flames of fire appearing from the front part of the body, there were streams of water flowing from the back part of the body; and, *vice versa*, when there were flames of fire appearing from the back part, there were streams of water flowing from the front of the body.

(3) When there were flames of fire appearing from the right eye, there were streams of water flowing from the left eye; and, *vice versa*, when there were flames of fire appearing from the left eye, there were streams of water flowing from the right eye.

(4) When there were flames of fire appearing from the right ear, there were streams of water flowing from the left ear; and, *vice versa*, when there were flames of fire appearing from the left ear, there were streams of water flowing from the right ear.

(5) When there were flames of fire appearing from the right nostril, there were streams of water flowing from the left nostril; and, *vice*

*versa*, when there were flames of fire appearing from the left nostril, there were streams of water flowing from the right nostril.

(6) When there were flames of fire appearing from the edge of the right shoulder, there were streams of water flowing from the edge of the left shoulder; and, *vice versa*, when there were flames of fire appearing from the edge of the left shoulder, there were streams of water flowing from the edge of the right shoulder.

(7) When there were flames of fire appearing from the right hand, there were streams of water flowing from the left hand; and, *vice versa*, when there were flames of fire appearing from the left hand, there were streams of water flowing from the right hand.

(8) When there were flames of fire appearing from the right side of the body, there were streams of water flowing from the left side of the body; and, when there were flames of fire appearing from the left side of the body, there were streams of water flowing from the right side of the body.

(9) When there were flames of fire appearing from the right leg, there were streams of water flowing from the left leg; and, when there were flames of fire appearing from the left leg, there were streams of water flowing from the right leg.

(10) When there were flames of fire appearing from each of the ten fingers and the ten toes, there were streams of water flowing from the spaces between each of the ten fingers and the ten toes; and, when there were flames of fire appearing from the spaces between each of the ten fingers and the ten toes, there were streams of water flowing from each of the ten fingers and the ten toes.

(11) When there were flames of fire appearing from some individual hairs of the body, there were streams of water flowing from the other individual hairs.

(12) When there were flames of fire appearing from some individual pores of the body, there were streams of water flowing from the other individual pores.



From these different parts of the body there was emanation of six different colours of light, namely, dark blue, gold, red, white, crimson, resplendent, in pairs, in streams or in groups.

(N.B. The Tathagata developed *Tejo Kasina Jhāna* based on Fire (*Tejo*) meditation device for the appearance of flames of fire from the upper part of the body and developed *Āpo Kasina Jhāna* based on 'Water' (*Āpo*) meditation device for the flow of streams of water from the lower part of the body. The same principle was applied in reversing the order of performance of the Twin Miracle.)

It should be borne in mind that, flames of fire did not get mixed with the streams of water and vice versa. They remained in their own orbit. Since there can be no two simultaneous thought moments in one instant of time, creation of flames of fire and creation of streams of water took two separate moments, taking turns in alternation, though they would appear to synchronize and be taking place simultaneously, in the minds of ordinary average persons. The mental creation happened in very great speed although separately. This may be attributed to (a) the moment between each state of mind of the Buddha being extremely short, (b) speed of mind, (c) having reached the climax of mastery in the attainment of Jhanas. The flames of fire and streams of water emitted from the Buddha's body went up to the summit of the universe and descended on the edge of the ten thousand world systems.

*Loka Vivarana Patihāriya*  
(the miracle of unveiling of the Universe)

Following the demonstration of the Twin Miracle, the Tathagata performed the miracle of unveiling of the Universe. This is how it was performed. The Tathagata entered the *Rūpā-vacara Kiriya Fourth Jhāna* based on white object meditation device (*odata kasina*); arising therefrom, the Tathagata made the resolution: "Let there be illumination throughout the ten thousand universes." Instantaneously, the whole universe, right from the human world up to the *Akkanitha Brahma* realm became illuminated.

All the human beings could have full view of the universes from *Catumahārijika* deva region to *Akkaniṭṭha brahma realm* even as they stayed in their own residences. They could see all the celestial beings therein going about their daily life in their many special and various planes with all the lakes, gardens, thrones, couches, tiered-roof mansions, carriages, regalia, in happy joyous mood, disporting themselves fully enjoying a luxurious life in their jeweled brilliant flying mansions of their own creation, themselves and everything radiantly bright.

In the sixteen *Rūpāvacara* planes, some radiant brahmas, still and serene as statues made of assorted jewels, were seen enjoying the tranquillity of *samapatti*, while others were seen engaged in discussing the deep and delicate essence of the Dhamma. They were clearly seen with human eyes by virtue of the Glories of the Exalted One.

In the same way, down and deep in the earth, there are eight great infernal planes, and each plane has four sides or minor regions of punishment, sixteen in all, known as *Ussada niraya*. In between every three universes is a minor region of punishment known as *Lokanta niraya*. These are regions of utter darkness. In each plane of misery, there are beings in great agony serving terms of punishment according to their deserts, depending upon the intensity of their guilt. All the people on this earth could see these planes of misery and miserable beings clearly by virtue of the glories of the Exalted One.

All the devas and Brahmas in the ten thousand universes, who had come by means of their great powers could be seen paying homage to the Tathagata with hands raised and heads bowed in adoration and with minds filled with overwhelming wonder and devotion. They uttered stanzas in praise of the splendours and glories of the Tathagata and spoke words of exuberant joy and happiness.

All those strange phenomena, such as the Twin miracles, six Radiations from the body of the Tathagata and ten thousand universes could be seen by all the people on this earth causing much delight and reverential faith.

### Miraculous display of iridescence in six colours

(1) (*NĪLA*) Dark-blue radiation: The Tathagata, who had demonstrated the Twin Miracles, had caused, by virtue of *Yamaka Patihariya Nana*, radiation from his body: the dark-blue radiation emanated from where the hair and the beard grew and the iris of the eye, with the result that the whole sky appeared to have been sprinkled and scattered with powder of antimony or covered by the butterfly pea (*Clitoria ternatea*) and the blue lotus flowers; it resembled a moving fan made of bluish-green rubies; the whole sky was flooded with the sapphire blue light.

(2) (*PĪTA*) Yellow Radiation: emanated from the skin and the sockets of the eyes and all the golden parts of the Tathagata. All the environs were brightened by a golden colour as though the whole area was poured over with liquid gold or covered by a garment of gold, or as if saffron was sprinkled and golden silk cotton flowers strewn over it.

(3) (*LOHITA*) Red Radiation: Red radiation, emanating from flesh and blood and certain parts of the eyes and other red parts of the body. The entire environmental area was brightened by the red light as though dyed with vermilion or coated over with red liquid of lac, or covered with red velvet, or as if cloaked with flowers of *Pentapeters phonecea*, and Indian coral were strewn over it. The whole area was strangely and beautifully brightened by the radiation.

(4) (*ODATA*) White Radiation: White radiation emanated from the bones, teeth, the eye tooth of the Buddha and the whites of the eyes; the whole area looked as though covered with milk flowing constantly from silver pots, or with a silver ceiling on high, silver leaves and plates of silver were laid out layer upon layer, or a silver fan in motion, or as if wild jasmine, white lotus, *streblus asper*, jasmine, Arabian jasmine were strewn over the place.

(5) (*MANJETHA*) Crimson Radiation emanated from the palms of the hands and soles of the feet, thereby beautifully brightening up the environs as though covered by a net of coral and flowers of the *barleria prionitis* species.

(6) (*PABHASSARA*) Resplendent radiations emanated from a single hair on Buddha's fore head, nails of the fingers and toes, and all parts that shone, thereby brightening up the region as though filled with many constellations of the evening star and with flashes of lightning and currents of electricity. It was indeed a wondrously beautiful scene.

(Excerpts from *Patisambhida Maggatthakatha*, Second Vol.)

The emanation of the six-hued radiance was indeed a strange phenomenon, resembling the continuous flow of streams of liquid gold, silver and ruby from a fountainhead shooting up to the roof of the universe and descending to the edge of the universe: all the thousands of universes merged into a great elegant wonderful and beautiful golden mansion as it were with beams, rafters of assorted precious jewels.

### **The Tathagata delivered discourses while walking on the Walk**

On that day, the Tathagata preached discourses in harmony with the inclinations of the people at intervals during the course of demonstration of Twin Miracles on the Walk laid, east to west, across the thousands of world systems. The Tathagata suspended performance of miracles to allow a short interval of rest for the audience who, in return, said '*Sādhu*' as a gesture of gratitude. It was during such intervals that Tathagata looked into the dispositions of each and every member of the audience, who formed a sea of beings. To this end, Tathagata observed the mental process of each one of them by the exercise of *Cittamupassanā*, noting the sixteen different mental attitudes of each individual. One may imagine the speed of mind of the Fully Self-Enlightened Buddhas.

As stated above, Tathagata performed miracles and preached the Dhamma in harmony with the disposition and inclinations of the people (beings), only after he had looked into and considered their mind process, with the result that numerous beings were emancipated from the sentient existence through realization of the Four Noble Truths. Indeed, it was the occasion of a great triumph of the Dhamma, "*Dhammābhi Samaya*."

### Creation of Buddha's own double

The Tathagata looked into the minds of individual persons amongst a great company of beings to see if there was any capable of raising questions according to his own desire (so that he might furnish the right answer, in return) but he did not find any one. So, the Tathagata created his own double, that gradually grew to two, then to three into four, into hundreds, by multiplication.

There was an exchange of series of questions and answers between himself and the created Buddhas alternately taking turns to raise questions and to supply answers. The created Buddhas took up different postures, some were standing, some lying down, some walking and some sitting, while engaging in the dialogue.

The glow and splendour of the six hues of radiations, together with flames of fire and streams of water of the twin miracles of the Buddha, and brilliancy of the created Buddhas, combined to light up the whole stretch of the sky producing a confused array of gorgeousness to an extent that lay beyond the capability of the Savakas.

A great number of brahmas and devas spoke eulogies in praise of the glory, greatness and grace of the Buddha. The whole sky rang with the songs of the celestial beings. They poured showers of celestial flowers; the music from the thousands of musical instruments of the celestial beings combined with those of the human beings rent the air: it was, indeed, as if a single grand festival of all beings was being celebrated.

### Twenty crores of men, devas and brahmas gained emancipation

Such an uncommon feat of Twin Miracles was demonstrated by the Tathagata by virtue of *Asādhāraṇa Nāna*, wisdom peculiar to the Fully Self-Enlightened Buddhas and not shared with Pacceka Buddhas and Savakas. Having had the opportunity to witness the miracles as well as listen to the preaching delivered at intervals, twenty crores of human beings, celestial brahmas and other beings were emancipated at the great gathering of the Feat of Miracles.

An opportunity will be taken here for the reproduction of a relevant Stanza composed in adoration of the attributes of the Fully Self-Enlightened Buddha, in Pali and vernacular, to promote the sense of devotional faith in the Buddha.

(N.B. Here the author reproduced a verse "*Yamakapatihāriya Vandanā*" of veneration in praise of the display of Twin Miracle. Being a repetition in Pali and Burmese of the performance of the Twin Miracle described above, we left this portion untranslated.)

### **Buddha's Ascension to Tavatimsa**

The Tathagata looked into the past, while still in the act of demonstrating miracles, as to where his predecessors usually keep up vassa after demonstrating miracles, and eventually perceived that "they all ascended to Tavatimsa to keep up vassa and to preach the Abhidhamma to the celestial being who was his mother in the previous existence. Whereupon, he decided to ascend to Tavatimsa, and no longer had he raised his right leg than the peak of Mount Yugando, with a height of forty-two thousand yojanas moved to place its peak under the soles of his right foot, spontaneously. When the left foot was lifted, the summit of Mount Maha Meru, with a height of eighty-four thousand yojanas, came underneath his left foot automatically.

(N.B. No one had seen the summits of Yugando and Maha Meru bending to place themselves beneath the feet of the Tathagata; nor did the Tathagata take unseemly strides to reach Tavatimsa. This is purely a matter of supernormal power, exclusively the domain of Fully-self Enlightened Buddhas and beyond all other beings to conceive)

The Tathagata had thus reached Tavatimsa with only two steps; Tavatimsa is on top of Mount Meru, and to reach its summit is to reach Tavatimsa itself.

### **Sakka's erroneous idea.**

As soon as Sakka saw the Buddha, he mistakenly thought : The Tathagata might take up residence on the emerald slab to keep up vassa and devas and Brahmas would be benefited by it. In such a case, no one

would even have the chance of touching the emerald slab for the duration of the lent. The emerald slab is of enormous size, being sixty yojanas in length by fifty yojanas in breadth by fifteen yojanas in height. When the Tathagata resides on it for the whole vassa, it would resemble the scene of a sparrow resting on a big flat tray, leaving a good amount of space vacant.

Having read the thought of Sakka, the Tathagata dropped his double stitched robe on the slab which became completely covered by it. Sakka was still of the idea that a good amount of space would still be wasted after the Tathagata had sat on it, because even though the robe covered the whole slab of emerald, the Tathagata's person would occupy only a small space. The Tathagata knew what was going on in the mind of Sakka and like a Maha Thera sitting on a small stool and observing ascetic practice, he sat cross-legged on the emerald slab and the whole slab remained within the space of his crossed legs.

Sakka realised his mistakes and blamed himself for not knowing his own limitations: "What kind of person, the Tathagata is, we can never fully comprehend, nor can we discern to the full the magnitude of his glorious attributes. Even of one such as the Tathagata, replete with attributes beyond our mind's power to conceive, have I conceived erroneous thoughts and ideas!" In open acknowledgment of his wrong, he paid obeisance with deep devotion and profound respect.

Many people cried and lamented as the Buddha went out of view.

In the human world, the people were struck with wonder when the Tathagata suddenly went out of view. While they were witnessing the marvellous feat of miracles, as though hundreds of thousands of suns and moons had set and disappeared and so they discussed as to the cause of the disappearance of the Tathagata from their midst.

*Gato nu cittakuṭaṃ vā  
kelāsam vā Yugandharam  
na no dakkhemu sambuddham  
lokajettham narāsabham*

The noblest leader of the three worlds, most Exalted and renowned Tathagata, the Omniscient has gone out of view even now while we were witnessing the great feat of miracles! We wonder if he has retreated far from this clamorous crowd to a place of seclusion like the Cittakuti mountain, or to the silver mountain of Kelasa or to Yugandhara?

They wept and uttered the above stanza as they were discussing among themselves.

There were other people who opined that "the Buddhas delight to dwell in seclusion. The Tathagata must have reflected, in spite of liking seclusion, I have gone and exhibited the strange and wonderful feat of miracles to this great multitude." and feeling embarrassed had retreated to a certain place of seclusion where no one could see him." They wept and uttered the following stanza:

*pavivekarato dhīro  
nayimaṃ lokam punehiti  
na no dakkhemu sambruddham  
loka jettham narāsabhaṃ*

Now that the Omniscient Tathagata has retreated to a place of solitude where disturbances of the five senses are calmed, he will never again return to this phrenetic human world, full of worldly temptations of the five human senses. The Noblest Leader of the three worlds, Most Exalted and renowned Tathagata, the Omniscient has gone out view, even while we were worshipping.

People asked the honourable Maha Moggallana as to the present residence of the Tathagata. Although he knew that the Tathagata was in Tavatimsa, he directed them to the Venerable Anuruddha for an answer so that credit might be given to that Maha Thera. When they asked the Maha Thera, they were told that the Tathagata had taken up residence on the throne of Sakka under the Kathit tree (Erythria Indica) in Tavatimsa, preaching the *Abhidamma* Pitaka to the celestial devas headed by a deva, the mother of the Tathagata in his previous existence. When asked about the return to earth of the Tathagata, they were told that he would return on the *Mahā Pavāraṇa* day (traditional



assembly of Sangha at the end of vassa) which falls due on the Fullmoon day of Thadingyut, assayujo, after preaching the *Abhidamma* Pitaka throughout the lent.

All those people decided: "we will not leave without worshipping the Tathagata" and so they erected temporary pavilions with leaves and shrubs in that locality; the sky itself served as the roof and mother earth absorbed all refuse extirpated by them, and the whole area was in a sanitary condition.

The Tathagata had given prior instructions to the Venerable Moggallana to preach to these people, and the lay devotee Cula Anathapindika was charged with the responsibility of providing them with food. He provided them with broth, food, sweet meats, betle, tobacco, tea-leaves, sweet scents, flowers, clothing and all articles of human use, with nothing wanting. As arranged in anticipation. Maha Moggallana preached them through out the period of lent.

### **Devas and Brahmas from ten thousand world systems gathered round the Tathagata**

Devas and brahmas from ten thousand world systems gathered round the Tathagata to hear the preaching of the *Abbidhamma* from the Throne of Sakka under the Erythrina Indica tree in the celestial world of Tavatimsa. There was no one among the devas and brahmas who surpassed Tathagata in appearance; indeed the Tathagata surpassed all others in comeliness.

When the most gracious and glorious Tathagata sat on the throne of Sakka, Santusitta deva descended from Tusita plane and sat respectfully in front of and on the side close to the Tathagata. He was the mother of the Tathagata in his previous existence.

### **Biographies of Ankura Deva and Indaka Deva**

Indaka deva who arrived after Santusita deva was seated on the right side close to the seat of Tathagata, and Ankura sat on the left side in close proximity to the Tathagata. Ankura deva was obliged to make room for more powerful devas and brahmas every time they arrived

until he was at a place twelve yojanas away from the Tathagata. But Indaka could retain his status quo.

### Biography of Ankura Deva

The genesis of his biography may be traced back to a dark period (that followed the extinction of Kassapa Buddha's Sasana) He was the youngest of the eleven children of prince Upasagara and princess Devagabbha. Prince Upasagara was the son of king Maha Sagara of Uttaramadhuraj country, and princess Devagabbha was the daughter of Mahakansa, ruler of *Asitanjana*, a province of *Uttarapatha* country. The eldest brother was Vasudeva and the eldest sister was Ujanadevi.

When he came of age, his elder brothers made him, the ruler of a town with a grant to receive revenues of that town, this being his share of the spoils of victory after his elder brothers made a conquest of the whole of Jabudipa with their political power. But he, in turn, surrendered the town to the eldest sister, princess Ujana. He simply asked for exemption from taxation on merchandise involved in his private trading within the borders of their provinces. He led the life of a free trader. He was happy and contented with his lot.

Once he was put into a great difficulty through shortage of provisions during his journey across a desert. There was a guardian deity of a banyan tree, who had the power to produce every necessary thing one could desire with only just a gesture of his right hand. He was a grateful deity and he fulfilled the needs of the prince and his people by producing their needs by (*a show of the finger*) pointing with his right hand, in repayment of his debt of gratitude towards the prince in a previous existence. The prince, out of curiosity, asked him about his mysterious power and he replied: "I was a poor tailor living near the house of a richman, Asahya, in the town of Roruva. Once the richman gave a great almsgiving to the needy and I gladly assisted the poor who came my way by pointing my hand towards the direction of the charity pavillion of the richman. I am thus enjoying the fruit of my voluntary labour! Thus, all things necessary for human use, such as food, clothing flow copiously, as desired, from my right hand.

In emulation of the guardian deity of the banyan tree, prince *Ankura*, on arrival back in the country of Dvaravati, as a great almsgiving, donated alms to every one in the whole of Jabudipa (ten thousand yojanas in extent): Such an act of charity bore an adverse affect on the machinery of taxation. It, indeed, paralysed the system of tax levying of any description and his elder brothers had to advise him to do charity with a sense of proportion. He shifted to the city of Dakkhinapattha in Damittha country to resume his acts of charity along a stretch of land measuring 12 yojanas, by the side of the ocean. All along that stretch he had a series of pots of alms-food resting on tripods almost touching one another. He lived to be ten thousand years, giving charity all the while and passed away. He was reborn in the celestial plane of Tavatimsa bearing the same name, Ankura.

Although Ankura had given much for such a long time, he did not get much in return, and this is because, his recipients were destitute of virtue existing during a dark period void of the Sasana, just like a farmer who had sown his seeds on barren ground. (This is a brief sketch of the life of Ankura. For full particulars, please refer to Burmese translation of Peta Vatthu Pali Text: 2 - Ubbari Vagga: 9 - Ahkura Peta Vatthu)

### Biography of Indaka Deva

It was during the time of our Gotama Buddha and while Ankura deva was enjoying the life of a celestial deva in Tavatimsa, that a young man by the name of Indaka offered, out of faith and devotion, a ladleful of rice, to Anuruddha Mahathera on his round of receiving food.

After his demise, he was born as a powerful deva in Tavatimsa endowed with the ten privileges of celestial beings in reward for his meritorious deed done during the Sasana of Gotama Buddha, like a farmer who had sown his seeds in a fertile field. He was known by the same name, Indaka. The ten privileges of celestial beings are (1) celestial objects of sight, (2) of hearing, (3) of odour, (4) of taste, (5) of touch, (6) longevity, (7) abundance of attendants or companions, (8) good appearance, (9) wealth or prosperity, (10) supremacy.

Ankura deva had to make room for more powerful devas and brahmas attending the Great festival of Abhidhamma; he had to push back right up to 12 yojanas from the Tathagata, where as Indaka deva could retain his seat without having to make room for any other celestial beings.

When the Tathagata saw the difference of status of Ankura deva and that of Indaka deva, he thought it would be a good thing to bring out, for the sake of edification of beings, the differences in the benefit accrued from deeds of merit done during the flourishing Sasana of Fully Self-Enlightened Buddhas and that from deeds of merit done during the dark period void of the Sasana. The Tathagata, therefore, asked Ankura: "Ankura.... How is it that you have to stay 12 yojanas away from me, though you had made offerings of food produced from a series of pots on tripods laid across a stretch of land 12 yojanas in extent for ten thousand years?"

*Mahādānaṃ tayā dinnam  
Ankura dighamantare  
atidūre nisinnosi  
āgaccha mama santike*

O Ankura lay devotee.... why do you have to move back and make room for powerful devas and Brahmas on their arrival at this Great *Abhidhamma* Festival, although you have to your credit merits for offering food produced from a series of pots laid across a stretch of land 12 yojanas in extent, for ten thousand years? Now you are 12 yojanas far away from me. Come now and stay in my presence!

Buddha's utterance of this interrogative stanza reached the earth and was heard by those in the world of men. (vide Dhammapada commentary)

Ankura deva's reply to Tathagata's question constitutes one and a half stanzas (6 padas) and the supplementary verse by Sangitkaraka Mahatheras constitutes half a stanza (2 padas or two lines) amounting

to two stanzas, and these were systematically recorded in the proceedings of the Buddhist Council in Pali as follow:

*Codito bhāvitattena  
Ankuro etadabravi  
kim mayham tena dānena  
dakkhineyyena sunnatam*

*Ayam so Indako yakkho  
dajjā dānaṃ parittakam  
atirocati amhehi  
cando tārāgane yatha.*

Having been questioned by the Buddha who had practised two types of meditation conducive to mental and physical composure, Ankara deva, who had done meritorious deeds during a long, dark period void of Sasana respectfully made a reply, as follows: - "Most Exalted Tathagata.... there is a kind of deed of merit done assiduously during a dark period void of the Sasana when there was not a single virtuous person deserving of offering of alms. How could my meritorious deed done for a long time during the dark period void of Sasana help me stand in good stead!!!

Although Indāka deva, who is in your presence, had offered just a ladleful of rice to Anvruddha Mahathera, with faith and devotion, he has received a reward that surpasses mine like a silvery moon that outshines a multitude of stars; and for the same reason, he has the good fortune to enjoy the ten privileges of devas who are superior to those like us who had done meritorious deeds during the dark period void of the Sasana!

Whereupon, the Tathagata asked Indaka deva "Indaka.... you have been sitting on my right side without making any move! Why don't you have to make room for powerful devas as and when they arrive, now and again? This is Indaka's reply:" Most Exalted Tathagata, my case may be likened to that of a farmer who had sown a small amount of seeds in a fertile plot, and by the same analogy, I had the good fortune to have a recipient worthy of offering" and he went ahead to utter four

stanzas in praise of qualities and qualifications (attributes) of recipients of gifts: -

*Ujjangale yatha khette  
bijam bahumbi ropitam  
na phalaṃ vipulaṃ hoti  
napi toseti kassakam*

*Tatheva danam bahukam  
dussīlesu patithitaṃ  
na phlam vipulam hoti  
napi toseti dāyakam*

Although a great amount of seeds is sown in a plot on a hillock that is rocky, salty, caustic, barren and broken, the out-put would be negligible and disappointing to the farmer.

By the same analogy, notwithstanding the vastness of offering made to a recipient who is destitute of virtue during a dark period void of the Sasana, the benefit accrued therefrom would be negligible and disappointing to the donor.

*Yathapi bahaddake khette  
bijam appampi ropitam  
sammā dhāraṃ paveccante  
phalam toseti kassakam*

*Tatheva sīlavantesu  
gunavantesu tādisu  
appakampi kataṃ kāram  
puññaṃ hoti mahaphalaṃ*

Most Exalted Tathagata..... just as the out-put of products pleases a farmer who works hard in sowing seeds in a fertile field (of first class soil) that receives a regular shower of rain every fifteen days; or (of medium class soil) that receives regular showers every ten days, (a third class soil) that receives regular shower of rain every five days:

So also, reward accrued from a meritorious deed of offering gifts to *Ariya puggalas*, who are virtuous and self-composed, will turn out to

be great and prosperous, as in the case of the out-put of the seeds grown in a fertile field.

Thus Indaka had drawn a distinction between deeds of merit done in favour of two different kinds of recipients at two different periods by way of four stanzas. Whereupon, the Tathagata said: "Ankura... it is only right and proper that one makes a choice of both the gift and the recipient: a fitting reward could only be materialized by the choice of type of gifts and the type of recipient, just as good seeds are sown in fertile soil. Of course, you could not make offerings in the manner just described since you happened to be born in a wrong period when there was no Sasana, opposed to the right period when there is Sasana. Wherefore, your meritorious deeds were not as fruitful as those of Indaka. The following four stanzas were uttered by the Tathagata for the sake of clarification: -

*Viceya dānam databbam  
yattha dinnam mahapphalam  
viceya dānam datvāna  
saggam gacchanti dāyakā*

*viceya dānam sugataapasatham  
ye dakkhiṇeyya idha jīvaloke  
etesu dinnāni mahapphalāni  
bijāni vutthāni yathā sukhette*

O Ankura deva .... offerings made to persons of virtue with faith and generosity bring about abundance of reward. Choice of recipients should be made before offerings are made. Offerings of gifts to the selected persons with faith and generosity invariably lead the donor to the world of devas.

Choice of both gift and recipient has been highly praised by a succession of Buddhas. There are virtuous persons with longevity in this world. Gifts dedicated to such persons of virtue with faith and generosity will invariably bring about wealth and happiness to the donors while in the worlds of men and deva before his attainment to the

Final Goal of Nibbana, as in the case of sowing the choicest seeds of five kinds, *bijagam*<sup>1</sup>.

The Tathagata went on to preach four more Stanzas that lead to Nibbana through the avenues of Path and Fruitional stages: -

*Tiṇadosāni Khettāni  
rāgadosā ayam pajā  
tasamāhi vīta rāgesu  
dinnam hoti mahapphalam*

There have been instances where potential seeds '*bijagam*' have been thrown on the fields full of grass and weeds. In the same way, gifts have been offered to men and devas who are destitute of virtue and full of passion, *raga*. Therefore, offering of gifts should be made to the Ariya puggalas who are void of passion, *raga* with a view to enjoyment of worldly pleasures in the planes of man and deva before attainment to the Final Goal of Nibbana.

*Tiṇadosāni Khettāni  
dosadosā ayam pajā  
tasamā hi vītadosesu  
dinnam hoti mahapphalam*

Just as there are arable lands full of grass and weeds, so there are men and devas who are destitute of virtue and full of anger. Wherefore, one should see to it that gifts are offered to those who are free from malice, so that one may enjoy the worldly life of men and devas before attainment to the final goal of Nibbana.

*Tiṇadosāni Khettāni  
mohadosā ayam pajā  
tasmā hi vītamohesu  
dinnam hoti mahapphalam*

Just as the arable lands are naturally full of grass and shrubs, so men and devas are full of delusion. So, gifts should be offered only to the

---

<sup>1</sup>*Bijagam* means, *bīja* or germ, five in number, namely root; aggregation; germ; fruit; seed; each of these is able to grow when separated from the tree.



*Ariya puggalas*, devoid of delusion, so as to bring about worldly enjoyment in the planes of men and devas before attainment to the final Goal of Nibbana, in due course.

*Tiṇadosāni Khetāni  
Icchādosā ayam pajā  
tasmā hi vīgaticchesu  
dinnam hoti mahapphalam.*

Just as arable lands are naturally full of grass and shrubs, so men and devas are naturally imbued with five kinds of desire for pleasures of the five senses. Wherefore, gifts should be offered to the *Ariya puggalas* who are void of *Iccha*; such an act of merit invariably brings about a pleasant life in the planes of men and devas and even to attainment of the final Goal of Nibbana.

At the conclusion of the discourse, Ankura deva and Indaka deva attained the fruitional state of *Sotapatti*; the discourse was of great benefit to all devas and brahmas, as v. all.

Thus ended the biographies of Akura and Indaka devas.

End of Chapter Twenty Four



## CHAPTER TWENTY FIVE

### KEEPING THE 7th. VASSA AND PREACHING THE ABHIDHAMMA AT TAVATIMSA

Having established Ankura and Indaka devas in the fruition stage of *Sotāpatti*, the Tathagata continued to stay on to keep up the 7th. *Vassa* sitting crossed-legged on the throne of Sakka in Tavatimsa and preached the *Abhidhamma*, day and night, to all those devas from ten thousand world systems, who rallied round the Tathagata, with Santusita deva at their head. He started with the 'Law of good action and its result (*Kusala Dhamma*); bad action and its result (*Akusala Dhamma*); Neutral or amoral or indeterminate action; (*Abyakata Dhamma*) teaching round the clock, like the river of the sky flowing continuously, for the duration of the lent or vassa.

(N.B. Buddhas used to deliver before noon discourses in praise of food offered; such discourses could be as long as *Dighanikāya* and *Majjhima nikāya* put together. The discourses preached to the devas and brahmas who arrived in the afternoon have the combined lengths of *Samyuttanikāya* and *Anguttaranikāya*.

This is because a thought-process of the Buddha is very fast, with very few intervening *Bhavaṅga* consciousness. And the Buddha's lips are proportionate and firmly set, the lip movements are precise. The tongue is long, slender and delicate. All these features contribute to production of a voice, so melodious at a very fast rate.

It is stated that when an ordinary average person had spoken a word, the Venerable Ananda had spoken eight words as much; when Venerable Ananda had spoken one word, the Buddha had spoken sixteen words as much. It has thus been calculated that the Buddha's rate of speech is 128 times greater than that of an average person)

Thus, with such unimaginable rapidity of rate of speech, it is no wonder that the Buddha preached the long discourses in appreciation of offering of food before noon and more lengthy discourses to devas who

arrived in the afternoon. The *Abhidhamma* that the Tathagata had preached during that lent of three months is thus endless and incomparable.

### Keeping the Body well maintained while preaching the *Abhidhamma*

In case a question such as this arises: "How did Buddha maintain his body when he was engaged in preaching the *Abhidhamma* during the whole length of vassa lasting three months", this is a brief reply. He did it by regular provision of nourishment.

The following is an extensive answer:

All the Buddhas are mindful of such matters; they usually followed the progress of time in the world of man while in the act of preaching the *Abhidhamma*. When the time came for going on the alms round, *he created a Buddha after his own image*, acting after his own manner in handling the bowl and holding the robe and with a voice like his own. He caused the created Buddha to preach the *Abhidhamma* to the extent prescribed by himself.

The Tathagata then left for the Anotatta lake, with the bowl and the robe. On his arrival at the Anotatta lake devas presented him with a twig frayed at one end. After brushing his teeth with the twith, he took a bath in the Anaotatta lake. After his bath, he stood on the slab of orpiment and donned the well-dyed double stitched robe. He then took the brown stone-bowl that was offered by the four Great devas of *Catumahārājika* deva plane, under the *Rājayatana* tree (at the seventh place of the seven places at which Gotama Buddha spent seven days each after attaining Buddhahood. Each deva had offered one bowl and the four were pressed into one with four rims by the Buddha with his hands.) The Tathagata proceeded to Uttara Kuru (north island) for receiving alms food, and on return he partook of the food on the peaceful bank of the enchanting delightful Anotatta lake. After his meal, he proceeded to the forest of Sandal trees to spend the day.

The Venerable Sāriputta, the General of the Dhamma, went to the Sandal forest to attend on the Tathagata and stood at a place that was

free from six faults . Whereupon, the Tathagata told the Mahathera: "Dear son Sāriputta... I have preached this much of the Dhamma" He would only give the gist and the guide lines, but the Venerable Sariputta, being endowed with four *Paṭisaṃbhida Nāna*, could have full grasp of the Dhamma outlined by the Tathagata , like a man who is shown the vast ocean by some one with an outstretched hand. He had the ability to understand it in a hundred, a thousand ways.

(The Tathagata returned to Tavatimsa in the afternoon to resume preaching there. With the exception of the powerful devas, no one knew that a created Buddha was preaching the *Abhidhamma* in the place of the real Buddha that the real Buddha had gone to the human world and had returned from it. The created Buddha was an exact replica in all respects: in emission of rays, in voice and in the manner of speaking.)

**The Venerable Sāriputta preached the *Abhidhamma* to  
the five hundred bhikkhus who had been bats  
in a previous existence**

The Venerable Sāriputtara having learnt the *Abhidhamma* briefly from the Buddha daily taught it in a form (neither too brief nor too elaborate) to the five hundred bhikkhu disciples under his care, who had been common bats in a previous existence.

This is a short account of their previous life: They all were little common bats dwelling in a cave, hanging down from its roof in the time of Kassapa Buddha. They heard the recitation of the *Abhidhamma* by two bhikkhus, who were well versed in the *Abhidhamma*. They had not even the slightest idea of what was meant by the waxing and waning of the moon, but, their attention was drawn to the recitation of the *Abhidhamma* by the bhikkhus pleasant and harmonious tone. (The bats had no idea of what was meant by *Abhidhamma*, the aggregates, sensation, *dhātu* (elements), Truth, not even the waxing and waning of the moon, but since the tone of the recitation by bhikkhus served as a good object of their dying consciousness (*Kamma nimitta*) for the following life, they were reborn in the plane of devas).

They enjoyed the life of devas from the time of Kassapa Buddha right up to the time of Gotama Buddha, not being born even once in the lower planes of woes. At the time of the present Buddha, they were reborn in the world of men. They witnessed the Twin Miracle, which aroused their faith and devotion and made them receive ordination under the personal supervision of the Venerable Sāriputta. Every day, the Venerable Sāriputta Mahathera taught them the *Abhidhamma* in a fairly extended form of what he had learnt from the Tathagata in an abridged version.

The preaching of the *Abhidhamma* by the Tathagata in the world of devas came to a close simultaneously with the completion of the full study of the seven books of the *Abhidhamma* taken up by the five hundred bhikkhus under the Venerable Sāriputta in the world of men.

Everyday the Tathagata informed the Venerable Sāriputta of the nature and extent of the *Abhidhamma* taught by himself and the nature and extent of the *Abhidhamma* taught by the created Buddha in Tavatimsa and instructed him to teach his five hundred disciples as necessary, before he returned to resume preaching from the point where the created Buddha had concluded.

The preaching of the *Abhidhamma* came to a close at the end of the lent, on the full moon day of Thadingyut, with the result that eighty thousand crores of devas and brahmas were emancipated through realization of the Four Noble Truths: Santusita deva, the Buddha's mother in the human world attained the fruitional state of *Sotapatti*.

#### People shifted from Savatthi to the town of Sankassa

On the ninth waxing moon of Thadingyut, people lingering within the area of thirty six yojanas went and asked the Venerable Maha Moggallana: "Venerable Sir, .... it would be right and proper that we enquire the time of the Tathagata's return (to earth); we will not go back (to our own homes) until we have paid homage to the Tathagata". The Venerable Ashin Maha Moggallana said "Very well" and dived right into the earth and went right up to the base of Mt. Meru; He willed that people should see him ascend to Tavatimsa rising from

within Mt. Meru. Then like a fine golden string threaded through a ruby he was clearly visible to the people, ascending from within the centre of the mountain to Tavatimsa.

People who saw the Venerable Maha Moggallana during the course of his ascent to the summit through the inside of the mountain measured his progress in terms of yojanas saying, "Now he has ascended one yojana, he has ascended two yojanas" etc. On arrival at Tavatimsa it was as if the Tathagata's feet rested on the head of the Venerable Moggallana who then approached the Tathagata with profound respect and addressed: "Most Exalted Lord... people will not return to their places without paying homage to you and are anxious to know the time of your descent to the world of men." The Tathagata asked "Dear son Moggallana, where at present is your elder brother the Venerable Sāriputta?" Whereupon the Venerable Moggallana replied: "Most Exalted Lord, he has been keeping vassa at Sankassa town". The Tathagata made the following reply:

"Dear son Moggallana... I will descend at the gate of Sankassa on the seventh day from now, that falls on the full moon day of Thadingyut, the time for the celebration of Maha Pavarana. The distance between the two towns is thirty yojanas, but tell the people they need not bring any food for the journey, just as they would observe the precepts and go without taking any food or provisions to the monasteries at the head of the towns and villages to listen to the preaching (sermons) on a sabbath day. The Venerable Maha Moggallana replied "Very well .... Most Exalted Lord". On arrival back on earth, he relayed Tathagata's message to the people.

#### **Descent at the gate of Sankassa town y triple stairways**

The Tathagata made known his departure to Sakka: "Lay devotee Sakka, King of Devas .... I shall be returning to the world of men" by way of formal leave taking. At the close of vassa, on the full moon day of Thadingyut. Sakka created a set of three stairways, one of gold another of ruby and another of silver, side by side, with the bases at the Gate of Sankassa town and with their upper end resting on the summit of Mt. Meru. (1) The stairway on the right hand side was

reserved for the devas, (2) the silver stairway on the left-hand side was reserved for the great brahmas, (3) the ruby stairway in the middle was exclusively for the Tathagata.

The Tathagata, on the eve of departure, stood on the summit of Mt. Meru and performed the Twin Miracle of water and fire, and looked up at the sky. The whole region right up to the realm of *Akaniṭṭha Brāhma*, appeared as an open space unobstructed and clearly visible and when he looked downwards, he could see the *Avici* at the bottom of the eight planes of misery; when he looked forward and side-ways, in all directions, thousands of world systems could be seen without any obstruction whatsoever. The strange scene was witnessed by all the devas, brahmas and human beings. Thus all the devas and brahmas could see the human beings and human beings could see the devas and brahmas.

The Tathagata caused the emanation of the six-hued rays from the body as He descended from Tavatimsa to the world of men, and there was no one in that crowd of spectators of thirty six yajanas in circumference, who did not aspire to Buddhahood when they noticed the grandeur, greatness, grace and glory of the Tathagata.

The devas came along down the gold stair-way on the right hand side. The brahmas came along down the silver stairway on the left-hand side. The Tathagata alone descended by the ruby stairway in the middle. Pancasikha deva on the right side of Tathagata, paid homage by playing his *Beluva* harp; Suyama deva also came along on the right side, fanning the Tathagata with a fan made of hair of the yaki's tail; Santusita deva came along on the same side fanning the Tathagata with a fan studded with rubies, Sakka on the right hand side also blew the *Vijayuttara*, conch shell. Devas from the rest of the world system also came along, paying homage in adoration in various ways. Brahmas came along by the silver stairway, holding the Brahma's white umbrella over the head of the Tathagata as a gesture of profound respect.

Thus the Tathagata descended to earth in the manner described above, and on arrival, stood at the gate of the town of Sankassa. Those people, who were gathered at Savatthi city, left after the morning meal, looking forward to seeing the Tathagata on Pavarana day at the end of

the lent. They eventually reached the gates of Sankassa town as quickly and effortlessly as they would going to the monastery at the head of their village.

### Preaching of Sariputta Sutta

The Venerable Sāriputtara was the first person to pay homage to the Tathagatā as soon as the Lord had set his right foot on the earth on arrival from Tavatimsa. All the rest of those present followed suit subsequently. The spot where the Tathagata had set his right foot on the earth was later regarded as a sacred place and termed Acala Cetiya-tthana.

The spot where the Tathagata set his right foot on reaching the earth, on return from Tavatimsa, at the end of the lent after the preaching the Abhidhamma, in keeping with the practice Buddhas is also regarded as one of the sacred places termed *Avijahitattāna* (i.e., Every Buddha after preaching the *Abhidhamma* in Tavatimsa during the whole of vassa, on return to earth by the three Stairways had always first set his right foot on the very spot where the triple stairways were placed at the gate of Sankassa.)

### The Four *Avijahitattāna* (four sacred places)

Here, being appropriate and to be specially noted, a brief mention will be made of the four *Avijahitattāna*. The permanent sacred sites utilized by all Buddhas for the same purposes with unchanging uniformity are known as *Avijahitattāna*. They are four in number, namely:

(1) The site of the Maha Bodhi Tree, the Victory Throne (*Aparājita throne*) where all Buddhas had conquered the Five Maras. (i.e. the very spot where there arose the *Aparājita* throne for our Gotama Buddha had been site of the *Aparājita* thrones of all Buddhas. There is no change of location.)

(2) *Isipatana, Migadāya* where our Gotama Buddha preached the *Dhammacakka*, the first Discourse: (This is the location where all the



Buddhas had also preached the *Dhamma Cakka*. It is not preached at any other place).

(3) The spot on which the Buddhas usually first set their right foot on their return from Tavatimsa after preaching the *Abhidhamma* there (The gate of Sankassa town is that sacred place in our Gotama Buddha's time.)

(4) the location of Buddhas' bed-stead (where the four legs of Buddhas' bed-steeds usually rested without change.) The Scented Chamber of Gotama Buddha in the monastery of Jetavana was the site of where his bed-stead lay).

As regards (the monasteries of the Buddhas, they differ in size due to the circumstances prevalent at the time. To clarify:

(a) VIPASSI BUDDHA: A plot measuring one *yojana*, donated by a rich man, Punabba Sumitta, at a cost of gold bricks placed edge to edge on the surface of the plot.

(b) SIKHI BUDDHA: A plot measuring three *gavutas*, donated by richman Sirivatta, at a cost of gold bars touching one another throughout the plot.

(c) VESSABHU BUDDHA: A plot measuring half a *yojana*, donated by richman Sotthija, at a cost of gold-cups (gold teeth of harrow) touching one another throughout the surface of the plot.

(d) KAKUSAN BUDDHA: A plot measuring one *gavuta*, donated by richman Accuta, at a cost of gold blocks (moulded like elephants' feet) touching one another through out the plot.

(e) KONAGAMANA BUDDHA: A plot measuring half a *gavuta*, donated by richman Ugga, at a cost of gold bricks placed edge to edge throughout the surface of the plot.

(f) KASSAPA BUDDHA: A plot measuring twenty *ussaba*, donated by richman Sumangala, at a cost of gold tortoise figures placed side by side throughout the plot.

(g) GOTAMA BUDDHA: A plot measuring eight pais, donated by richman Suddatha (a) Anattapindika, at a cost of gold coins touching edge to edge through out the plot.

The above passages are excerpts from *Buddhavamsa Athakatha* and *Vinaya Cula Vagga Athakatha*.

Although the size of the location of the monasteries differs through the passage of time, the location of the Buddha's Scented Chamber remained the same without any change (The above is a short account of the four sacred places (*Avijahitathāna*)).

**Devas and men are filled with adoration for the fully  
Self-enlightened Buddhas**

As stated before, the Venerable Sāriputtara approached the Tathagata after he first set his right foot at the head of the Stairway, paid homage to the Lord and addressed him: "All the devas and laity here are filled with adoration for you so much that they all long for Buddhahood". Whereupon the Tathagata replied: "Dear Son Sariputta, It is true that all the brahmas, devas and men love and revere the Buddhas for their being great, gracious and glorious" and then uttered the following stanza preparatory to preaching a discourse:

*Ye jhānappa sutā dhīra  
nekkhammupasame raihā  
devāpi tesam pihayanti  
Sambuddhānam satīmatam*

Dear son Sāriputta .... All the Fully Self-Enlightened Buddhas have gained mastery over Jhana practices in five ways and they delight in these Jhana absorptions. They also abide usually in *phalasamāpatti* that has as its object the Absolute Truth of Nibbana, free from all dukkha. Even the devas and brahmas of the celestial regions have made the remark, with great adoration and esteem for those Buddhas, who are always abiding in full mindfulness, "How great would it be, if we who have had this rare opportunity were to become Buddhas?"

According to Dhammapada commentary, thirty crores of brahmas, devas and men were emancipated at the conclusion of the discourse. Five hundred disciples of the Venerable Sariputta attained Arahatship as a result.

### **The Tathagata revealed the attributes of the Venerable Sāriputta**

While still standing at the head of the Stairway, the Tathagata contemplated thus:

"People who gathered here at this assembly do know that Moggallana Thera is the greatest in the matter of (Jhānic) powers; Anuruddha Thera in supernatural vision; Punna Thera is a celebrated Teacher in Dhamma; but no one knows the attributes of Sariputta Maha Thera. Therefore the Tathagata thought it would be proper to bring the knowledge and wisdom of Sāriputta to the limelight in some way or the other". The Tathagata asked Sāriputta questions relating to the problems of ordinary average peoples (*putthujana*), those of *Ariya puggalas* (*Sekkhās*) in the three lower Paths and Fruitional stages, and those of *Arahats* (*Asekkhas*), in the presence of all those present at the time. The Maha Thera gave prompt answers to each and every question, stage by stage, concerning ordinary average persons, *Ariya puggalas* in the three lower Paths and Fruition and the *Arahats*, the perfected ones, with the result that all those present came to understand the Maha thera's state of exaltation in wisdom!

### **Expounding of *Parosahassa Jataka***

The Tathagata then proceeded to propound thus: "Sariputta has not exceeded the average level of intelligence only now, but he had also excelled others in the matter of knowledge and wisdom", in the past existences" making a reference to *Ekata Nipatta*, *Litta Vagga*, and *Jataka Commentary*. He then related the *Parosahassa Jataka* in its abridged form.

Once upon a time, there lived in a forest at the foot of a hill more than one thousand hermits who lived on herbs, fruits and roots. Once their teacher fell sick, and the most senior disciple went out in search of

medicine, leaving instructions with his juniors to attend on their teacher with due care and diligence.

The great teacher passed away before the return of the senior disciple. Upon a request being made by the disciples regarding *Jhāna samāpatti* on the verge of his demise, the old sage told them '*Natthi kiñci*' meaning, there is none implying the third *Jhāna*, *Akiñcaññayatana*. Any one wishing to abide in the third *Arūpa Jhāna* known as *Akiñcaññayatana Jhāna* termed '*Jhana Samapatti*' must first and foremost contemplate on the concept of 'non-existence' of the first *Arūpa Jhāna* repeatedly. This in fact was what the great master had in his mind when he said '*natthi Kinca*'.)

But the disciples had missed the point and utterly misunderstood the great master and looked down upon him as one who had not attained any stage of *Jhāna Samāpatti* and they did nothing about the burial rites concerning his remains.

((N.B. The great sage was accomplished in *Akiñcaññayatana Jhāna* (by which incorporeal Brahma realm is attainable) but when asked by his disciples he simply said '*Natthi kiñci*'; and passed away to be reborn in *Ābhasara* (corporeal) brahma realm attainable by the second *rupavacara Jhana*; this is because the four *Arūpa brāhma* realms are not befitting of the Bodhisattas, *Abhabba*.)

On his return with suitable medicine, the senior disciple was told that the great teacher had passed away. He asked his juniors if they had asked him any thing. They replied "Aye .... we had; '*Natthi kiñci*'" was his reply, and he must, therefore, have gone without attaining any jhana what so ever."

The senior disciple explained to them thus: "You have no idea of what the great master meant to say : our great teacher is endowed with *Akiñcaññayatana* the third *Arūpa* stage of *jhāna*." He thus gave them a correct interpretation again and again to convince them.

But his correct answer simply fell on deaf ears. When the great teacher, the Bodhisatta then an *Ābhasara* Brahma, came to know about the unhappy situation, he contemplated that he should reveal the truth by removing the doubt entertained by those ignoramuses, who were

groping in the dark. Therefore, the great sage descended from the *Ābhasara brāhma loka* to the world of men, poising himself high above the roof of the hermitage with great power, and wishing to praise the senior disciple's wisdom uttered the stanza:

*Parosahassampi samā gatānam  
kandeyyūṃ te vassasataṃ apāññā  
ekova seyyo puriso Sapañño  
yo bhāsitassa vijānāti attham.*

Those without any knowledge may cry for a hundred years (they will have no idea what soever of what their master meant to say): the only person, among an assemblage of over a thousand persons, capable of understanding what was meant, is worthy of praise."

The great teacher returned to the world of brahmas after preaching the discourse. All the hermits attained *jhāna samāpatti* as a result of his visit, and they were reborn in *brāhmaṇa loka* after death.

In winding up the discourse, the Tathagata revealed that Sariputta was then the senior disciple and he was the Great Brahma in the realm of *Ābhassara brāhama loka*.

(This is an abridged form of *Parosahassa jātaka*; for full particulars please refer to *Ekataniṣṭha jātaka vatthu*)

### Expounding of Sāriputta Sutta

After the Tathagata had preached the preceding discourse, The Venerable Sāriputta put forward a questionnaire concerning suitable and desirable place (abode), lawful resort (for alms), practice (meditation), etc. for the benefit of his disciples undergoing training under his personal supervision. These were presented to the Tathagata in eight stanzas and the Tathagata gave a series of answer comprising thirteen stanzas<sup>1</sup>.

---

<sup>1</sup>They are lengthy and exhaustive, and it is proposed to reproduce them here in condensed form only. For full particulars, please refer to Sutta Nipata Pali Text.

Sāriputta Sutta  
(Abridged form)

I, Sariputta, have hitherto never seen or heard of a Great Sage of a sect, who had come into his mother's womb from the celestial abode of Tavatimsa, who speaks so pleasantly and is endowed with the power of performing miracles, with all the greatness, graciousness and glory of a Fully Self-Enlightened Buddha.(1)

All the brahmas, devas and men have seen him truly as one who has dispelled the darkness of delusion, as one who is peerless and unique enjoying the calm state of jhana, and the serene and tranquil state of Nibbana: All the brahmas, devas and men have looked upon him as the possesor of Five Eyes<sup>2</sup>.(2)

Most Exalted Tathagata... who is free from the two defilements of clinging and wrong view, one who is not to be moved or shaken by worldly vicissitudes, one who has never tried to attract the attention of people by trickery through performing miracles, who has come to the gate of the city of Sankassa as the Sage of a Sect .... I, Sariputta, have come to this place with the object of presenting to you problems for favour of solution in the interest of my disciples.(3)

How many fearful and offensive sense-objects are there that are harmful to a noble bhikkhu who retires through fear and loathing of the grave dangers of birth etc., to the quiet base of a tree, a cemetery, a secluded couch or a short-legged bedstead in a cave.(a\_4\_5)

How many kinds of danger are there to suppress which a noble bhikkhu may encounter as he speeds his way to the strange yet unattained land of Nibbana in his lonely forest hermitage on the outskirts of a town or village?. (b\_6)

(c) What are the words which a noble bhikkhu may speak? (d) What are the lawful resorts for a noble bhikkhu? (e) What are the practices a noble bhikkhu should develop with intensity as meditation ? (c,d,\_7)

---

<sup>2</sup>(1) *Five Eyes*: *Maṅsa*-human eye, (ii) *Dibbacakkhu*, celestial eye, (iii) *Pañña-Vipassana* (Four Noble Truths), (iv) *Samanta*, All seeing eye, (v) *Buddha cakkhu*.

How should a noble bhikkhu observe the precepts with steadfastness, mature judgment and clear mindfulness to discard the dust of defilement, just as a gold smith purifies gold? (f\_8)

(Thus the Venerable Sariputta presented eight stanzas made up of three stanzas in praise of the attributes of the Buddha, and five regarding the practice which his five hundred bhikkhu should observe.)

Dear son Sariputta .... there are two things that a person of good birth going after Path knowledge, who retires to a place of seclusion through fear of transient existences, ought to know: (a) the way to live in peace and tranquility and (b) the practice to be cultivated. I will preach you these two things as I know them from practical knowledge and not by inference.(i)

Dear son Sariputta .... a person of intellect and mindfulness should not get frightened or be shaken when he comes into contact with five kinds of dangers, such as, (1) gadfly, mosquito, fly, (2) snake, scorpion, centipede, mice, (3) burglars and robbers (4) quadrupeds, such as lions, leopards and tigers, (5) People outside of the Teaching without faith in the three Gems who cause inconvenience by their annoying antagonistic views and questions. One should not get alarmed or frightened by those five kinds of terrible objects, just described.

(It will be noted that, in answer to question (a) five kinds of dangers are given, namely, (1) gadfly, mosquito, (2) snake scorpion, centipede, mice, (3) burglars and robbers, (4) quadrupeds, such as, lions, leopards, tigers, (5) those heretics who caused inconvenience by their senseless antagonistic views)

Further, a noble bhikkhu in striving for the attainment of Nibbana by following a good true path should surpress the following five "internal enemies" in addition to those just described. (2-3)

(1) Disease, (2) hunger, (3) cold, (4) heat, and when the noble bhikkhu experienced inconvenience though contact with any of these dangers he must resist or put up with them as such sensations and ailments are conducive to the arising of the ten modes of wrong

conducts (by deed, word and thought); he should protect himself by means of Earnest Effort (*Sammappadhāna*).

(In answer to the question (b) the Tathagata made mention of these 5 kinds of complaints viz., (1) disease, (2) hunger, (3) cold, (4) heat and (5) a group of ten modes of wrong conduct arising through them.

Having dealt with (a) and (b), the Tathagata proceeded to deal with (c), (d), (e), and (f) in nine stanzas as enumerated below.)

A noble bhikkhu must always refrain himself from stealing and lying; he must wish for the well being of both (i) those who still have taints of craving (*tasa*) and (ii) those who have already eradicated craving (*thavara*); he must dispel all the ten modes of wrong deeds, in short, the group of unwholesome acts, as they are the associates of Mara. (5)

(Four modes of moral conducts are prescribed in this verse, viz, Avoidance of stealing and lying, praying for the well being of all fellow men and abandonment of immoral conduct.)

A noble bhikkhu must not yield to anger (*Kodha*) and unrestrained conceit (*atimāna*); the root causes of these two unwholesome factors are six in number viz: Ignorances (*avijjā*), wrong attitude (*manasikāra*), self-conceit (*asamimāna*), lack of sense of shame (*ahīri*), lack of dread of evil consequences of misdeeds (*anottappa*), and distraction (*uddhacca*). These root causes must be up-rooted or extirpated: In addition sense of affection (liking) and hatred (disliking) must be overcome by a state of balance of the mind or equanimity. (6)

(By this, four practices are described, namely: anger and conceit must be discarded; and the six root causes of these must be removed; and objects of affection and hatred must be avoided (by means of equanimity)

A noble bhikkhu is required to cultivate comprehension and develop the ten contemplations. With the force of joyful satisfactions, *pīṭi*, developed thereby, the afore said enemies, both internal and external must be abandoned.



(This is Buddha's exhortation for expulsion or destruction of internal and external enemies shewn in (a) and (b) by means of contemplation of ten (*Anusati*) recollections<sup>3</sup>: *Pīṭi* arising from meditation should be utilized as a means of developing forbearance. This is a means of overcoming those forces of enemy)

One should overcome disinterestedness in a hermitage of seclusion and development of meditation by such means of expediency to ensure full measure of success: Such means of expediency should also be adopted in defeating four causes of crying enumerated below:(7)

#### Four causes of lamentation

(1) What kind of food shall I have to eat today is that rice, or barley cake, or dinner-rolle or fish, or meat? (2) At what place shall I have to eat (at the palace of a king, or the house of a brahmin or of a richman)?, (3) I had to sleep miserably last night (on a piece of plank, or on a coarse mattress, or a piece of leather or a heap of grass); (4) In what kind of luxurious place shall I have to sleep to night (on an ornamented bed, or a fourleged bed-stead)?: These four kinds of reflections or speculations are known as four causes of lamentation.

A bhikkhu cultivating the practice of *sila*, *samadhi* and *panna* being free from impediments (*Paḷibodha*), such as, attachment to clan, sect, shelter and requisites should abandon the worries connected with food and with matters relating to lodging: these four types of worries should be given up. (8)

(A noble bhikkhu is apt to cry under pressure of such anxieties or worries; he is therefore required to cut off all four impediments, such as, attachment to clan or the donor, members of his sect, dwelling place and requisites.)

---

<sup>3</sup>The ten Contemplations or reflections on the *Buddha*, the *Dhamma*, the *Sangha*, *Sīla*, *Cāga*, *Devatā*, *Marana*, *Kāyagatā*, *Ānapāna*, *Upasamāna*. (For details, vide *Visuddhimagga*).

When a bhikkhu acquires food and robe lawfully at proper times, he should have the sense of judgment or moderation in accepting and using them with a view to promoting the sense of contentment.

(As regards the matter of judgment or moderation, a bhikkhu should take into consideration the quantity of objects for offering, the extent of donor's intention the extent of one's requirement. In case where the quantity of objects for alms outweighed the intention of the donor, the donee should be content with a limited amount of alms. When the amount of alms available is comparatively smaller than what the donor has in mind to offer, the donee should still receive only limited amount of alms. Where the amount of alms is large enough to satisfy the wishes of the donor to offer large amount of alms, the donee should still receive just enough to meet his own requirements. Hence the term (*Paṭiggaha mataññuta*) receiving just the amount required: Utilization or consumption of the four requisites by way of retrospection is known as *Paribhogamataññuta*).

A noble bhikkhu, having guarded himself against unwholesome states by observing the two sets of observance in respect of receiving and utilization of the four requisites, should enter the towns and villages with agreeable deportment of bodily posture, and avoid the use of harsh words even in dealing with those who have calumniated him. (9)

(It means that a noble bhikkhu (i) should receive and utilize alms in accordance with the two modes of moderation, (ii) should move about with proper deportment in towns and villages, and, (iii) should refrain himself from the use of harsh words even when one deals with those who had calumniated him.)

A noble bhikkhu should keep his eyes cast downwards, should not wander round here and there, should endeavour to attain *jhāna* that has not been attained, to acquire five kinds of mastery over *jhāna* that has been attained; should sleep mindfully only for four hours in the middle watch of the night, (and spend the rest of the time, sitting or walking while observing the precepts incumbent on a bhikkhu): through such

activities equanimity is developed by means of the Fourth *jhana*, the mind being well composed, sensuous thoughts (*kāmma vi akka*), sensuous perceptions (*kāma sañña*) and restless movement of hands and feet termed *kukkucca* are restrained. (10)

Any instruction given by one's preceptor, "this is not right and proper", should be noted regarded with sincere delight and gratitude. Ill will or unfriendly attitude towards one's associates should not be entertained; it should be eradicated as a thorn is eradicated. Only faultless speech should be made, never talking out of the bounds of discipline (*sīla*, *samādhi*, *pañña*) or beyond the limits of time. (One will be liable to be criticized and reproached for breach of precepts and moral conduct, for wrong view, wrong mode of livelihood. It is, therefore necessary to refrain from such immoral conducts even in thought, not to say of physical or verbal acts.) (11)

Dear Sariputta .... Besides this, in this world, there are five kinds of dust, to wit, attachment to visible form, attachment to sound, (*Sadda rāga*) attachment to smell gāṇḍa (*rūpa rāga*), attachment to taste (*rasa rāga*), attachment to touch (*phoṭṭhabba rāga*) all such attachments should be removed by the practice of *sīla*, *samādhi* and *pañña* with mindfulness. Constant practice will enable the bhikkhu to overcome the five dusts. (12)

(Five kinds of dust should be done away with by observance of the three training precepts; only those who observe these precepts can overcome these five kinds of dust, no one else can do so.)

Once these five kinds of dust are done away with, the bhikkhu will no longer take delight in the five objects of sensual pleasures. That bhikkhu with mindfulness, emancipated from the grip of hindrances, contemplates at appropriate time, on the conditioned as impermanent, unsatisfactory and unsubstantial (non-soul) with resolute steadfastness. His mind will become composed, and will penetrate through the dark mass of defilements. (13)

The Tathagata has thus answered the questions of Sariputta with a view to pave the way, stage by stage, that invariably leads to the

Fruitional Stage of Arhattaship. Five hundred disciples of Sariputta attained *Arahattaphala* at the conclusion of the discourse, and thirty crores of devas and men were emancipated through realization of the Four Noble Truths.

### **Buddha was calumniated by a female wandering ascetic named Cincamanavika**

As stated in the preceding paragraphs, the Tathagata, after emancipating five hundred disciples of the Venerable Sariputta and thirty crores of devas and men through realization of the Four Noble Truths, proceeded to Savatthi to take up residence at the Jetavana monastery and to resume preaching Dhamma to rational beings who came there.

It was at that time, a lowly, wily, female wandering ascetic by the name of Cincamanavika made a malicious, slanderous charge against the Buddha. The following is an account of that calumnious attack.

The number of disciples of the Tathagata increased by leaps and bounds, like a rising tide, during the first twenty years of the Dispensation, termed *Pathama Bodhi* or The First Period of Enlightenment. And the number of men, devas and brahmas who attained the Four Stages of Fruition (*Ariya bhūmi*) also increased with time; and the attributes of the Tathagata such as *Araham* spread right up to the roof of the world; the volume of offerings made to the Tathagata and the Sangha grew so much while the power of sectarians waned and the offerings made to them dwindled to a vanishing point just like the diminishing glow of fire flies as the sun rises up in the morning.

The heretics stood at road junctions and made attempts to induce or court the people to make offerings to them, saying:

"Lay devotees ... Bhikkhu Gotama is not the only one who has attained Buddhahood; we have attained Buddhahood, as well! ... Is merit gained by making offerings to the Recluse Gotama only? You can gain merit by making offerings to us as well. Therefore, you should make offerings to us also."

Their appeals were of no avail, and they, therefore, assembled for a secret meeting "to devise ways and means to calumniate Gotama, so that people might not make offerings to Recluse Gotama through lack of respect and esteem".

At that time, there lived in Savatthi, a wandering female ascetic by the name of Cincamanavika. She was so named because she was born of a moisture-laden tamarind tree; hence she was popularly known as 'damsel who takes conception in a tamarind tree, Cincamanavika'. She is said to be as pretty and gracious as a celestial maiden and her body emitted radiation that spiralled around her body.

As the discussion was in progress, a cruel, stupid sectarian put forward a plot to slander the Tathagata and bring about his destruction by employing Cincamanavika as an instrument to achieve their selfish ends. This plot was approved and accepted as an effective device for cutting off of the flow of gifts to the Recluse Gotama.

When the wandering ascetic woman, Cincamanavika went to their parks and stood before them in a worshipping posture, she was totally ignored by the sectarians. She was anxious to know what was held against her. She therefore addressed them: "Good Sirs,... I worship you three times, what wrong have I done to you and what is my offence? what is the cause of your silence?"

This was their censorious reply: "Sister Cincamanavika... don't you know that the Recluse Gotama has been going round and doing harm to us by depriving us of our gifts?"

Whereupon, Cincamanavika said: "I know nothing about this; what can I do for you in this matter?" They gave her this express reply: "Cincamanavika .... if you have our welfare at heart, you might calumniate the Recluse Gotama by using your personal charm as an instrument to destroy his fame, honour and gifts." She was thus charged with the task of performing a dirty job.

#### Cincamana's wily tactics

Cincamana pledged boldly: "Very well; good Sirs, ... you may rest assured that I will accomplish the task entrusted to me. Have no more

worries over this matter", and left the park of the sectarians. She then started to bring her wily tactics into play. She dressed herself in a costume that was as red as the color of a flying insect and made her way towards the Jetavana monastery with a bouquet in her hand, about the time when people came out of the monastery of Jetavana after hearing the discourses. People casually asked her: "Where are you headed for?", she replied "What would you gain when you know my destination?", arousing people's suspicion on her. She actually found her way into the parks of heretics in the proximity of Jetavana monastery and spent her nights there. At the time people came out of the city of Savatthi to pay an early homage to the Tathagata, she prepared herself to look as if she had spent the night at the Jetavana monastery and was making her way back to Savatthi. When asked as to where she had passed the night, she gave a similar answer: "What would you gain when you know where I slept last night?" to create suspicion in their minds.

She went on keeping the same routine everyday. After a lapse of one and a half month she began her campaign of imputation by replying, "I passed the night with the Recluse Gotama in his Scented Chamber". That caused the ordinary people to wonder whether she might be speaking the truth. Some three or four months later, she simulated pregnancy by tying her chest with rags and covering herself with red dress. And she started telling people that she got pregnant by the Recluse Gotama, an accusation wrongly believed by unthinking people.

#### **Foul accusation in front of four kinds of audience**

After a lapse of eight or nine months, Cincamanavika tied a disc of wood that was cut into the shape of half of an egg round her body and wore a red costume to assume the form of a pregnant woman. She struck her hands and feet with the jaw bones of a cow to appear like a worn out fatiguing expectant mother. She then made her way one evening to where the Tathagata was sitting on the Throne of Dhamma and preaching to four kinds of audience. She stood right in front of the Tathagata and made the following malicious accusation:-

"Big Recluse, .... you have been calmly preaching to the people keeping compressed lips! As for me, I have become an expectant mother through association with you. You have a heart to remain without thinking about arrangements for confinement or for collection of butter-oil. If you don't care to do such things yourself, you should have charged King Kosala, or Anathapindika or to Visakha, the donor of the monastery with the task to do the needful for me. You have remained irresponsible and callous towards your own blood, but you know how to amuse yourself by sensual pleasures".

Cincamana thus levelled a malicious accusation against the Tathagata in the presence of a huge congregation like a stupid woman trying to destroy the moon with a lump of faece in her hand! Whereupon, the Tathagata suspended his preaching and, like a lion King, refuted her charge with a raised voice:-

"Sister Cincamana .... Only you and I know whether what you have just said is true or false."

Cincamana was not to be daunted, she made another wave of attack by these words: "Truly enough, big Recluse .... this is a matter between you and I only- this advanced stage of pregnancy".

### **Sakka descended to solve the Problem**

Whereupon, the emerald throne of Sakka began to grow warm causing the Sakka to deliberate as to its cause; Sakka perceived that "Cincamana had made a malicious allegation against the Tathagata". Thinking, "I will go and thresh out the matter myself in the presence of the people", he came down accompanied by four devas to where the Tathagata was preaching. Those four devas transformed themselves into four rats and got the strings on the woodendisc bitten off, and as the wind blew off Cincamana's clothes upwards, the woodendisc dropped right on top of her ten toes, breaking them severely.

### **Cincamana swallowed up by a fissure appearing in the earth**

All those present condemned her and spat on her; holding stones, spears and sticks, they dragged her out of the precincts of the

monastery. Once she was out of sight of the Tathagata, the earth split into two to claim her body. She was soon wrapped up in the flaming tongues of *Avici* fires that swallowed her into the bottom of the great Hell, Maha Avici.

When the people saw the heretics in their true colours, they made less offerings to them, while prospects for the Tathagata to receive alms grew without limitation.

### Propounding of Mahā Paduma Jataka

On the following day all the bhikkhus assembled in the Central Hall and were discussing the topic of the day: "Friends ... Cincamana had been ruined for her false allegations against the most glorious Tathagata, who is worthy of Homage that the world could make. The Tathagata went to their place and asked: "Bhikkhus... what is the subject of your discussion?" On being informed by the bhikkhus that they were discussing the fate of Cincamana, the Tathagata recounted her past story making reference to *Mahā Paduma Jataka* saying "This is not the first time that she had made false allegation against me and suffered in consequence there of." and proceeded to propound the Maha Paduma Jataka.

### Mahā Paduma Jataka of Dvadassa Nipata

Once upon a time King Brahmadata ruled the country of Baranast, when Bodhisatta took conception in the womb of the queen. When he was born, he was named Mahā Paduma prince, as his face resembled a newly blossomed lily of *paduma* species.

When he came of age, he was sent to Takkasila to learn the arts and crafts; and on completion of studies, he returned to his country, to find that his mother had passed away and that his father had made another woman his chief queen. He was formally declared as the Crown Prince, the sole heir to the throne.

Sometime afterwards, the King had to go to border areas to suppress insurrections; he told the queen; "Chief queen .... I am going to border areas to suppress insurrections and you shall remain in this royal palace



with ease and comfort". Whereupon, the queen said: "I do not like to stay behind; I should like to accompany you to the front line". The King explained to her the dangers of battle fields: "Chief queen... you had better stay in the royal palace until my return without any feeling of melancholy through lonesomeness; I will leave instructions with the Crown Prince to attend on you with due diligence". The King then went to the disturbed areas, and returned after driving away the rebels, and rehabilitation of the effected areas, but he did not immediately enter the city on arrival; he stayed in a temporary accommodation outside the City for a time.

When the Boddisatta, Crown Prince, Mahā Paduma heard of the news of his father's return, he made arrangements to welcome his father by decorating the city and setting the palace in order. Having done all this, he entered the apartment of the Chief Queen all alone. On seeing the amazing beauty of the prince, the chief queen felt an intense attraction towards the prince. The prince paid his respect to the queen and asked: "O Royal mother ... how can I be of help to you?" The queen replied: "Don't you call me 'mother', and so saying she got up and held the prince by the hands and ordered him 'to get up on to the bed'. 'The two of us will enjoy sexual pleasure to the full before the King returns."

As one who treasured his morality, the prince gave a stiff reply:-

"O! Royal queen mother ... you have become my mother ever since the demise of my mother. You are a married woman; I have never in all my life looked at a woman with a legal husband with concupiscence, and how would a self-restrained person like me commit such a hideous crime in collusion with you?"

After making three or four vain attempts to make the prince yield to her temptations, the queen resorted to threatening him, asking him "Won't you obey order?"; "Aye .... I won't" replied the prince boldly and bluntly. Whereupon, she made it plain to him: "I will lodge a false allegation against you with the King, in order that he broke up your head into pieces". You may slander me as you like but I won't yield to your temptations" He left her chamber after putting her to shame.

The queen, being conscious of her own guilt, made up her mind to save her own skin by lodging a false allegation against the prince with the King without delay, as her life was at stake lest the prince might reveal her secrets before she could see the King. She got her body scratched all over with her own fingers and lay on her bed without taking any food, feigning illness. She instructed her attendants how they should answer the King when he asked them about her, in due course.

The king entered the City after circumambulating the city and sat on the throne. When he could not see the queen, he enquired about her and her attendant reported that she was not well. He went to her chamber and asked: "Darling queen .... what ails you?". She pretended not to hear his words for two or three times and at last she made this reply "O King, what has made you to press for an answer that I loathed to give; please keep silent to save me from shame; my case is quite different from those of the other married women" On hearing such an insinuation, the King asked her; "Do tell me at once who has done wrong to you and I will break off the head of the criminal" in a severe tone. In response to the King, she asked this question: "O King .... under whose charge was this city kept when you left?" "It was left under the charge of my son, the Crown Prince" said the King. The queen then started to tell her fabricated story to calumniate the Crown prince in this way" Your Majesty... the very person you had left in charge of the city, Prince Paduma, entered my room all alone and tried to make me yield to his temptations, and when I beseeched him meekly not to offend his mother, he retorted rudely: "Is there any other King than myself .... I will keep you in house and enjoy sexual pleasure to the full with you. When I refused to yield to him, he pulled me by my hair, beat me all over my body and then throwing me down on the floor, he outraged me and left my chamber".

#### **The King, out of anger, ordered the execution of the Prince Mahā Paduma**

The King lost sense of reasoning through anger like a venomous cobra and ordered the execution of the prince. The executioners entered the residence of the prince, beat him most severely, bound his

hands at the back and brought him out of his house with a ring of red-primrose round his neck, like a prisoner given the life sentence.

The prince knew that the queen was at the bottom of the whole affair. He followed the executioners complaining "O executors... I have done nothing against the King, I am innocent". The whole city was shocked and tensed with fear, and the citizens exchanged views among themselves "The King has misunderstood the prince Mahā Paduma, and ordered his execution on the strength of his wife's false allegation". They rallied round at the feet of the prince, crying and sobbing aloud: "O Crown prince... the kind of sentence passed upon you is not just and reasonable". They kept on weeping and crying at the top of their voices around him.

When the executioners had brought the prince before him, the King, in a fit of temper, at once ordered the execution of the prince, by throwing him into a steep chasm (usual place where robbers were usually thrown down) with his head down. In passing the order, the King remarked that, the prince, though his own son, was guilty of impersonating him and offending the queen. Whereupon, the Crown prince protested: "Royal father... I am not guilty of such allegations... please do not cause my destruction on the strength of your wife's allegation". But his appeal fell on the deaf ears of the King.

The citizens were not alone to weep over the fate of the prince but sixteen thousand courtiers, also wept muttering "Darling son .... Mahā Paduma .... it is a great pity that such a punishment has been meted out to you for no fault of your own". All the princes, princesses, ministers, brahmins, richmen, all rank and file made joint appeal to the King: "O Your Majesty .... Mahā Paduma has peerless character, is a righteous heir to the throne, both by right and by tradition; do not cause the destruction of the heir to the throne on the strength of your wife's allegation without probing into the matter in the name of justice, is our prayer".

Their appeal was made in seven stanzas as follows:-

(1) *Nadatthā parato dosam  
anumthulani sabbasso  
issaro panaye dandam  
sāmaṃ appatīvekkhiya*

Noble King .... a Ruler should not order the destruction of life and limbs of an accused without personal knowledge; without investigation into the allegation against the accused.

(N.B. In the time of Maha Samata (One raised to the status of a Supreme Ruler by the people) there was no order or penalty exacting more than one hundred pieces of money; no penalty demanding the destruction of life and limbs beyond corporeal punishment or banishment. Punishment of more severe forms were adopted by cruel rulers at later times. Therefore, the ministers had made the above appeal with reference to the said precedence.)

(2) *Yo ca appatīvekkhitvā  
dandam kubhati khattiyo  
sakaṇṭhukam so gilati  
jaccandhova samakkhikam.*

A noble King, who happened to cause the destruction of life and limbs of an accused without proper investigation being made into the allegation, is likened to a person born blind who had swallowed a fly-contaminated, unwholesome food with attendant troubles; such an act is tantamount to partaking of food enmeshed with thorns.

(3) *Adaṇḍhiya dandhayati  
daṇḍhiyañca adaṇḍhiyaṇ  
andhova visamaṃ maggaṃ  
na jānāti samāsamaṃ.*

A King who happened to punish an innocent person who does not deserve any punishment, and has allowed a guilty person to escape unpunished, through power-intoxication, is considered to have taken an uneven path full of dangers, like a person, born blind. He has no discrimination between the even path of ten meritoriousness and the

uneven path of demeritoriousness and is destined to be punished in the plane of misery.

- (4) *Yo ca etāni tthānāni  
aṇumthulani sabbaso  
sudithamamusāseyya  
sa ve voharitumarahati.*

A King, who examines cases according to correct procedure, and adjudge or adjudicate the guilt or otherwise of cases, trivial or great, in the name of justice, is a ruler invested with qualification expected of a king fit to rule over a domain of territory.

- (5) *Nekantamudunā sakkā  
ekantatikhi nena vā  
attam mahante thapetum  
tasmā ubhayamācare*

Noble King ... it is not possible for any one to remain forever in a position of responsibility by always exercising extreme measures, either soft or rough; a ruler needs a careful balance of judgement to discriminate between what requires gentle handling or what demands stern treatment.

- (6) *Paribhūto mudu hoti  
atitikkho ca veravā  
etañca ubhayam ññatvā  
anumajjam samācare*

Noble King ... one who governs his people with kindly disposition constantly is open to contempt and disrespect by his subjects; On the other hand, a ruler who governs his subjects harshly oppressively is liable to provoke hostility and hatred in the people he governed. A King should be able to discriminate between the two extremes and resort to the middle course in the interest of peace and tranquility.

- (7) *Bahompi rāto bhāseyya  
duthopi bhahu bhāsati  
na ithikāranā rāja  
puttam ghāteteumarahati*

O Noble King .... one who is inflamed by passion may speak in many different ways; one who is inflamed by malice may also speak in many different ways. Therefore there is no justification in causing the death of the Crown prince without proper consideration and mainly on the strength of false accusation by a woman acting under the influence of burning passion and malice.

The minister's submissions and solicitations failed to move the King: Prince Paduma himself tried for several times for the revocation of the Royal order in different ways, but to no purpose. The King stood firm on his judgement and ordered: "Go ye all to the chasm and throw down this ignorant blunderer forthwith."

(8) *Subbova loko ekato  
itthi ca ayamekikā  
te nā ham patipajjissam  
gacchatha pakkhipathe va tam.*

All the citizens took sides with the man of standing, the Crown Prince, and my chief queen is all alone, and in the circumstances, I will take side with the queen. Go ye all to the chasm and get the traitor, prince Paduma, thrown into the 'Robbers' pit forthwith.

Upon hearing this summary order, none of the female members of the crowd could help crying. All the people raised their arms in protest and shouted slogans as they followed the prince with their hair spreading over their bodies in distress. The foolish King was under the impression that the people would stand in the way of throwing the prince into the pit; so he went along with the weeping crowd under escort right up to the pit. He caused the prince to be borne with his head down and the feet up and flung cruelly into the pit in his very presence.

### **Power of Bodhisatta's *Metta***

Under the influence of Bodhisatta's *metta*, the guardian deity of the mountain made himself visible and consoled the prince "Prince Paduma.... don't you worry", and he held him in his arms close to his breast, so that the prince might be comforted by the pervading warmth of a deity. He then descended the cliff and placed the prince on the

expanded hood of the dragon King dwelling at the foot of the mountain.

The dragon King took the prince to the Kingdom of dragons and shared with him the ease and comfort in the country of the dragons. Having stayed in the company of dragons for a whole year, Bodhisatta intimated his desire to leave: "I am going to the world of men". The dragon King asked: "To which place you intend going?" "To the Himalayas" was the reply. The dragon King took the prince to the Himalayas and after providing him with the requisites of hermits and bhikkhus, he returned to his country. Bodhisatta as a recluse spent his days developing *Jhāna abhiññas* and living on herbs, fruits and roots.

After some time, a hunter of the City of Baranasi came upon the abode of the hermit and recognized that he was the Crown prince. He asked the hermit: "O noble prince .... are you not Maha Paduma prince?" "Yes, I am .... my dear man" was the reply. The hunter paid homage to the Bodhisatta and stayed with him for a few days before he returned to the city of Baranasi. On arrival, he went to the King and reported: "O your Majesty .... your son, Maha Paduma prince is living in the forest of Himalayas as a hermit. I have seen him and stayed with him for a few days". Whereupon, the King asked: "Have you seen him personally?" "Yes, your Majesty .... I have", was the hunter's response.

The King proceeded to that place in the company of a great number of army personel and stayed at the edge of the forest in a temporary shed preparatory to seeing his son. When he met face to face with the hermit sitting in front of his hut like a golden image, he paid respect and sat in a suitable spot. The ministers exchanged greetings with the hermit. The Bodhisatta presented the King with fruits and exchanged greetings in an amicable manner.

The King began to ask: by means of a verse "Dear son... I had caused you to be thrown into a precipice named *Corapapata*" with your head down and I wonder how you managed to keep yourself alive?"

(9) *Anekatāle narake  
gambhīre ca suduttare  
pātito giriduggasmim  
kena tum tattha nāmari*

Dear son .... how did you manage to survive after you had been thrown upside down into a precipice with a depth of several lengths of palm-trees, that was difficult of escape? Then a dialogue between the father and the son ensued:-

(10) *Nāgo jālaphano tattha  
thāmavā girisāmujo  
paccaggahi mañ bhogehi  
tenāham tattha nāmariṃ*

Royal father .... a powerful dragon that sprang into being on the sides of mountain valleys received me on its expanded hood from the hands of a guardian deity of that locality, and that was the reason why I escaped from the danger of being smashed to death after I had been thrown into that precipice of unfarthomable depth.

The royal father was greatly delighted by the Bodhisatta's reply and said solemnly: "I am a vile person to have offended a righteous son like you at the instigation of my wife; I humbly plead for favour of your pardon for my blundering offence against you" with his head bent at the feet of the Bodhisatta. Whereupon, the Bodhisatta convinced his father: "Your Majesty .... please do get up .... I forbear all your offences, and my sincere wish is that you avoid becoming such a person again behaving blindly without consideration and investigation." The King said in reply: "Dear son .... your acceptance of Kingship with all its glories over the territories alone will signify your forbearance towards me."

(11) *Ehi tam paṭinessāmi,  
rajaputtam sakarā gharam,  
rajjam kārehi bhaddante,  
kim aranne karissasi.*

My Royal son, Prince Maha Paduma... I am taking you back as the rightful heir to the throne of the Kingdom of Baranasi; may you reign



with glory and greatness; I pray thee to accept the Kingship and sovereignty over the domanins: how could you promote the welfare and prosperity of the citizens in such a wilderness cut off from civilization!"

The following is the prince's reply in verse:-

(12) *Yathā gilitvā balisaṃ  
uddhareyya salohitaṃ  
uddharitvā sukhiṃ assa  
evaṃ passāmi attanaṃ.*

O King father... just like a man who had accidently swallowed a hook brought it out with all the blood immediately before it had gone far enough to reach the vital heart, so that he might keep his mind and body in a state of peace and tranquility; so I see myself as a person who had accidentally swallowed a hook but had taken it out in time to live in peace and tranquility.

(13) *Kiṃ nu tum balisaṃ byūsi  
kiṃ tum lyusi salohitaṃ  
kin nu tum ubbhatam vyusi  
tam me akkhāhi pucchito*

Dear son ... what do you mean by hook?, what do you mean by blood?, what do you mean by immediate vomiting? I beseech you to enlighten me by answering these questions for me!

(14) *Kāmāham balisaṃ byūmi  
hatthiassaṃ salohitaṃ  
cattāhaṃ ubbhatam byumi  
evaṃ janahi khattiya*

O Royal father... I have seen, by reason of wisdom, the five sensual pleasures as hook; the worldly wealth or possessions such as, elephants horses, chariots etc as blood; renunciation of the five sensual pleasures as immediate vomiting; you may try to understand these things discriminately by contemplative knowledge

After he had given the above answer, he continued to give his father an instruction for guidance in administering justice : "Noble King ...as already stated above, I have nothing to do whatsoever with the

Kingship of the Baranasi, and what I wish to commend to you is to rule by strict adherence to the ten codes of conduct<sup>4</sup> for a ruling monarch without the influence of four wrong courses of action<sup>5</sup>.

### The king returned to the country and punished the queen

The King, after several vain attempts to persuade the son, to return to his country, made his way back to his capital crying and weeping all along the route. In the course of his journey, he questioned his ministers "Who is responsible for the severance of his son from him?" They all unanimously replied: "You have sustained the loss of such a worthy and honourable son through your chief queen" ... On his arrival at the city, he immediately caused the queen to be flung over the precipice upside down before he entered the royal palace. He ruled over the country and the people wisely and justly ever after.

The Tathagata, after preaching the above discourse, proceeded to say: "Bhikkhus, in this manner Cincamana had decried me by abusive language in a previous existence":

(15) *Cincamānavika mātā*  
*Devadatto ca me pitā*  
*Ānando pandito nāgo*  
*Sāriputto ca devatā*  
*Rājaputto aham āsiṃ evam dhāreṭṭha jātakam.*

Bhikkhus .... Cincamana was then the queen, the stepmother, the brother-in-law Devatta was then the King, Ananada was then the wise dragon, Sariputta was then the guardian deity of the mountain, and I was then Maha Paduma. The Jataka was brought to a close by this last verse.

End of Mahā Paduma jataka

••••☆••••

<sup>4</sup>Ten codes of conduct of a king: alms giving, morality, liberality, straightness, gentleness, self-restraint, non-anger, forbearance, austerity and non-opposition.

<sup>5</sup>Wrong Courses of action-those dominated by desire, by ill-will, by delusion and by fear.

The Tathagata proceeded to reveal the fact that, there is no immoral act that a liar dare not commit: Bhikkhus .... one who has abandoned the course of telling the Truth and persued the course of telling lies, has also forsaken the advantages of attainment of Nibbana and rebirth in the worlds of men and deva, and as such, there is no immoral act that they loath to perform!

*Ekam dhamman atilassa  
masavādisa jantuno  
vitimnaparalokassa  
nathi pāpaṃ akariyaṃ*

Bhikkhus... one who has breached the course of telling lies has also forsaken the advantages of Nibbana and rebirths in the realms of men and devas, and as such, there is no immoral act that these people, destined for planes of woes, will not dare to perform.

At the conclusion of the discourse, a great number of beings attained *Sotapatti* fruitional state, etc.

(This is an extensive exposition of Cincamana's false accusation.)

### The original cause of wicked Cincamana's accusation

The following is an exposition of the original cause that accuated wicked Cincamana to make the accusation:-

Prior to an infinite period of four *asañkhyeyya* and a hundred thousand aeons (before the definite proprecy of enlighthent had been made.) the Bodhisatta was a person of distracted mind with wrong attitudes through constant association with bad people of the most hopeless type. On one occasion, he chanced to slander an Arahat named Nanda, a disciple of Sabbabhibhu Buddha by accusing him of having unlawful association with a woman This was a very grave offence of slandering a noble person, Ariya.

As a result of such false accusation against *Ariyas (Ariyūpavāda)* he had to suffer in the plane of misery for many a year, and, once released from it and reborn in the world of man, he was subject to false accusations existence after existence, and in the last existence as a

Buddha by wicked Cincamanavika in the presence of four kinds of audience.

(*Apadana Pali* 1st. Vol., *Avataphala vagga: 10-Pubbakammalotika Buddha apadan* gives full account on this matter as expounded by the Buddha himself)

### An account female wandering ascetic Sundari

As stated above, sectarians outside the teaching, because of paucity of offering for them, had the wicked woman Cincamana to slander the Buddha. They made another attempt to slander the Buddha by a similar ruse when they engaged a good looking heretic woman named Sundari at a time when the Tathagata was residing in Savatthi (vide *Udana Pali Text 4 Maghiya vagga 1 : 8 . Sundri Sutta Pali* and Commentary).

While the Tathagata was residing at Jetavana monastery, all men, devasand brahmas paid homage to the Buddha and the Sangha; they revered, honoured and made offerings to them. The four requisites of robe, food, monastery and medicine were always in great supply for them. For the Buddha and the Sangha their accumulation of meritorious deeds in the past was immense; their practice of the True path in the present existence was also productive of good merits. The beneficial results from these two wholesome sources combine together to produce an incessant flow of requisites and offerings for them just like the huge volume of water pouring forth from the confluence of two big rivers.

In sharp contrast, the heretics suffered from deficiency of four requisites and other offerings. This is attributed to their lack of meritorious deeds in the past and the wrong practice they followed in the present.

At that time, there lived in Savatthi a young heretic maiden who was in her most impressive youth excelling others in comely appearance; hence she was named Sundari, though her behavior, deed, word and thought were deplorable.

The heretics gathered together to devise ways and means to slander the Buddha and the Sangha out of covetousness. They all took part in the discussions with that end in view:

"Dear Sirs .... we have been ruined beyond redemption since the coming of the Recluse Gotama and we have suffered much from paucity of gifts, because people have almost forgotten our existence. What has prompted the people to make such wonderful offerings to the Recluse Gotama with such profound respect and enthusiasm?"

One of the heretics present at the meeting offered his opinion:

"Dear sirs ... The Recluse Gotama is a direct descendant of Noble Maha Sammata, through an uninterrupted Khattiya lineage of pure Sākya clan. That must be the reason why people have honoured him and made offerings so profusely." Another heretic had this to say:—"It is because a variety of miraculous events took place at the time of his birth." Likewise many heretic leaders presented their individual views:—"It is because, when his father, King Suddhodana made him pay homage by raising his two hands in a worshipping posture towards the Devila hermit, just after his birth, his feet miraculously flew aloft and rested on the matted hair of hermit Devila. And when his parents placed him under the cool shade of a rose-apple tree while the Ploughing Ceremony was in progress, while the shades of many other trees moved with the sun; the shade of the rose-apple tree under which the prince reposed stood unchanged even after noon-tide." "It is because he is extraordinarily handsome", said another, while yet another speculated:

"It might be because he had forsaken the Throne of the Universal Monarch with all its glories and renounced the world through seeing the Four Great Signs, that the people have been paying homage and making offering in greater volumes."

They all went about beating the bush without finding the real cause of immense respect being paid Buddha by the people because they were totally ignorant of the Buddha's incomparable attributes: *pārami*, *cāga*, *cariya*. After exchange of fruitless discussions, one of the fiercest heretics came forward with a plot to destroy the fame and gains of Gotama with the aid of a woman.

"Dear sirs.... there is no one in this world who is immune from desires for sexual pleasures derived from a woman and the Recluse Gotama, being young and good looking like a deva, will certainly get entangled with a maiden of his age and appearance, if and when available. Even when he cannot be completely tempted away, people will begin to have doubt about his moral uprightness. Come let us send wandering woman Sundari on a mission of bringing ruin to the Recluse Gotama's reputation through out the land."

Upon hearing this suggestion, all the heretics spoke in support of him: "your plan is excellent, indeed. This will bring about the down-fall of the Recluse Gotama; he will have no alternative but to run away aimlessly with his head hanging down" They all decided to turn the resolution into action and went *en masse* to the place of Sundari.

On seeing the heretics, Sudari asked: "why have you come here all in a group?" They all went to a corner and sat there without giving her any reply. She approached them in a submissive manner and asked them again and again: "Have I done any thing wrong and, if so, what is my offence?"

At last they gave this reply : "We have not given you any reply since you have neglected us when we have been oppressed by some one". Sundari asked them: "Who has oppressed you?" Whereupon they revealed their case: "Don't you see the Recluse Gotama wandering around and depriving us of offerings, to our great disadvantage?". Good Sirs, in this matter, how can I be of assistance" They replied "Sister .... can you really work for the good of your own relatives like us?" trying to tie her down to a commitment.

(They had employed the word 'relatives' to win her over, though there was no blood relationship apart from the fact that all of them were leading a homeless life. The heretics are indeed terrible)

Whereupon, Sundari said: "Good Sirs... what should I do for you; there is nothing that I cannot do, I am prepared to sacrifice my own life to do any thing that would be of advantage to my relatives like you". (She had thus pledged herself to fulfil their wishes and she could not shrink back, like a deer that had got itself entangled in a bush.) The

heretics told her; "Sister... you have pledged to do anything that would be of advantage to us. Being in your most impressive youth at the first stage of life, do anything to the best of your ability, that will ruin the Recluse Gotama by means of your own gorgeous personality". Thus playing up to her vanity, they sent her away on the mission with a hint that she should pay constant visit to Jetavana monastery."

Foolish Sundari, like a person who wishes to dance with a ring of flowers on the teeth of a saw, like one who attempts to catch a bull elephant in musk by its trunk, like one who extends warm welcome to the King of Death with his fore-head, got herself besmeared with sweet scents and bedecked with flowers, wandered her way towards the Jetavana monastery, as people came out of the precincts of the monastery after hearing the discourses. When asked, she said: "I am going to the Recluse Gotama with whom I usually stay together in his own Chamber" But she dared not enter the monastery and made her way to the nearby hermitage of the heretics. She returned by the same route to the city when people came out of it to go to the monastery. When asked; she told them that "she had just come out of the chamber of the Buddha with whom she had stayed the night giving him sexual gratification.

After a few days, the heretics, being satisfied with the part played by Sundari, bribed drunkards and instigated them to kill Sundari and to conceal her body under heaps of decayed flowers in a ditch adjacent to the Buddha's chamber. The drunkards carried out their instructions. The Sectarrians then spread the news of missing Sundari, and went to King Kosala and reported that their female disciple, Sundari was missing and could not be found. The King asked them if there was any place of suspicion. They informed him that they had their suspicion located in Jetavana monastery. The King then ordered for a search to be made at Jetavana monastery.

The heretics went with their disciples to the Jetavana monastery and pretended to look for the wandering woman Sundari. They found the dead body of Sundari beneath the heaps of decayed flowers in a ditch and brought the corpse to the King's presence on a decorated bedstead. They made the King believe that "the disciples of the Buddha had

slained the young Sundari and left her corpse beneath the heap of decayed flowers to conceal the evil deed of their Master, Recluse Gotama". The thoughtless King passed a summary order without any formal investigation, to the effect that "the corpse be carried and shown around the city, street by street, to make all the citizens aware of the case."

Encouraged by the ill considered judgement of the king, the heretics carried the corpse of Sundari on a decorated bedstead and went all over the city, from street to street, from one junction to another, announcing:-

"Know all men and women. See for yourselves what the descendants of Sakyan race have done; they are shameless; they are of evil nature; they have no morals; they are wont to tell lies; and they indulge in sexual intercourse, and, yet they made false claims pretending to be good bhikkhus, saying without shame, "we observe precepts, we are virtuous, we are of good conduct, of morality, developing noble practices, speaking only what is true." But for these recluses there is no more precepts; noble precepts are the things of the past, How can there be any element of virtue in them? How can there be noble practice? They are bereft of precepts, bereft of noble practices. Why has man slained a person of fair sex after ravishing her?

They also made the citizens of Savatthi to make similar slanderous charges. When the citizens saw the bhikkhus, they made accusations against them as instigated by the heretics:-

"These bhikkhu princes of Sakyan race are shameless, without virtue, stupid, regular liars, they indulge in sexual practices, they pretend to be virtuous, righteous, straight forward, noble, truthful and moderate persons. In actual fact, they are without virtue, without precepts, precepts for bhikkhus are no more, they are the things of the past: How can there be any noble precepts or elements of virtue in them? They have no noble qualities whatsoever: Why should a man slay a woman when he had finished enjoying sex with her?"



The citizens had thus condemned the bhikkhus when they saw in the city using vulgar languages and humiliated them in an aggressive manner.

On their return from Savatthi after regular rounds of alms-food bhikkhus went to the Tathagata and addressed him:

Most Exalted Lord .... when the people of Savatthi saw the bhikkhus they accused them in vulgar language "these bhikkhus of Sakyan race are shameless, without virtue, regular liars, they indulge in sexual practices, and they pretend to be virtuous, righteous, straight forward, noble, truthful and moderate persons. But they are, in fact, without virtue, without precepts, without noble practices or habits: the precepts for bhikkhus are no more, they are things of the past: How can there be any precepts or noble qualities whatsoever. Why had man spoilt a woman when he had ravished her.

Thus the bhikkhus told the Tathagata how they had been calumniated, reviled, abused, oppressed in very harsh language (not fit for the ears of noble people) The Tathagata explained them that those people will reap as they sow, by offending the bhikkhu and said: Bhikkhus .... such voices of slander will last only for seven days and they are bound to disappear after seven days: You shall refute these people who had calumniated, reviled, abused, oppressed you in very harsh language (not fit for the ears of noble people) by uttering the following stanza:

*Abhūtavādi nirayaṃ upeti  
yo vāpi Ratvā na karoni cāha  
ubhopi te pecca samā bhavanti  
nihīnakammā manajā parattha*

"A person who is in the habit of speaking falsehood by saying, I have seen it; I have heard of it, I have met with it, I know about it, though he has not personally seen it, heard of it, though he has not any knowledge of it; and a person who denies commission of his own offence are equally guilty and both of these vile people who had done low, base deed are liable to be reborn in the plane of misery after death".

The bhikkhus learnt the stanza from the Tathagata and uttered it in the presence of those citizens by way of refutation.

### **The citizens began to see the truth**

On hearing the verse of refutation uttered by the bhikkhus, it dawned on the citizens: The bhikkhus belonging to the Sakyan race had not committed the murder as charged by the heretics outside of the teaching through proclamation all over the city: There is one thing that deserves consideration; that is that, these noble persons did not even care to take any steps what so ever to retaliate upon us for abusing them, reviling them, slandering them using vulgar languages, not fit for their ears. Instead, they are seen to have put up with false allegations and have thus shown forbearance (*khanti*), to be gently, meekly carrying on with their wholesome deeds (*soracca*), and, above all, they simply preached us and explained us who have blindly and in considerately slandered them, reviled them, the evil consequences of lying and denying commission of one's own offence, to prove that they are innocent, by way of an avowal of truth.

They have thus come back to their senses and become reasonable once again. After hearing the stanza, it dawned on them: "We have not personally witnessed the fatal event and what we have heard may or may not be true. And there is one point that called for special consideration: these heretics are bent only on wishing ill to the bhikkhus, their undoing and ruination"; we should not make one sided statements believing the words of the heretics. We really do not know the truth about these bhikkhus. They began to have sense of destestation and repentence for their conduct towards the bhikkhus. The scandalous accusations did not last long and after seven days died away completely.

### **The murder case of the heretics brought to light**

King Kosala had caused a squad of secret service personnel spread throughout the city to bring those responsible for the death of Sundari to book. On one occasion, the murderers got drunk on the liquor they bought with the money they received from the heretics for slaying

Sundari. Two murderers quarreled with one another and started mud slinging and one of them shouted at the other "So you are enjoying drinks with the money you got from the heretics for killing Sundari and keeping her dead body under the heaps of decayed flowers" (Drunkenness led a thief to expose his own criminal act of stealing an ox, as the saying goes!). The secret police arrested them and brought them to the presence of King Pasenadi Kosala.

The King asked; "Did you kill Sundari?" They admitted: "Yes we did ... your Majesty". The King went on to ask "Who had instigated you to commit the crime?" They replied: "At the instigation of those heretics from outside the teaching." The heretics were sent for and a formal investigation was made. All the heretics admitted their guilt. And the King passed the judgment, ordering the heretic to go round the city and proclaim:

"We had engaged the murderers to kill Sundari with the sole purpose of bringing about the ruination of the Recluse Gotama. Recluse Gotama is absolutely innocent; his disciples are also absolutely faultless; we are solely responsible for the killing of Sundari" You, heretics, must go all over the city and get the passage publicly announced by word of mouth."

In obedience to the order of the King, the heretics did as they were bid. The citizens lost respect for them and were disgusted with them. The heretics had to undergo punishment for the charge of murder. The citizens honoured, revered and esteemed the Buddha and the Sangha more than ever before. They made offerings to the Buddha and the Sangha with greater devotional faith.

### **Buddha's utterance of joy**

Then a great number of bhikkhus approached the Tathagata and sat in a suitable place after paying obeisance to the Lord. They then addressed him: "Most Exalted Bhagava .... it is, indeed, an unprecedented event deserving of praise by the clapping of the fingers; Most Exalted Lord .... your prophesy 'Bhikkhus .... those voices would not last long; they would last only for seven days and they would

disappear after a period of seven days' has proved to be true, the voices are no more."

The Tathagata was well aware of the fact that, there never is a case where a wise virtuous man could not tolerate even the most heinous accusation by lowly, stupid persons. This feeling of supreme confidence led to repeated development of joy of satisfaction so much so that it reached the point of bursting forth an utterance of a verse of joy (*udāna*):

*Tudanti vācāya janā asāññatā  
sarehi sañgāmagataṇva kuñcaram  
sutvāna vākyan phrusam udīritam  
adhivāsaye bhikkhu aduṭṭha citto*

"Bhikkhus .... a bhikkhu who has renounced the world for fear of the evil consequences of transient existence, should overcome evil forces by toleration, like a war elephant that could resist and repulse the arrows from the side of its foe in a battle field, when attacked by those lowly, stupid persons without any restrained conduct in deed, word and thought stupid abusing, slandering and accusing, as if attacking you with a double edged saw.

#### Past misdeed as cause of accusation by Sundari

Here a question might arise as to "Why the Buddha had not revealed the fact that the heretics were at the bottom of the whole affair, though he had full knowledge of this case of conspiracy?". The answer is as follows:- There is no point in telling this to Ariya puggalas. The noble individuals have from the outset complete faith in the nobility of the Buddha and the Sangha. And there might be certain persons amongst the ordinary worldlings who would not accept the words of the Buddha when he was revealing the facts of the case; disbelief in the Buddha amounts to be an unwholesome act in thought, which may cause them untold harm and suffering for a long time to come. Hence the Buddha's reticence at the time.

In other words, it was not the regular practice of Buddhas (F.50 *Dhammatā aciṅṇa*) to foretell the events and their related sequences .

They are not wont to point out a particular person as a culprit in a criminal case; they deal with such matters only in an objective way. (vide the verse for refutation mentioned above.) They were not in a position to deter the misfortune that was destined to befall upon them either. They had therefore taken up an indifferent attitude towards accusations by the people and of Sundari's assassination, which formed the cause of those accusations.

And there is yet another question that may be asked as to the origin of this unwholesome fate of being accused in this most disgraceful manner, when there was tremendous amount of merit to the credit of the Buddha for incalculable wholesome acts done through out forty crores and one lakh of world-systems! This is the answer:-

Buddha was a habitual drunkard named Murali in a previous existence at the earlier stage of life as a Bodhisatta. He moved about in the company of unmoral, wicked persons and eventually acquired unwholesome mental attitude. One day he noticed a *Pacceka Buddha*, known as Surabhi, in the act of rearranging his robes preparatory to entering the town for alms-round. Incidentally, a woman was seen to have gone past the Pacceka Buddha. Murali, with a habitual wrong frame of mind happened to make a casual remark: "This bhikkhu has the habit of indulging in sexual enjoyment."

He had suffered in the realms of woes for several lakhs of years for that offence; and he was obliged to pay for remnant of his past misdeed by being maliciously accused by the people of having indulged in sexual intercourse with heretic Sundari even after attainment to the Most Exalted State of an Enlightened Buddha. (There are twelve modes of similar retributions the Buddha had to make for his past misdeeds, in previous existences. These are laid down in serial order in *Apadana Pali Text* )

End of Chapter twenty five.



## CHAPTER TWENTY SIX

### EIGHTH VASSA KEPT AT THE TOWN OF SUSUMARAGIRA

As stated before, the Tathagata kept the seventh vassa on the emerald stone slab at Tavatimsa and preached the *Abhidhamma* through out the lent. At the conclusion of the lent, the Tathagata descended to the world of men by triple stairways and preached the *Sariputta sutta* etc. at the base of the stairways near the gate of the City of Sankassa for the benefit of men, devas and Brahmas present. The Tathagata then kept the eighth vassa in the forest of Bhesakala near the town of Susumaragira in Bagga province.

(The country of Bagga, where the Tathagata kept up the eighth vassa, was one of the sixteen historic countries in the *Majjhima Jesa*. Susumaragira was named after a big crocodile that raised its voice from the river at the moment of laying the foundation-stone of the town. The forest where the Tathagata kept up the eighth vassa was named after the location of what was once the abode of an orgre by the name of Bhesakala. The forest was a sanctuary.)

#### Wealthy man Nakulapitu & wife attained *Sotapatti*

At a time when the Tathagata was taking up residence in the company of bhikkhus in the forest of Bhesakala near Susumaragira, wealthy man Nakulapitu and wife Nakulamatu came along with the pilgrims of the town to pay homage to the Tathagata and to hear the discourses. On seeing the Tathagata for the first time, the couple "recognized him to be their own son". They approached the Lord and addressed: "Beloved son .... where have you been roaming about for such a long time after leaving us, your parents, behind? (as though they had been recounting the events of the same existence, with a mingled feeling of joy and reproach, to their own son.)

(N.B. Nakulapitu was either the Lord's father, paternal younger uncle or elder uncle or elder maternal uncle in each of the five hundred existences of the past. Likewise, his wife was either

Lord's own mother, maternal elder aunt, younger aunt and paternal elder aunt in each of the five hundred existences of the past: (Their paternal and maternal affection for the Lord, that remained latent for so long, had produced the perception of the Buddha being their long separated son.)

The Tathagata waited till the couple regained their mental equilibrium and preached them the Dhamma that established them in the Fruitional Stage of *Sotapatti*. (vide Anguttara Commentary)

(The account of the wealthy man Nakulapitu and his wife will be mentioned again in the chapter on the Jewel of the Sangha.)

### The Story of Prince Bodhi

The story of prince Bodhi is given here in consultation with two treatises, namely, *Majjima pannasa* commentary on *Bodhi Raja Kumara Sutta* and *Dhammapada* commentary, Second Vol. 12 *Atta vagga* on *Bodhi Raja Kumara*.

Prince Bodhi was the son of King Udena. He learnt the art of managing elephants and wielding goard (iron hook) from his royal father; he became an expert in elephant taming. (It is proposed to deal with his account here in abridged form. For full particulars, please refer to *Dhammapada* commentary translation by the Venerable Canda Joti Mahathera.)

During the reign of King Parantapa in the country of Kosambi, the queen was one day taking sun bath with the king in an open space. She was at an advanced stage of pregnancy and was wearing a red blanket. Suddenly a big monster bird came sweeping down and snatched away the queen mistaking her for a piece of meat. The queen made no attempt to voice for help lest it might drop her at the cost her life.

The bird dropped her at the fork of a tree, usual place of its feasting, when the queen shouted at the top of her voice, clapping her hands at the same time, with the result that the huge bird flew away from fright. The queen gave birth to a child at the fork of the same tree. She continued to clad herself in the red blanket due to constant shower of rain all night.

There was a hermit living in the vicinity of the tree. The hermit went to the base of the tree at dawn as he had heard the voice of the queen the night before and asked about her race and birth. Once he knew all about it, he made a ladder for her to come down, and took her to his hermitage. The boy baby was named "Udena" as he was born in a moist atmosphere of rains and mountainous region.

One day, as she received the hermit on his return from the forest, she tempted him to yield to her feminine charms being anxious about her own future. The two lived together as man and wife. Years rolled by and King Parantapa of Kosambi passed away. The ex-hermit discovered his death by means of his astrological knowledge and intimated the matter to the ex-queen. "Your king had passed away. Do you want your son to stay on in this forest or to return to Kosambi and claim the throne of his father and remain there as a ruler?". The ex-queen acquainted his son with the true aspect of his life to ascertain his attitude. When she learnt of her son's desire to become a king she confided to the ex-hermit.

The hermit was well versed in incantation that had the power of wielding influence upon elephants. He learnt it from the Sakka: Once the Sakka came and asked the hermit "Is there any thing that caused you to feel worried?" The hermit replied, "Yes .... we have been faced with the danger of annoying elephants". Whereupon, the Sakka taught him incantations and gave him a harp, to overcome the trouble. His instructions were that, when the hermit wanted the elephants to go away, he should tune the harp in a certain way and recite a certain verse; when the hermit wanted the elephant to come to him, he should tune the harp in a different way and recite a different verse. The ex-hermit taught the prince how to make use of the harp and to utter the incantation in case of emergency. The prince climbed up a banyan tree to see for himself how the incantation worked. When he saw the elephants coming towards him, he struck the right chord of the harp and uttered the appropriate incantation and, truly enough, the elephants ran away through fright.

On the following day, he caused the elephants to come by playing the harp and uttering the incantation as instructed. The elephants came



running to him in response to his command. The king elephant lowered its shoulder for the prince to step on it. Riding the king elephant, the prince selected young, stout and strong elephants capable of engagement in a battle field. He requested for the red blanket of his mother and her ring to serve as evidence of his lineage. Then paying homage to his parents, he went away from the forest. He stopped at every village in his attempt to build up an army by announcing: "I am the legal son of the late King Parantapa; any one wishing wealth and prosperity may join me". Surrounding the city with his army he laid claim to his father's throne: "I am the legal son of the late King Parantapa. Hand over the throne to a rightful successor." To support his claim, he showed the red blanket and the ring of his mother to those who seemed to have doubt about his claim; in this manner he was able to ascend the throne without let or hindrance. Udena was very much fond of capturing elephants. He would go without hesitation to any place to capture elephants on being told about the presence of fine elephants.

King Candhapajjota, a rival of Udena, was desirous of learning the art of managing elephants from King Udena. He caused the construction of a wooden elephant and kept trained soldiers inside of the sham elephant which served as a trap to catch Udena as and when he came out to catch elephants. His plan succeeded and Udena was taken prisoner. King Candappojjota sent his daughter Vasuladatta to King Udena to learn the art of elephant management and the two eventually fell in love with each other. King Udena eloped with the princess Vasuladatta and lived in the town of Susumaragira in the province of Bagga. Princess Vasudatta gave birth to prince Bodhi, who learnt from his father Udena the art of elephant management to become an expert in it.

#### **Prince Bodhi caused the construction of a palace known as**

#### **Kokanda**

King Bodhi caused the construction of a palace with a turreted roof known as Kokanada. The turret was of peculiar and unprecedented design and won the admiration of the people. The King asked the Master builder: "Have you constructed a turret of a similar design elsewhere or was it the first of its kind ever constructed by you?" He

replied: "Your Majesty .... this is the first of its kind I have ever constructed". Whereupon, Bodhi prince was worried with the thought: "Should the carpenter build a similar turreted mansion for someone else, my paiaace would no longer be the object of praise and wonder by the people". An evil, cruel thought entered his head to plot the destruction of the architect and deprive others of having a similar palace built for themselves. He was thinking of doing away with the builder either by killing him, or by cutting off his hand and feet or extracting his eye-balls.

Prince Bodhi happened to confide his brutal plot against the carpenter to one of his close boyhood friend called Sanjikaputta, who was of kindly disposition and considerate. Sanjikaputta felt certain Prince Bodhi meant what he said. But he was quite against the idea of destroying an innocent man of arts and crafts of great prominence. He made up his mind to avert the imminent danger and so he went to the carpenter and asked: "Have you finished with the work of constructing the turreted palace for prince Bodhi or is there any thing still left to be done?" When the carpenter said "All complete", he confided, "Bodhi Prince wishes to do away with you, please be careful about your own security".

The master carpenter said words of gratitude: "O dear Lord .... you have, indeed, done very well by such words of kindness" and he told him: "I will do every thing as demanded by the circumstances." When prince Bodhi asked him: "Big master carpenter .... is there anything yet to be done in connection with the turret?". "Your Majesty; not completed yet, there is a lot to be done" was the reply. Whereupon, the prince asked: "What kind of job was left to be done?". The carpenter said in reply: "Your Majesty .... details will be given later, just provide me with necessary timber immediately". The prince demanded: "What kind of timber do you want me to supply?" "Your Majesty .... just light wood, such as Yamane.. those light and dry wood" was the reply. The prince not suspecting any thing supplied him with light and dry wood as demanded.

The master carpenter subsequently asked the prince "Your Majesty.... please do not visit my place of work forthwith, as the kind of job I am

about to handle is very delicate, so much so, that I will have no leisure to enter into conversation with any body, excepting my wife charged with the task of conveying food". The prince gave his consent, saying "Very well".

The master carpenter stayed in a work cabin and cut the soft wood to measurement and built up a ' Flying Vehicle ' in the form of a Garuda bird. On completion of the job he asked his wife to turn their assets (house-hold property) into hard cash and jewellery and to have the family kept in a state of readiness. Bodhi prince posted security forces around the place where the turret was supposed to be under construction. When every thing was set the master carpenter had his family gathered together at the workshop and after taking their morning meal went aboard the flying vehicle and flew away. Even as the escorts were reporting the matter to the prince: "Your Royal Highness... the master carpenter is gone.." the carpenter and his family descended in a region of the Himalayas and settled there permanently. The new settlement developed into a city and he ruled the region as its king. He was known as King Katha vahana.

### **Prince Bodhi invited the Buddha and Sangha to the inauguration of the Turretted Palace**

The prince Bodhi had in mind to invite the Tathata and the Sangha to the inauguration of his palace. Therefore, he caused it to be decorated and smeared profusely with sweet scents. Then he had a white carpet laid from the lowest rung of the ladder. (The prince had no off-springs. He thought that there was the chance of getting a son or a daughter should the Tathagata care to tread on the white carpet; if not otherwise. That was the idea behind the laying of the white carpet.)

When the Tathagata arrived at the palace door, the prince paid homage to the Lord in a traditional manner and received the bowl by his hands, saying: "Exalted Lord .... please enter". But the Tathagata would not enter the palace. The prince requested the Lord for three times in succession. At the third time, the Tathagata turned round and looked at the Venerable Ananda who at once realized that the Lord would not tread upon the white carpet. He, therefore, turned to the

prince and asked him to remove the white carpet since the good Lord would not tread upon it.

(Facts relating to Prince Bodhi's object of laying the white carpet and the Tathagata's refusal to tread upon it are fully explained in Majjhima Nikaya Commentary. Here is an abridged form of the exposition:

The Prince's object: Prince Bodhi had no off-spring. He had heard that any handsome offerings made to the Tathagata usually bring about fitting rewards: He made the resolution that he would get an off-spring should the Tathagata care to tread on the white carpet; if not, otherwise.

Prince Bodhi's former Kamma: The prince was an inhabitant of a small island in one of his previous existences. He had a wife who had a similar frame of mind, and the two killed and ate helpless small birds by mutual consent. The prince stood the chance of getting children had he married a woman other than his previous wife just described. Since he and his wife were jointly responsible for the destruction of the young birds in the past, they were equally guilty of taking the life of the infant birds. The Tathagata was well aware of all this and hence his refusal to tread upon the white carpet that was purposely laid on that occasion.

There are still some other points to ponder here:

(1) The prince was predestined not to get any off-spring due to deterrent acts, and nothing would interfere with the course of cause and effect even though the Tathagata treaded upon the carpet laid by the prince with an erroneous idea. He might, through ignorance, make an additional mistake by forming an idea that nothing could be gained by making offerings to a Buddha notwithstanding the adage that "every offering made to a Buddha brings about fitting rewards". He might be led to form such mistaken ideas on that score.

(2) Such a practice might be a cause for complaint by members of other sects: "those bhikkhus are wandering around

hither and thither and treading on the white carpets and there is nothing that they dare not do."

(3) Amongst those bhikkhus, who might have occasions to tread on the white carpets during the life time of the Tathagata, there are bhikkhus replete with supernormal faculties that enabled them to know the mind of the people. Such bhikkhus would tread on carpets as and when they should be tread upon! they would refuse to do so, when circumstance did not allow. Once the Tathagata had passed away, the chances of attaining the Path and Fruition endowed with the knowledge of the future would be rare for sentient beings if not remote. Their faculty of reasoning will be deteriorated and they will not be able to decide whether the white carpets could be treaded with advantage and vice versa. It would be well if they had enough foreseeing power to decide as necessary. If not, the lay devotees might naturally form the idea that: "During the life time of the Tathagata, offerings made to the Sangha invariably fulfil their wish, whereas nothing accrued from the offering made to the bhikkhus of our time; perhaps they are not devoted to practise of the path now a days". Such thought might make them unhappy.

It was for these reasons that the Tathagata had not treaded on the white carpet, and the Venerable Ananda had also stated: "the Tathagata did not tread on the white carpet in consideration of the facts stated above and because of concern for the bhikkhus of the generations to come, with emphasis being placed on (3) above.

The prince caused the white carpet to be removed and conducted the Tathagata on to the mansion and offered him gruel, soft food and sweet meats. When the feasting ceremony was over, the prince addressed the Buddha: "Most Exalted Lord .... it occurred to me that, the state of peace and tranquility can only be attained by strenuous effort" Whereupon, the Tathagata replied: "prince .... I was also of the same idea when I was a Boddhisatta", and explained him, in extenso, the part of his life from the time of taking up austere practices to the time of

preaching the *Anatta Sutta* to the five *Vaggis*, who consequently attained the fruitional stage of Arahattaship.

### Prince Bodhi took Refuge in the three Gems

When the Tathagata had preached the discourse dealing with the establishment of the five *Vaggis* in the Arahattaship, Prince Bodhi asked the Tathagata:

"Most Exalted Tathagata, for one who has a leader (teacher) in the person of the Tathagata, how long has he to work for the attainment of Fruitional Stage of Arahattaship and enjoy peace and tranquility? The Tathagata replied "Prince, in this connection I would ask you a question and you may answer as you deem fit and proper: " Aren't you skilful in managing elephants and wielding of the goad?" The prince said: "Yes Lord, I am skilful in elephant management and wielding of the goad"

The Tathagata went on to ask the prince:

Prince .... supposing a person, knowing that you are skilful in the art of elephant management and wielding of the goad, come to learn the art of elephant management under you and he has these defects: -

(1) Lacking in confidence: He has not enough confidence to attain the desired standard or goal;

(2) Disease: he is suffering from a disease bad enough to prevent him from attaining the desired goal;

(3) Pretension: he makes false pretension or puts on vain and boastful airs, that deters him from attaining the desired goal;

(4) Lacking in effort : he is lacking in earnest effort to attain the desired goal;

(5) Lacking in intelligence: he is not intelligent enough to attain the desired goal.

Would that person be able to learn the art of elephant management and wielding of the goad from you? The prince replied: "Most Exalted Lord... it will not be possible to train a person with any one of the five defects to attain the desired goal, leave alone the question of training one with all those five defects.

Again, the Tathagata put a set of alternative questions:

Prince supposing; the person who comes to you to learn the art of elephant management and wielding of the goad has the following qualifications :

(1) Confidence: He has enough confidence that enables him to reach the desired objective;

(2) Disease: He is free from any disease, or one with sound health to enable him to reach the desired objective;

(3) Pretension: He does not make false pretensions, or he is one with an honest mind that enables him to attain the desired objective;

(4) Effort: He is one with earnest effort that enables him to reach the desired objective;

(5) Intelligence: He is a man of intelligence capable of attaining the objective.

Will it be possible for you to train a person with such qualifications to achieve the desired objective?

Prince Bodhi replied: "Most Exalted Lord... it will be quite possible for me to train a person to achieve the desired objective even when he has only one out of the five qualifications, the more so if he is one with all the five qualities.

**Fivelements of effort (*Padhāniyaṅga*) Required of those who practise meditation**

The Tathagata then proceeded to preach:

Prince in a similar manner, there are five qualities to be striven after by one who practises meditation;-

(1) In this Sasana, a bhikkhu has complete confidence in the *Arahatta Magga Nāna* and Omniscience of the Buddha, with the understanding that the Fully Self-enlightened Buddha is replete with the nine attributes (of *Araham*, being worthy of the highest veneration; of *Samma Sambuddha*, being Perfectly self-enlightened; ----- p -----; of *Bhagavā*, being endowed with the six great qualities of glory)

(2) He is free from disease, and possesses an equable frame of mind and body, and is endowed with a gastrointestinal system (*pācaka tejo*) which can digest food easily, conducive to practice of meditation.

(3) He is free from pretensions and deceptions, presenting himself as he is to the Buddha or to his associates.

(4) He is diligent in the work of doing away with what is bad and striving after what is good; he is energetic and steadfast in his effort. He possesses unrelenting zeal to perform deeds of merit, free from fault.

(5) He is possessed of wisdom and is one with penetrative knowledge (Path-insight into the state of 'rising and falling' of the conditioned, *Udayabbaya Nāna* that eradicates the suffering of the round of rebirths).

Prince .... as already stated, a person who has these five qualities (termed '*Padhāniyaṅga*': faith, freedom from illness, honesty, diligence, and knowledge of rising and falling of the conditioned, termed, '*Udayabbaya*') is capable of realizing *Arahatta-phala* within seven years under the guidance of a leader (teacher) in the person of the Buddha and can live happily.

Prince..., if a period of seven years is considered to be too long, a person who has these five qualities can realize *Arahatta phala* within six, five, four, three, two, one year under the guidance of a leader (teacher) in the person of the Buddha and can live happily.



Prince..., should a period of one year is considered too long, one possessed of these five qualities can realize *Arahatta-phala* stage within seven months under the guidance of a leader (teacher) in the person of the Buddha and can live happily.

Prince..., should a period of seven months is considered to be too long, one endowed with these five qualities can realize *Arahatta-phala* within six, five, four, three, two, one month, half a month (15 days) under the guidance of a leader (teacher) in the person of the Buddha and can live happily.

Prince..., should a period of 15 days is considered to be too long, one endowed with these five qualities can realize *Arahatta-phala* within seven days, six days, five, four, three, two, one day under the guidance of a leader in the person of the Buddha and live happily.

Prince..., should a period of one day is considered to be too long, one endowed with these five qualities can realize *Arahatta-phala* within half a day that is, one endowed with these five qualities and instructed by the Buddha in the evening realize *Arahatta-phala* in the morning, when instructed in the morning will realize the *Arahatta-phala* in the evening."

This was the answer given in response to the question of Prince Bodhi.

Here are some points connected with the five *Padhāniyaṅga* factors: from a verse written by Ledi Sayadaw to be learnt by heart

Faith, health, honesty,  
Diligence, insight into state of flux,  
Qualities to be striven after,  
For attainment of *Arahatta-magga!*

Of these five mundane factors, confidence or faith (*Saddha*) may be divided into four classes:-

(1) *Āgama saddhā*: Faith of Bodhisattas that has remained unshaken since the time of making the resolution to become a Buddha.

(2) *Adhigama: saddhā*: Faith of the *Ariya puggalas* that remains unshaken since the time of realization of *Magga Nana*.

(3) *Okappana saddhā*: Faith in the Buddha as one who is perfectly Self-Enlightened; in the Dhamma which has been well-taught; in the Sangha for its uprightness.

(4) *Pasāda saddhā*: Simple adoration through respect for the moral virtues of the Buddha, the Dhamma and the Sangha

Of these four modes of *saddhās*, *Okappana saddhā* should be considered as the Faith factor forming a constituent of the *Padhāniyañga*.

When prince Bodhi had heard of the practical and personal knowledge of the Dhamma preached by the Tathagata, he said these words of adoration and praise: "One who practises as taught by the Buddha in the evening is able to attain Path and Fruition in the morning; one who practises as taught by the Buddha in the morning is able to attain Path and Fruition in the evening. The Buddha is wonderful, the Dhamma is wonderful; the way of preaching the Dhamma, which is good in the beginning, good in the middle and good in the end, is wonderful, indeed. Thus the prince said in praise of the way in which the Tathagata had preached the Dhamma.

When the youth Sanjikaputta heard of prince Bodhi's address of appreciation of the discourse, he spoke against the prince: This prince Bodhi has said that Buddha is wonderful, the Dhamma is wonderful for being good in the beginning, good in the middle and good in the end, and he also praised the way in which the Dhamma was preached: with all that the prince does not seem to have taken refuge in the Buddha, the Dhamma and the Sangha.

Whereupon, the prince explained him in detail:-

"My dear man .... Sañjikaputta... please do not say so; please do not say so my dear man Sañjikaputta, please take note of

certain facts which I am about to tell you now, that I had heard from my mother in the past:

When the Tathagata was taking up residence at Ghositarama monastery in the country of Kosambi, my mother respectfully approached the Tathagata and made a solemn request: "Most Exalted Lord .... please be so kind as to do honour to my coming child, a son or a daughter, whom I am bearing now, and who takes refuge in the Buddha, the Dhamma and the Sangha by accepting him/her as a lay devotee (*upasakā* or *upasikā*, as the case may be) from the time of his/her birth to the time of death"

My dear man, Sañjikaputta .... when the Tathagata was taking up residence in this very sanctuary of Bhesakala forest in the province of Bagga, my governess approached the Tathagata carrying me in her arms and made a request "Most Exalted Lord... this prince Bodhi takes refuge in the Buddha, the Dhamma and the Sangha; please be so kind as to regard this Bodhi prince as a lay devotee from today till he breathes his last.

My dear man, Sañjikaputta .... in addition to the two requests made by my mother and my governess, "I do hereby for the third time take refuge in the Buddha, the Dhamma and the Sangha. The Most Exalted Lord, may you regard me as a devout lay devotee from today for the rest of my life!

(A question might arise as to the effectiveness or otherwise of the requests made by his mother and the guardian on his behalf? Strictly speaking, they were not effective due to lack of volition, *cetana* on the part of the person concerned; there is no such thing as taking refuge in the three Gems without volition.

Does it mean that those two previous requests became null and void?. As a matter of fact, they were not absolutely valueless; they served as a stepping stone to devotional faith and placed the prince in good stead. He became aware of the attributes of the three Gems when his parents acquainted him

with what they had done for him in anticipation of his arrival. He virtually became a confirmed lay devotee the moment he was aware of the attributes of the Triple Gems and placed his confidence in them.

(Facts connected with Prince Bodhi are taken from *Majjima paññāsa Bodhi Rājakumāra Sutta Pali, Atthakata* and *Tika*)

### Prince Bodhi Attained *Sotapatti*

After that, prince Bodhi sat at a place free from six faults and addressed the Tathagata: "Most Exalted Lord .... I am one of your devotees: my mother had requested for the first time for favour of your accepting me as a lay devotee before I was born and my governess had repeated a similar request for the second time holding me in her arms when I was a baby;

I have also renewed the request for the third time when I came of age. With all that you have refused to tread on the white carpet laid by a devotee like me: may I be enlightened as to the cause of all this!"

Whereupon the Tathagata asked him: "Prince .... what was your object of laying that white carpet?" "Exalted Lord .... I had done it with the thought and wish that if I would be bestowed with a son or a daughter, the Tathagata would decide to tread on it" was his admission.

The Tathagata said in response: "That was the reason why I did not tread upon it". The prince again asked: "Glorious Lord .... am I destined to go without any off-spring, a son or a daughter?". "Aye ... prince" replied the Lord.

The prince asked "What was the cause of it?" The Tathagata gave him a hint; "This is because you had been forgetful and had indulged in the five sensual pleasures in association with your wife, as a partner, in a past existence!" The prince requested the Tathagata to enlighten him when and in what existence had he been forgetful and indulgent in the five sensual pleasures". The following is the Tathagata's reply to his request:-

Once upon a time, hundreds of people went across the ocean by means of a big boat. The boat was wrecked in the middle of the journey and all the travellers perished with the exception of a couple who managed to land on an island by means of a plank.

The island was inhabited by quite a large number of birds, and the couple, being pressed by hunger, managed to satisfy their hunger by baking the eggs of the birds for their meals. When they found that eggs alone would not do, they killed young birds for their meals through out their first, second, and third stages of their lives. They did not realize at all that their indulgence in pursuit of luxurious living constituted a wrong deed.

Having revealed their past immoral deeds, the Tathagata proceeded to evaluate their guilt saying :-

Prince... Had you and your wife realized your wrong deeds at a certain stage of life, you might stand a chance of getting off-springs at a corresponding stage of your present existence.

Had any one of you realized the wrong deed, there is a chance of getting off-springs on that score.

Prince .... one, who holds oneself dear, will virtually become aware of the advantages of moral acts in all stages of life, failing which, he might guard himself against wrong deeds at one or the other stage of his life.

The Tathagata then went on to preach:-

*Attānañce piyam jaññā,  
rakkheya naṃ surakkitaṃ  
tiṇṇaṃ aññataraṃ yāmaṃ  
paṭijaggeyya paṇḍito.*

Rajakumar .... a wise person who knows to hold himself dear guards himself from any shortcoming in his own interests for the present and future existence; one should see to it that he cleans himself from the dust of ten wrong deeds, in his own interests in one or the other of the three stages of life.

(The passage "A wise person who knows to hold himself dear guards himself" should be understood clearly: In the case of a lay devotee (an ordinary person), he should not consider himself to be well protected by simply shutting himself in the top-most chamber of a mansion with its doors and windows securely fastened and security guards well posted on the outside. In a similar manner, a bhikkhu should not consider himself safe in a cave with its doors and windows securely fastened.

As a matter of fact, a lay devotee guards himself well only by giving alms and observe the precepts as far as possible. A bhikkhu guards himself by performing his routine duties towards his associates and elderly bhikkhus, and striving to learn the scriptures and practise meditation in the interests of their progress and security.

The passage that reads: "One should see to it that he cleans himself in one or the other of the three stages of life" means; it is imperative that a bhikkhu or a lay man should strive to gain merit by observance of precepts of his own prescribed standard in all stages of life or failing which at one of the stages of life.

When one cannot perform meritorious deeds at playful young age, he should do it at the second stage of life, failing which due to the burden of a household life, he should do it at the last stage of life without fail. Such a person is considered to have worked out for his self-purification. One who fails to work out for his own purification is considered to be one who does not hold himself dear and to be paving his own way to the plane of misery.

In case where a bhikkhu fails to observe bhikkhu precepts and practise meditation at the first stage, due to pressure of work and studies, he should do so at the second stage. When he could not find time to observe bhikkhu precepts and practise meditation due to heavy burden of advanced studies at the second stage, he should on no account fail to do it at the third and final stage of life. Only then could he be considered to be a person who works out his own purification, one who holds

oneself dear and would be free of bitter regret. This is the correct interpretation of these lines under reference.)

At the conclusion of the discourse, prince Bodhi attained the fruitional stage of *Sotapatti*, and the discourse proved to be beneficial to those present on that occasion.

(This is the story of prince Bodhi)

### **Mara entered the belly of the Venerable Moggallana**

Once upon a time, Maha Moggallana was taking up residence at a monastery in the Bhesakala forest sanctuary near the town of Susumaragira in the province of Bagga. While he was taking a walk in an open space, Māra, the Evil One, chanced to enter his belly and sat on top of the larger intestine. Mahā Moggallana felt that his belly weighed heavy like a mass of stone. The belly was tight and weighty as though it was full of cooked gram or a bag full of damp and watery gram. He considered that should the heaviness in his stomach be due to indigestion, it would not be proper to keep on walking in the open; he eventually retired to the chamber and sat on a reserved seat.

Mahā Thera kept on deliberating as to the cause of the trouble in a normal way. Had he made any attempt to rub his stomach after contemplating on the purity of his Sila and making a will to do away all the pain caused by indigestion or diturbances of internal system, the stupid Māra would have been torn into particles. But he did not make any attempt to allay his pain in that manner; he simply kept on deliberating its cause in a normal way.

After thus scrutinizing the cause of his stomach pain, when Maha Moggallana noticed the evil Māra to be sitting on top of the larger intestine, he said: "Evil Māra... get out; Evil Mara... get out.. don't you try to give trouble to the Tathagata! Don't you try to bring trouble upon yourself and suffer the consequences for a long time" (Mahā Thera had said this because, any attempt to give trouble to the children means giving trouble to the parents. In a like manner, to give trouble to the disciples amounts to giving trouble to the master. That was what

the Mahā Thera meant when he says "Don't you give trouble to the Tathagata".)

Māra was thinking that "this bhikkhu has been saying: 'Evil Māra... get out, don't you give trouble to the Tathagata! Don't you try to give trouble to the disciple of the Tathagata. Don't you try to bring trouble upon yourself and suffer the consequences for a long time" without seeing me at all". He was also of the impression that even the Tathagata would not have the power to notice him, leave alone his disciple. Whereupon, Mahā Moggallana made it plain to Mara: "Evil Māra, I know you and I know what has been going on in your mind .... don't you think that I have no power to know about your thought: You are Evil Mara, you have been presently thinking I know nothing about you, when I said: "Get out Evil Māra... don't try to give trouble to the Tathagata. Don't you try to bring trouble to the disciple of the Tathagata! Don't you try to give trouble to the disciple of the Tathagata. Don't you try to bring trouble upon yourself and suffer the consequences for a long time" You have been thinking that even the Tathagata would not have the power to notice you, leave alone a disciple like him "Isn't that what was going on in your mind?"

Māra came to realize that the Thera had actually noticed him and knew his thought, otherwise he would not have said "Get out Evil Māra .... don't you try to give trouble to the Tathagata .... don't you try to give trouble to his disciple .... don't you try to bring trouble on yourself and suffer the consequences for a long time" and so he came out of the Mahā Thera's stomach and got himself hidden on the outside of the door.

When the Mahā Thera noticed him standing outside of the door, he said to him: "Evil Māra, I see where you are at present; don't you think I can't see you. I see you standing on the outer-side of the door." Then it occurred to the Mahā Thera:-

"Odour emitted from the human body can cause inconvenience to celestial beings one hundred yojanas away in the region of atmosphere (air) (see Di: 2: 260) Māra belongs to the realm of *Paranimmita Vasavatti* inhabited by powerful devas who are noted for their purity and delicate body. But, since Māra had



accommodated himself on top of the filthy intestine, it may be assumed that he is out to do me harm and cause my destruction. For a being with such a frame of mind, there should not be any immoral act that he is loathe to do!

He does not seem to have any sense of shame and dread of consequences of evil acts. It would, therefore, be wise, in the circumstances, to let him know that we were relatives by blood and to make him meek and sober before he can be persuaded to leave".

With this end in view, Mahā Moggallana acquainted Mara with the fact that he was his nephew by revealing the course of his own unwholesome life in a previous existence.

#### **Mahā Moggallana's unwholesome life of the past**

Evil Māra... there was an event of interest that occurred in the time of Kakusandha Buddha. I was a Mara by the name of Dusi and my sister was Kali and you were then the son of my sister. Thus you were my nephew then.

(In this connexion, Mahā Moggallana recounted a succession of paternal and maternal relatives from knowledge handed down from generation to generation. In the case of human beings, a son ascended the throne of his father by inheritance. but this is not the case with beings of the celestial world: a celestial being springs into life to take the place of another celestial being as and when his predecessor dies, according to his merits. The present Vasavatti Māra, was a nephew of Dusi Māra. After passing away from that existence, he performed good deeds and consequently became Vasavatti Māra, according to his merits.) It was not that Dusi Mara's nephew was still remaining in existence in that realm.)

Having acquainted Māra of how they were related by blood in a previous existence, Mahā Moggallana went on to reveal the fact that he, in the capacity of Dusi Mara, had committed a heinous act, and he

had to suffer in the plane of miseries for a long time (vide Pitaka Burmese translation of *Mūlapaññāsa Pali Text*).

Evil Māra .... I was Dusi Māra during the time of Kakusandha Buddha, whose Chief disciples were Vidhūra and Sañjiva. The Chief disciple Vidhura excelled the rest in matters concerning the Law (Dhamma); hence he was called *vidhūra*, meaning a wise Thera. Sanjiva Thera would abide in *Nirodha Samāpatti* with ease wherever he might be, either in a forest, at the base of a tree, or at a secluded place. Once it so happened that cow-herds, farmers and passers-by mistook him for a dead bhikkhu in a sitting posture, while he was in the middle of enjoying *Nirodha Samāpatti*. They all collected fire-wood, dried grass and cow-dung and placed them on his body, got them alight as an act of cremation and departed.

(*Anāgamis* and Arahats wishing to enjoy *Nirodha samapatti* perform four preliminary functions of willing (1) that such possessions of his as are not on his person may not be destroyed by the five enemies such as fire etc.; (2) that he may wake up even before the messenger arrives and be ready when his services are required by the Order; (3) that he may wake up even before the messenger arrives and be ready when called or sent for by the Buddha; (4) that he will not pass away while he is still absorbed in *Samāpatti*, (this is achieved by preliminary ascertaining of the time of expiry of his life-continuum). It is not necessary to will for the safety of what he is wearing etc.; and not a single thread of his robe was even affected by the fire caused by the cow-herds and others.

Evil Mara ... on the following morning, Sanjiva emerged from *samāpatti*, and came out treading on the burning red hot cinders of the colour of agati flower, shaking off dust from the robe, and entered the village for a round of receiving food. Cow-boys, farmers and passers by who had cremated him the day before, were struck with wonder when they noticed the Maha Thera on his round of receiving alms. They told among themselves: "This is a sort of miracle which had never occurred before; the bhikkhu was seen to have died in sitting posture the other day, and he is miraculously back to life again" Evil Māra... all those

people had therefore called the Mahā Thera by the name of Sanjiva for his being back to life again; *Sanjiva*.

### Māra Dusi's heinous acts

Evil Māra... Dusi Māra hit upon a plan to create a situation that would agitate the minds of the good natured bhikkhus by cruel means. He thought to himself "I have no knowledge of whence those virtuous, righteous bhikkhus come from and where they are bound for; I will incite the brahmin householders to decry those bhikkhus who are reputed to be virtuous and righteous, to speak evil of those bhikkhus among themselves using abusive language, despising, condemning, decrying, and deriding the bhikkhus. Such behaviour on the part of the brahmin householders would disturb and derange them, thereby creating a chance for me to cause harm to them."

Evil Māra...that Dusi Māra went ahead to incite the brahmin householders to act according to his instructions by calumniating and humiliating the bhikkhus, with the result that brahmin householders started to speak ill of the bhikkhus through misunderstanding:

"Those bhikkhus with foul means of livelihood, those shavelings of dirty, low castes, born of the arched upper part of a Brahma's foot, sitting down lazily, gloomily pretending to be enjoying jhana, with bent necks and faces drooping down;

They may be likened to an owl lying in wait for rats in the foliage of a tree, a fox looking stily for fish along the bank of a river, like a cat lying in wait for its prey at the mouth of a drainage pipe or at a garbage container, like an ass, with a hole in its back, moping near a garbage dump at a corner of a fencing; those bhikkhus shavelings of dirty, low castes, born of the arched upper part of a Brahma's foot, sitting down lazily, gloomily pretending to be enjoying jhana, with bent necks and faces drooping down."

They thus abused the bhikkhus, by using abusive and harsh words, they calumniated the bhikkhus according to the instruction of Dusi Māra, through misunderstanding.

Most of those people were reborn in the planes of woes: such as *niraya* or hell, the worlds of animals, *petas*, and *asuras*, according to the sum of guilt.

(We should consider the following points with reference to the passage: "Most of those people were reborn in the four planes of woes" in order to arrive at a correct view of the case.

If those people were possessed by Dusi Māra and were made to abuse the bhikkhus as his 'agents', they were not guilty of such an offence because of lack of intent or volition on their part in doing so. Dusi Māra was solely responsible for this immoral act and it follows that those people were not liable to be reborn in the planes of misery on that score!

What actually happened was this: Dusi Māra did not attempt to possess them and use them as his agents, but he created a situation that compelled them to turn against the bhikkhus through misunderstanding. He created scenes that showed the presence of women in the vicinity of the bhikkhus; scenes that showed the presence of men in the vicinity of bhikkhunis; bhikkhus in the act of fishing with traps and nets, of catching birds with traps, of hunting with hordes of hounds in the forest, enjoying drinks in the company of women at the liquor shops, dancing and singing; women lingering in the vicinity of bhikkhus and young men in the vicinity of the residence of the bhikkhunis at dusk. (These were the tactics adopted by Dusi māra).

People noticed such incompatible, discordant scenes whenever they went to the forests, to the parks and to the monasteries, so much so, that they were thoroughly disgusted with the bhikkhus and agreed among themselves not to make any further offerings to them saying, "These bhikkhus indulge in acts inappropriate for them; how should we gain merit by making offerings to such base persons?"

They reviled the bhikkhus whenever they saw them and they were thus reborn in the planes of misery for their unwholesome deeds toward bhikkhus.)

Evil Māra .... when Kakusandha Buddha came to know that his bhikkhus had been outraged by the people under the undue influence of Dusi Māra, he urged his disciples to cultivate the four sublime abodes, *vihara* (1) *Mettā*: Loving kindness, (2) *Karuṇā*: Compassion, (3) *Muditā*: Altruistic Joy, (4) *Upekkhā*: Equanimity. The bhikkhus cultivated the four Factors of Jhana, the *Brāhmā Vihāra*, with due diligence as instructed by the Tathagata.

When Dusi Māra found out that such a tactic could not influence the minds of the bhikkhus, whose past existences and future destinations were beyond his range of intelligence, he decided, once again, to reverse the mode of his tactics by influencing the people to pay homage and make offerings, with ulterior motive to disturb and derange the bhikkhus, thus giving him opportunity to harm them. (His tactic will be dealt with later on).

Evil Māra .... those Brahmins did as they were bid paying homage and offering alms to bhikkhus.

Evil Māra .... most of those people were reborn in the celestial planes of happiness for such acts of merit.

(Some points of interest with regard to the attainment by the people to the planes of happiness:-

Just as Dusi Māra created unpleasant scenes on the previous occasion, so he created pleasant and agreeable scenes to promote devotional faith of the people in the bhikkhus:

He created scenes depicting the bhikkhus in different postures; some were flying in the sky, some standing or sitting with crossed-legs, some stitching robes, others preaching or learning canonical literatures, and spreading robes over their bodies for warmth in the sky as well as young novices plucking flowers in the sky. (This is another tactic of Dusi Māra).

When the people noticed the bhikkhus engaged in such activities wherever they went, in the forests, in the gardens or in the monasteries, they told the people in the town their own

experience saying, "These bhikkhus, even young novices are of great glory and powers and worthy of offering. It is greatly beneficial to make offerings to such glorious, worthy bhikkhus."

People made offerings to the bhikkhus in the form of robes, food, monasteries and medicine and earned great merit; they were reborn in the celestial planes of happiness after death for such acts of merit!

"Evil Māra .... it was how Dusi Mara used his undue influence on the people to pay homage and make offerings to the bhikkhus once again." After revealing this part of that fateful event to Mara, Kakusandha Buddha turned to the bhikkhus and urged them to practice meditation: "Come bhikkhus, abide practising meditation by repeated contemplation on the unpleasantness of the physical body (*asubha*); repulsiveness of material food (*Ahare patikula*) unpleasant, undelightfulness, unsatisfactory nature of the world (*Anabhirati*), unsubstantiality and impermanent nature of the conditioned phenomena (*anicca*)"

Evil Māra .... in obedience to the exhortation of Kakusandha Buddha, all the bhikkhus meditated on *asubha*, *ahare patikula*, *anabhirati*, *anicca* in the forests or secluded corners and at the base of the trees, with the result that they attained Arahatsip in due course.

(N.B. Kakusandha Buddha visited all the residential places of the bhikkhus in the world, regardless of the number of bhikkhus at one place, and urged them to take up meditation. The bhikkhus practise these four kinds of meditation as foundation of their spiritual work and went on to cultivate insight meditation, ultimately gaining Arahatsip.

Evil Māra .... some time afterwards, Kakusandha Buddha went on alms round, attended by the Right-hand Chief disciple, Venerable Vidhura, when Dusi Māra failing to achieve an opportunity to harm bhikkhu by instigating the householders to revile them or also to honour them, made his last bid to destroy the Sangha by himself; he took possession of a youngster and threw a handful of stones at Ashin Vidhura. The stones hit the Mahā Thera's head cutting the skin and touching the skull, as the result of his assault.

Evil Māra .... the Venerable Vidhūra followed Kakusandha Buddha with streams of blood running down his head, unmoved or unshaken by the incidence. Thereupon, Kakusaṇḍha Buddha turned around bodily to look at him, with the look of an elephant and condemned the offender: "This foolish Dusi Māra does not know his own limits", and at that very moment Dusi Māra passed away from the world of devas. He was reborn in the plane of misery.

(Herein, the passage "with the look of an elephant" should be understood that, when an elephant turns to look at an object, it does not turn its head only, it actually makes a right-about-turn.

The bones of ordinary people are joined together with their edges touching one another; in the case of Pacceka Buddhas bones are joined together by hooks at the end of each joint; in the case of Buddhas bones are joined together by rings on either side of the joints. It is for this reason that Kakusandha Buddha had to make complete turn of the body before he could look at the object behind his back, like a golden figure turning round by mechanism. Kakusaṇḍha Buddha thus turned round and made that remark: "This Dusi Māra does not know his own limits. He has done an extremely, heinous act."

In connexion with the passage: "At this moment Dusi Mara passed away from the world of devas and was reborn in the planes of misery" it should be understood that, devas of the celestial planes usually die in their respective planes at the expiry of their terms of life. It should not be taken, therefore, that Dusi Māra died in the world of man. It should be understood that he went back to the celestial plane and passed away from there to be reborn in the plane of misery.

It should be borne in mind that, although Dusi Māra died the moment Kakusaṇḍha Buddha turned round to look at the scene of crime, it does not mean that he lost his life on that score. As a matter of fact, his life term was cut off as if by a huge axe because of his atrocious offence against a Buddha's chief disciple who was possessed of great virtues and vast attributes.)

Evil Māra .... Dusi Mara had to serve his term of punishment in the three planes of misery, namely, *chaphassāyatanika*, *sāṅkusamāhata*, and *paccatavedanīya*.

(N.B. The denizens in this type of hell, had their sense-organs (eye, ear, nose, tongue, body, chest (heart) pierced by tapered iron-rods, and as a result they were constantly subjected to excessive pains at the site of each sense organs termed 'pains through contact'; and that plane of misery is accordingly known as '*Chaphassāyatanika* plane of misery': The same hell is also known as '*Sankusamahata* plane of misery' because it has abundant supply of tapered iron-rods to punish the denizens. Another name for it is *Paccatavedanīya*, because of its nature of self-infliction even without anyone to impose the suffering.)

Evil Mara .... warders of this hell used to come at regular intervals, and told me that when two javelins had come together at my chest it would mark the completion of a thousand years.

(N.B. The passage: "When the two javelins have come together." needs to be explained. The denizens of this type of hell measure three gavutas in size. The executioners, in two groups, started to punish them by piercing and lacerating his body with javelins (tapered iron-rods) from the chest; saying, "This is the spot where your thoughts had arisen to do evil."

Each javeline was of the size of a palm tree in diameter; each party of executioners comprised fifty, in number; one group went from the chest towards the head causing severe pains by lacerating with javelins all their way. The other group made their way towards the feet from the chest in like manner. Each party took 500 years to reach the head or to the feet, or one thousand years to make a complete round trip when the two groups come together again at the chest.")

Evil Mara .... I had to suffer tormentation in that Great Hell for hundreds of thousands of years, and on being released, I had to pass through a sub-section of that hell, named *Ussāda*, where I was



subjected to punishment more severe than in the Great Hell, for ten thousand years before the final release.

Evil Māra .... I had the body of human beings and the head of fish through out the term of tormentation in that Hell. (The head of man is round and on it the javelins are liable to slip off whereas the head of fish is long and flat and serves as a good target.

After recounting the events of the past, the venerable Mahā Moggallana proceeded to preach the Māra in twenty one stanzas to make him repent his own follies:

The hell where Dusi Māra was punished for offending the Arahat Vidhūra the disciple of the Buddha as well as the Buddha himself, has the nature of being tormented by piercing with iron javelins; these javelins will give punishment automatically, even without executioners.

Evil Māra .... You are liable to be tormented in such a hell for offending the disciple of the Buddha, who has understood the cause and effect of any deed. (a)

There are certain abodes situated in the middle of the ocean. They have the pleasant appearance of gems with brilliant colours. A great number of celestial maidens can be seen singing and dancing in those abodes.

Evil Māra .... you have offended the chief disciple of the Tathagata, who is fully aware of those abodes, pleasures enjoyed by those celestial maids, and causal conditions of those pleasures. (b)

That bhikkhu had caused the Pabbayon monastery, donated by Visākha, mother of the rich man Migara, to be shaken even while being watched by the company of Sanghas at the instance of the Tathagata.

Evil Māra .... you will have to suffer the consequences of your offence against the bhikkhu accomplished in *Abhiñña* and *pañña*. (c)

That bhikkhu had caused the Sakka's Vejayanta palace to be shaken with his big toe, with the aid of his supernormal power, thereby frightening all the devas.

Evil Māra .... you will have to suffer the consequences of your offence against the the Bhikkhu accomplished in *Abhiññā* and *paññā*.

(d)

That Bhikkhu had gone to the Vejayanta palace of Sakka and asked him this question: "Sakka.. do you know the fact of emancipation that is void of all forms of desires?" Sakka, on being asked thus gave the right answer.

Stupid Māra .... you will have to suffer the consequences of your offence against a disciple of the Tathagata, who is accomplished in *Abhiññā* and *paññā* which enabled hin to ask such a question. (e)

That bhikkhu had asked the Brahma a question near the Sudhamma Dhamma Hall: "Dear lay devotee... are you still of the erroneous view that there is no powerful bhikkhu or recluse capable of coming to the realms of the Brahmas?; have you ever seen the overwhelming rays of the Tathagata that excell those of the illuminations of the Brahmas, of their mansions, and of their costumes?"

The Brahma answered "I no longer hold the old erroneous views; I see the rays of the Buddha that surpass the illuminations of the Brahmas and of their mansions and of their costumes: Why should I insist any more that I am permanent, or an immortal being?"

Evil Mara .... you will have to suffer the consequence of the offence against the disciple of the Tathagata, who is accomplished in *Abhiññā* and *paññā* which enabled him to ask such questions. (f)

That bhikkhu had contacted, through *Abhinna* based on *vimokkha Jhāna*, the summit of the Maha Meru and the four islands continents, East, West, South and North, at the time of suppressing the dragon King, Nandopananda: (the Venerable Maha Moggallana had covered the Maha Meru and the four islands continents through the agency of a created dragon at that time).

Evil Mara .... you will have to suffer the consequences of your offence against the desiple of the Buddha, who is accomplished in *Abhiññā* and *paññā* which enabled him to ask such questions. (g)

(N.B In dealing with the Māra, the Venerable Maha Moggallana was referring to himself as if he was another bhikkhu, and such a mode of preaching is termed *Annapadesa* method.

The Venerable Mahā Moggallana managed to subdue Mara by exhibition of his Supernormal Power, *Abhiññā* in seven ways from (a) to (g): (a) with reference to *Māratajjaniya Sutta* of *Mūlapaññāsa Pali Text*;

(b) with reference to his supernormal power to go on tours of preaching as in *Vimāna Vatthu* and *Peta Vatthu*.

(c) with reference to exposition of *Mahā Moggallana Sutta* in *Mahā Vagga Saimyutta Pali Text*.

(d) & (e) with reference to *Culatanhāsāṅkhaya Sutta* of *Mūlapaññāsa Pali Text*.

(f) with reference to *Aññātara Brāhma Sutta* of *Sagātha Vagga Samyutta*.

(g) with reference to *Visuddhi Magga* Commentary, Second Vol., on the suppression of the dragon King, Nandopananda.

Fire does not make any effort to burn the foolish person. It is the foolish person who gets himself burnt by touching the fire. Just as the foolish person gets himself burnt by touching the fire, so will you be causing to be burnt yourself by offending the Buddha. (h)

Māra ....you have done sinful act by offending the Chief Disciple of the Buddha. Do you fancy that your sinful act will not produce any fitting result? (i)

Evil Mara .... The amount of unwholesome acts standing against you increases with the progress of time. Evil Māra .... have you not got tired of doing harm to the Buddha? (you should have taken lesson from the evil acts of your uncle Dusi Mara who had to suffer in realms of misery. You should at once cease your acts of harm to the disciples of the Buddha. (j)

The Venerable Mahā Moggallana thus exhorted the Māra, citing examples, so as to repent his follies and dread the consequences, for a

long period, in the forest sanctuary of Bhesakala, with the result that Mara, with a heavy heart, disappeared on the spot.

### An Account of the Lay devotee Brahmin Pancagga

After keeping up the eighth vassa and emancipating sentient beings worthy of emanation by preaching *Bodhi Raja Kumar Sutta* and other discourses, in the Bhesakala forest sanctuary near the town of Susumaragira, the Tathagata left for Savatthi to take up residence in the Jetavana Monastery.

There was a Brahmin lay devotee by the name of Pancagga Dayaka. He was so named because of his habit of offering five kinds of stuff that came first and foremost in the process of production (1) first ears of grains from his fields; (2) the first harvested grain; (3) the grain stored first in a granary (4) the cooked meal from the first pot (5) the first stuff laid on the breakfast table. (*Pañca* - five earliest products or stuff, and *dāyakā* - donor, hence *Pañcagga-dāyakā*). The following is an illustration:-

( i ) He used to offer the first ears of corns, barley or oats from his fields to the Buddha and Sangha in the form of gruel prepared with milk in the belief that offering the first products will yield early benefits. This is the offering made of the first crop from the field.

( ii ) When the grain was mature and ripened, he had the grains put in a heap after threshing and winnowing and prepared them into meals and offered them first to the Buddha and the Sangha. This is the offering made of the grains from the first heap of the harvest.

( iii ) After storing the harvested crops in many granaries, when the first granary was opened, he had some grains from the first lot taken out and prepared them as meals for offering to the Buddha and the Sangha. This is the offering made of the grains from the first granary.

( iv ) The cooked food collected from each and every cooking pot was first offered to the bhikkhus. Until such an offering had been made to the Sangha, no one was permitted to partake of the food from the pots. This is the first offering made from the cooking pots.

(v) He never took his breakfast before collecting certain amount for offering to the Buddha and Sangha in the morning, and in the afternoon he collected certain amount from his dining table for offering to beggars, in whose absence, the collected food stuff was given to dogs. This is the offering made before he ever took his meals.

Thus he came to be known as *Pancagga dayaka*, one who made offerings on five kinds of first occasions.

On one early morning, the Buddha looked into the world by means of *Asayamusaya Ñāna* and *Indriya-propriya Ñāna* and perceived the previous supporting conditions of *Pancagga-dayaka* and wife to be established in the *Sotapatti Magga*, and so the Lord had himself tidied up and remained in his own chamber, on that particular morning.

(All the bhikkhus in the monastery used to assemble at the Chamber of the Buddha at the time of going for alms-round every morning; they always went for receiving alms in the town with the Buddha at their head. But the Buddha used to remain in the Chamber behind closed doors whenever he wanted to go all alone. On such occasions, bhikkhus went on alms-round all by themselves after circumambulating the Scented Chamber with tacit understanding that the Tathagata would not go with them for reason known to himself.)

On that day that Buddha remained in his Chamber behind closed doors at the time of going for receiving food. He came out only when it was time for *Pancagga Dayaka* to have his meal.

He entered the city of *Savatthi* all by himself, and the citizens knew that some one would be blessed by the Lord that day. They did not come out as usual to invite the Lord for alms-offering.

The Tathagata went along the route from door to door, and stopped at the door of *Pancagga Dayaka* at a time when the brahmin was holding a bowl of food to be eaten and his wife was in a state of preparedness to fan her husband while enjoying the food. The wife was the first person to notice the Buddha standing in front of their house. She tried to keep the Buddha out of sight of her husband by keeping the fan in between the Tathagata and her husband. She knew that if her

husband saw the Tathagata, he would offer all the food in the bowl to the Tathagata, thereby requiring her to make fresh preparation of food for her husband. At the same time she was assailed with confusion and irreverence. The Tathagata knew all about it and directed the rays of the body towards the couple. When the husband saw the golden coloured rays he asked her, "What's all this?" and he looked around and eventually saw the Tathagata standing at the door of the house. Whereupon the wife dropped the fan and hastened to the Tathagata and paid homage and worshipped the Lord in accordance with the time honoured traditional way. The Tathagata uttered a stanza in praise of her while she was in the act of standing up, as warranted by the favourable circumstance.

*Sabbaso Nāmarupasamim  
Yassa natthi mamāyitam  
asatā ca na socati  
sa ve bhikkhūti vuccati.*

One who has cut off clinging to mental and corporeal elements (*nāma rūpa*) without holding the erroneous views of *I* or *my own* and *he* or *she* is free from sorrow and lamentation. Because of cessation of *nama* and *rūpa* he has penetrated the dark mass of defilements and deserves to be regarded as a holy, noble bhikkhu.

The wife of the brahmin was established in the Fuitional Stage of *Sotapanna* at the conclusion of the discourse.

The Tathagata was invited by the brahmin into his house and offered a seat. He then offered the Lord his share of the food, pouring water as a token of dedicating food to the Blessed One, saying, "Most Exalted Buddha, your Worship is the most Homage-worthy personage in the world with devas and men. May you receive my offer of food by the alms bowl". The Blessed One fulfilled his request by receiving the food offered in his bowl and partaking it. The Blessed One then uttered the following stanza after his meal, noting that the time was appropriate.

*Yadaggato majjhato sesato vā  
piṇḍaṃ labhetha paradathepajīvī  
nalāṃ thulūṃ no be nipaccvādi  
taṃ vāpi mira muni vedayantu*

A bhikkhu lives on food enthusiastically offered by donors, either from the first portion or the middle portion or the last portion of the pot, as a normal means of livelihood. A bhikkhu gratefully does accept the food regardless of which part of the pot that morsel of food comes from. He is not overpleased to receive the first portion of food, nor is he disturbed by being offered the leftovers. He has abandoned the likes and dislikes. Such a person who is regarded only by wise people as one who has eradicated the *asavas*, indifferent to the world and wordly incidents.

Pancagga-dayaka attained the Fruitional stage of *Sotapatti* at the conclusion of the discourse.

(These are excerpts from *Sutta nipata* commentary, exposition on *Muni Sutta*, which is not in agreement with exposition in *Dhammapada* commentary).

### **Buddha's three visits to Sri Lanka**

An account of the Tathagata's three visits to the Island of Sihala (Sri Lanka), in abridged form, on the lines of *Maha vamsa*, Vol. I.

The Tathagata kept up the first vassa after attainment of Buddhahood in Isipatana, Migadaya near Baranasi. From thence he proceeded to the forest of Uruvela to emancipate the hermit Uruvela by exhibition of miracles. At that time the citizens of Anga and Magada were coming round to pay their annual homage to the hermit with gifts to offer. The hermit did not wish the Tathagata to come to the great festival of offering. His thoughts were known to the Blessed One. So on that very day the Tathagata went to Uttaraguru island to receive offering of food, and from thence he returned to the Anotatta lake to have his meal, and at night-fall (ninth month of Enlightenment) he went on to Sihala island.

His visit coincided with the conference of ogres held at a spot which is the location of the garden of Mahanagavana of today, measuring three yojanas in length by one yojana in breadth in the central part of the island along the shore of a river. The Tathagata went to the place where the ogres were holding conference and while standing directly above their heads on the spot where the *Mahīyañgana cetiya* stood today caused heavy rain to fall and strong winds to blow and darkness to descend to frighten them.

Ogres were very much frightened and they beseeched the Tathagata to grant them a place of refuge free from danger. The Tathagata consoled them by telling them that he would relieve them of their anxieties and troubles, if he would be offered a place on the island to stay. Whereupon, they replied "Lord of peace and tranquility... we hereby offer you this very spot and we beseech you to give refuge to all our race on this island."

The Tathagata restored peace and calmed the fears of the ogres by causing the rain, storm and black-out to cease and descended to the earth and spreading a leather rug, sat on it. When the Tathagata spread the leather-rug over the place, ogres ran away to escape from the unbearable heat emanating from the blazing carpet and took refuge in remote areas of the island. The Tathagata caused the island of Giridipa to come close to Sihala to accommodate the restless ogres. Once all the ogres had settled there, the Tathagata caused the island to move back to its original site.

The blazing leather-rug was removed as soon as the Sihala Island was rid of all ogres. Then all the good devas assembled on the island and held a conference among themselves. The Blessed One preached them the Dhamma with the result that crores of beings realized the Four Noble Truths and countless number of devas took refuge in the Three Gems with strong faith.



### **Buddha gave a handful of hair to Mahā Sumana deva at his request**

Mahā Sumana deva, a resident of the Sumanakuta Mountain, attained *Sotapatti* by hearing the Dhamma at that conference. He requested the Buddha for some memorable object of worship; the Tathagata felt his head with his fingers to get a handful of hair and gave it to Maha Sumana deva. After that, the Tathagata returned to Uruvela forest.

Mahā Sumana deva brought the handful of hair in a gold-casket and kept it at a spot that was strewn with varieties of jewelleries; it was where *Mahīyaṅgana Ceti* is standing today. The gold casket containing the handful of hair was enshrined in a small pagoda built of amethyst.

In due course of time, the Venerable Sāriputta's disciple, named the Venerable Sarabhu, brought the neck-bone of the Buddha from a pile of sandal-wood fuel by his supernormal power to this place. He sanctified it by enshrining it in the original stupa of smaller dimension and raised its height to twelve cubits, assisted by a company of bhikkhus. The Venerable Sarabhu then returned after reconstruction of the pagoda.

Years rolled by and prince Uddha Culabhaya, younger brother of King Devānapiyatissa rebuilt the old pagoda to a height of thirty cubits enveloping the smaller ceti. Afterwards King Duṭṭhagamani again reconstructed that pagoda making it eighty cubits high. Thus Mahīyaṅgana Ceti grew to a greater height by successive modification through the years.

This was Buddha's first visit to the Island of Sihala.

### **Buddha's visit to Nāgadīpa Island**

At a time when the Buddha was residing at Jetavana monastery in Savatthi, during the period of the fifth vassa, there was a battle being fought engaging huge armies for the possession of an emerald throne between Mahodara dragon king and his nephew Culodara dragon prince. When the Tathagata perceived this unhappy state of affairs, he

got up early one morning and taking hold of the robe and the alms-bowl, went off to the theatre of war, the island of Nāgadipa, to save the nagas from destruction.

Mahodara dragon king was a powerful king who claimed sovereignty over the Naga country with an area of five hundred yojanas in that part of the ocean.

Mahodara dragon king gave away his sister, Kanha, in marriage with another dragon king ruling over the Vattamana mountain region. In due course, they produced a son named Culodara.

Culodara's maternal grand mother gave her emerald throne to Culodara's mother before her death. Consequently a war broke out over the possession of the throne between King Mahodara and his nephew Culodara. Those inhabitants of the mountain region were also powerful rulers in their own region with their own big army.

There was a dryad called Samiddhi Sumana deity in a Linlun tree (*Buchanania lati folia*) near the arched entrance to Jetavana monastery. He accompanied the Blessed One all along the way to Nagadipa island, carrying the Linlun tree as an umbrella, to protect the Blessed One from weather with the permission of the Blessed one.

This will be further clarified: Samiddhi Sumana deity was a human being in the Nagadipa island in his previous existence. Once he noticed a Pacceka Buddha having his meal at the spot where Rajayatana ceti (popularly known as Linlun ceti) is standing today. He offered the Pacceka Buddha out of reverence a bunch of branches for use in washing and cleaning the bowl, after his meal.

For this deed of merit, he became a dryad of the Linlun tree near the arched entrance to the garden of Jetavana owned by prince Jeta. The Linlun tree stood outside of the monastery since the time of the construction of the monastery.

The Tathagata had brought this Sumiddha Sumana deity together with the Linlun tree for his own benefit and in the interest of the island.

The Tathagata on arrival at the island, sat in the middle of the theatre of war in the sky and caused complete blackout in the area to frighten

the combatants in the battle. Then the Blessed One caused the area to become bright and clear again to relieve the dragons of fear and anxiety. The dragons on seeing the Buddha felt happy and came rallying round him and worshipped his feet with profound respect.

When the Tathagata preached them the Dhamma in the interest of peace and tranquility, the two rival dragon kings were very much delighted and interested in the preaching, so much so, that they made an offering of the emerald throne to the Blessed One by mutual agreement.

Then the Tathagata came down and sat on the throne and partook of the delicious food offered by the Nagas and preached them the Dhamma, with the result that eighty crores of Nagas, both of land and water, took refuge on the Three Gems with great faith.

#### A Request by Dragon King, Maniakkhika

Maniakkhika, the dragon king of Kalayani region, a maternal uncle of Mahodara, also had arrived at Nagadipa Naga King Island to take part in the raging war. He had already taken refuge in the Three Gems at the time of the Tathagata's first visit to the Sihala island. He made a solemn request to the Buddha: "Exalted Lord... you have, indeed, done a great deed of kindness to us by your exhortations. Had you not come to this place, we would have by now been reduced to ashes. Our ardent wish is that, out of compassion, you do an honour to the place of my dwelling, Kalayani, by your visit when you come to the island of Sihala on the next occasion."

The Tathagata kept silent to signify his acceptance of the invitation.

Then the Blessed One urged them to build *Rājayatana Ceti* on that spot as a memorial to the happy occasion. He presented the Linlun tree and returned the emerald throne with instructions to hold them as sacred objects of veneration.

"Dragon lords.. these two objects should be held in high reverence as relics of my utensils, (*Paribhoga Ceti*) in your own interest and for your continued prosperity."

The Tathagata, after leaving those instructions, returned to Jetavana monastery of Savatthi.

These events marked the second visit to the Island of Sihala by the Buddha.

### **Buddha's Third Visit to Sihala Island**

(to enjoy *Samāpatti* at several places)

Three years later, Maniakkhika dragon king went over to Savatthi for presentation to the Buddha of cordial invitation to Sihala island, while the Lord was taking up residence at Jetavana monastery.

It was on a Fullmoon day of Kason (*vesakha*) during the eighth year of Buddha's attainment to Buddhahood (and one day after Maniakkhika's arrival) that the Lord, on being informed of time for having food, put on the robe and went across to Sihala, attended by five hundred bhikkhus.

Dragon King Maniakkhika, accompanied by his dragons, conducted the Tathagata and bhikkhus to a jewelled pandal near the site where Kalayani ceti is situated now and offered delicious food of the celestial world to the Tathagata and bhikkhus with profound respect.

After preaching to Maniakkhika dragon king and all the dragons, the Blessed One travelled through the sky to the Sumana hill and left an impression of his foot, in order that future generations might hold it as a sacred place (*Pāda ceti*). The Blessed One went to the base of the hill in the company of bhikkhus to spend the day and proceeded to Dighavapi.

During his sojourn at Dighavapi, the Blessed One and all the bhikkhus enjoyed *Phala samāpatti* on the spot where Dighavapa ceti is standing to day. This is one of the sacred places held in high reverence by the people from the days of yore. From here the Blessed One proceeded to the Garden of Maha Meghavana.

On arrival at Meghavana garden, attended by the bhikkhus, the Blessed One sat on the spot where Mahabodhi tree stood and enjoyed *Phala Samāpatti* together with the bhikkhus.

From here the Tathagata, accompanied by the bhikkhus, proceeded to the location of Mahaceti and enjoyed *Phala Samāpatti* together with the five hundred bhikkhus and rising from *Samāpatti*, proceeded to the present location of *Thupāyon ceti* and enjoyed *Phala Samapatti* together with the bhikkhus.

Rising from *Phala Samāpatti*, the Tathagata, accompanied by five hundred bhikkhus, went to where Kyauk ceti (Stone pagoda) stands today, and preached the Dhamma to all the devas who happened to be gathered there at that time and returned to Jetavana monastery, in the company of five hundred bhikkhus.

These events marked the Buddha's third visit to Sihala Island. This is the account of Buddha's three visits to Sihala Island.

### End of Chapter Twenty Six.

..... \* .....

## CHAPTER TWENTY SEVEN

### AN ACCOUNT OF RICH MAN GHOSAKA OF KOSAMBI COUNTRY

(This short account of rich man of Kosambi country has been compiled in the light of *Dhammapada Atthakatha*, Vol. I and *Ankuttara Atthakatha*, Vol. I, where full accounts are given.)

Prior to the appearance of the Fully Self-Enlightened Buddha, a deadly infectious disease (*ahivataka*) broke out in the country of Allakappa, and the toll of this plague ranged anything from ten to twenty in a family at a time. Those who evacuated to the other countries escaped death. One of the citizens left allakappa together with wife and a baby son. But they suffered from shortage of food in the middle of crossing a barren land and were in a state of exhaustion. The parents took turns to carry the baby for some time.

The husband was of the idea that the crossing of the desert would not be possible with an extra load of the baby on their shoulders. So he kept himself a bit behind the wife by slowing down the speed as though pressed by the call of nature. He placed the child on the ground in a sitting posture and resumed his journey. When the wife did not see her son in his hands, she enquired about the child asking: "My lord... where is my kiddy?" The husband replied: "What good could he do for us under such a condition of stress and strain; we could produce many children so long as we are alive!". The wife screamed in anger "Such a brute you are .... I will not go along with a cruel person like you." The husband confessed his inconsiderate act and apologized her "Please pardon me for my fault." They were on their road again after picking up the child.

The fatigued couple, with the load of a baby, managed to cross the sandy plane with great difficulty. By evening they reached the hut of cowherds; who had cooked rice with pure milk for their own enjoyment. When they saw the couple and the child, they at once realized that the strangers were hunger-stricken, and offered them a big pot full of rich milk gruel. The wife was moderate in eating and so she

ate just the right measure of food while the greedy husband ate very much beyond the limit, so much so, that he died of indigestion on the next morning. As he was very much attached to the people in the cowherds hut before his death, he took conception in the womb of a bitch.

The bitch gave birth to a lovely puppy in due course. It was well looked after by the cowherd as though it was his own child. The two were very much attached to each other and the little dog followed the cowherd wherever he went.

One morning, a Pacceka Buddha stopped at the door of the cowherd to receive alms-food. The cowherd paid respect and offered food and requested the Pacceka Buddha to stay dependent on him for requisites. Pacceka Buddha took up residence in a grove not far from his dwelling. The cowherd used to take the puppy along with him whenever he went to see the Pacceka Buddha. He used to strike the boulders and dry stumps with a stout staff en route to the dwelling of the Maha Thera, to frighten away the beasts of prey. The puppy took careful note of his master's activities.

On one occasion, the cowherd made it plain to the Pacceka Buddha that it might not be possible for him to attend on him personally every day for one or the other reason. He assured the Pacceka Buddha that the little dog would come to his dwelling to conduct him to and from his hut, on his behalf, in case of his failure to do it himself.

One day, the cowherd sent his little dog to conduct the Pacceka Buddha from the forest to the hut of the cowherd. The little dog went there, and, on arrival, lied with its belly stretched at the feet of the Pacceka Buddha. The Pacceka Buddha realized that the little dog was sent to fetch him; he took the robe and the alms bowl. Being desirous of testing the intelligence of the dog, he went off the beaten track and went towards another direction. Whereupon, the little dog came in front of him and blocked the way. It gave way only when the Pacceka Buddha resumed the right track. He barked aloud at certain spots where his master used to strike the boulders and dried stumps with a stout staff to frighten away the beasts of prey.

The Pacceka Buddha used to give it a big lump of food out of his own bowl every day. The dog was very much attached to the Pacceka Buddha for showing such kindness to him.

At the end of the lent, the cowherd offered a piece of cloth to the Pacceka Buddha for making robes and said: "Reverend Sir... the lent has come to a close and I would leave it to you to stay on at the same place or go to any place of your own choice, and please yourself. "As the Pacceka Buddha appeared to have a desire to leave for another place, the cowherd accompanied him to a certain distance and returned to his hut. When the little dog discovered that the Pacceka Buddha had left for good, it died broken hearted. He was reborn in the deva realm of Tavatimsa.

He was endowed with a voice that excelled that of the other devas of the celestial world as a reward for barking aloud and frightening the beasts of prey as he passed through forest in the company of the Pacceka Buddha in his previous existence. He was therefore known as Ghosaka deva for having a voice that covered the whole of deva realm.

While Ghosaka deva was enjoying the luxurious life of a deva in Tavatimsa, Udena was the King of Kosambi country in the world of men/ (Life of Udena has been dealt with elsewhere in this treatise).

Then Ghosaka deva died and was and conceived in the womb of a courtesan in Kosambi during the reign of Udena. When the courtesan came to know that she had given birth to a son she had the newly born babe cast on the garbage dump.

One of the supervisors of workmen in the employment of rich man of Kosambi noticed the child in the middle of a flock of crows, on his way to his master's house; he was impressed by the look of a lovely child and thought there was a bright future for the child. Therefore he picked up the baby and sent it to his house under the care of one of his workmen while he continued his way to his master's house.

On that morning, rich man of Kosambi met a wise man on his way to the palace of the King Udena. The rich man asked the wise man: "Master ... have you studied the astrological signs of the stars and their trend?". The astrologer examined the movements and behaviour of the



planets on the spot and replied: "Any one born today is destined to become the rich man of Kosambi as he is born in conjunction with such and such stars and planets".

On hearing the predictions of the astrologer, the rich man of Kosambi turned to his attendants and gave instructions: "My dear men .... the predictions of this wise man are always axiomatic and determinate; my wife is an expectant mother, and, you better go to my house and find out if she has given birth to a child." The attendants rushed to his house and hurried back to tell him that his wife has not yet given birth to a child. He sent his men out again to find if there is any child born in the city on this day."

The attendants went all over the town to find out if there was any child born on that day. They discovered that there was a newly born babe in the house of his own labour supervisor. When this was brought to his notice, the rich man sent for the supervisor, and on his arrival, asked a few questions:

Rich man: Is it true that there is a baby in your house who is born today?

Supervisor: Yes... master.

Rich man: Give me that child.

Supervisor: I can't give... master.

Rich man: Take one thousand pieces of money in exchange for the baby!

The labour supervisor tried to speculate mentally: "This baby may or may not live long, the question of life and death is beyond my power of decision." In view of this matter of uncertainty, he decided to accept the money in exchange for the baby.

The rich man conceived an idea "Should my wife give birth to a girl, he would be treated as my own son; should she give birth to a boy, he would be killed." After a few days, the wife of the rich man gave birth to a boy.

### Brutal Acts of the rich man of Kosambi

(1) He thought of placing the adopted son (Ghosaka, son of a courtesan) in the cow-shed to get killed by the treading of the oxen. He accordingly asked his servants to place the kid at the gate of the cow-shed. The boy was placed at the exit of the cow-shed, as instructed by the rich man.

A big bull, the chief of the herd was the first to come out of the compound and to find the baby lying helplessly on the ground. The big bull shielded the baby by standing over it with its four legs placed around the baby like a fence, to protect it from the imminent danger of being trod upon by the oxen. On seeing Ghosaka the cowherds expressed their opinion among themselves "This child must be a favoured child of fortune; even animals seem to know his attributes" and they took him to their house to be looked after by them with mutual consent.

(2) The rich man enquired as to the fate of the child and was told that the baby was safe under the care of the cow-boys. He regained possession of the child by giving the cow-boys one thousand pieces of money in exchange for the child. He then commanded his men to throw away the baby at the cemetery.

The baby was abandoned in the cemetery at a time when the rich man's goat-herd was tending a herd of goats there. A milking she-goat caught sight of the child; she left the herd and kept herself in such a posture as to afford an opportunity for the child to suck her milk. She left the child only after feeding the child in the manner just described. On departure from the pasture in the evening, she went again to feed the child and fed him as she had done in the morning. The goat-herd's attention was drawn by the strange movements of that she-goat on that day, and saw for himself that the she-goat was feeding the child as if it was her own kid. The goat-herd thought to himself: "This child must be a favoured child of fortune; even animals seem to know his attributes" and so he brought the baby to be looked after at his own house.

(3) On the next morning, he sent his men to find out what had happened to the child. When he was told that the baby was safe under

the care of a goat-herd, he sent his men to redeem the child in exchange for one thousand pieces of money and commanded them to place the baby on the cart-track in the busy part of the town so that it might be killed by being trodden by the carts of a trader on the following day.

His servants did as they were told. A train of carts came into the town as expected but the oxen that drew the first cart saw the baby in their track; so they stood still with their legs fixed like four pillars. The leader of the trade band saw the strange spectacle and was greatly moved by it, so much so, that he picked up the baby to be looked after by himself, as the child appeared to be a favoured child of fortune with a bright future.

(4) The rich man sent out his men to find out if the child had been killed by being trodden by the carts of the trader, and when told that the boy was safe under the care of the leader of the trade band, he again asked them to redeem the child in exchange for one thousand pieces of money and to throw the baby down a steep cliff at a distance from the town.

The baby was thrown upside down by the servants, but the child fell right on top of a work-shop of those who manufactured mats from reeds. The mats made of reeds proved to be as soft as cotton that had been ginned a thousand times due to his deeds of merits in the past. The leading workman opined that the baby was a favoured child of fortune with a bright future, and so he brought the child to his house for adoption.

(5) The rich man sent out his men again to enquire into the state of the child. When he came to know all about the child, he asked his servants to recover the child in exchange for one thousand pieces of money, and to bring the child to his house.

In due course of time, the rich man's own son and Ghosaka came of age. The rich man again made a plot to kill the lad in conspiracy with his trusted potter. He therefore went to the potter and confided to him that there was a stupid son in his house whom he wanted to do away with secretly by hook or by crook. The potter said: "O rich man... you should'nt have uttered such a speech, a speech full of sin".

The rich man thought that the potter would not do anything for nothing, and so he paid him one thousand pieces of money to make him yield to his persuasions. He was successful because there is no one bribery can not corrupt. The potter accepted the money and told the rich man: "I will arrange for the pot-kilns to be kept ready on such a such a day", and you might send the boy to me on that date of appointment".

The rich man kept on marking time and on the day of appointment, he asked the youth Ghosaka: "My dear son, I require many pots and I have arranged with our potter to supply them by certain date, you might go now to the potter and ask him to do as he was bid by me without any delay. "Ghosaka replied: "Very well" and left the house.

### **One's own malice brings about one's own ruin.**

On seeing Ghosaka on the road, the rich man's own son came running to him and asked for help: "Elder brother .... I've lost many marbles while playing a game with my play-mates: I do pray that you try to recover the loss I've sustained". Whereupon, Ghosaka said: "I can't do it now, because our father has sent me on an errand". The rich man's own son made another request: "If so, just play for me and recover the lost balls. I will go on the errand on your behalf)";

Whereupon, Ghosaka said: "In that case, you might go to the potter's place and convey the message of the father to the potter in minute detail while I play with the boys to recover the marbles lost to them."

The rich man's son went and conveyed his father's message to the potter on behalf of Ghosaka as agreed. The potter said he would carry out his father's orders; he then took the boy into his house and hacked him into pieces with an axe and put the pieces of the dead boy's body into a mud pot which was later kept along with unbaked mud-pots in the kiln.

Ghosaka lad had won quite a lot of marbles and waited for the return of his younger brother for a time. When the younger boy failed to turn up, he went to the neighbourhood of the potter's place to look for him

and returned home when no trace of his younger brother could be found.

The rich man was astonished to see the return of Ghosaka at a distance and was at a loss to know what had happened. He got up before Ghosaka could even take a seat to explain the matter. "Dear son... did you not go to the potter's place?" The youth replied: "No, father, I didn't go ".He asked him again: "Why did you not go?" The youth explained the reason why he did not go and why the younger brother went there on his behalf, in detail.

The rich man felt as if he was reeling, under the weight of the great earth and scolded him, "my dear son, .... what do you mean by that?" and so saying he hurried to the place of the potter with a greatly agitated mind. When he got to the house of the potter, he could not breathe out full facts of the tragedy and so he simply uttered "Look .. my man, look my man ".But the potter gave him a stiff reply "Rich man ... what do you mean by that... when it is too late!" The rich man had to return home without any further ado. He was reduced to a mental wreck from that time.

(6) The rich man of Kosambi did not take meal together with Ghosaka from that time, and deliberated as to how to do away with his son's rival. He wrote a note and asked Chosaka to deliver it to one of his labour supervisors at a certain village and to tell him verbally that the contents of the note must be translated into action at once. He also instructed the lad to contact one of his boyhood friend, a rich man of Gamaka, and stop at his home for the meals en route to his destination. Chosaka lad had come of age by that time.

Ghosaka paid respect to the rich man. On arrival at the village of Gamaka, he found his way to the rich man's house and stood worshipping in front of him. The local rich man was shaving his beard by the side of a window. When he noticed the lad, he asked: "Young man from where have you come?" He replied with due respect: "Father.... I am the son of rich man of Kosambi". The Gamaka rich man was delighted to see the son of his boyhood friend.

By that time, one of the maids of the daughter of the rich man was on her way to the market to fetch some flowers for her mistress. She was

stopped by the rich man who asked her "Maid... tarry a little, you might wash and brush the feet of this Ghosaka lad and arrange for the provision of bed for him". The maid did as she was bid and went to the market to fetch some flowers as usual.

On seeing the maid with a collection of flowers, the daughter of the rich man scolded her: "You have loitered on the road today...What on earth had made you to take such a long time in fetching the flowers?" Whereupon, the servant girl replied:

"Ahem, Mistress, I've never seen such a beautiful youth before; he is said to be the son of your father's boyhood friend; it is beyond my power to express his handsomeness and graciousness. Your father had asked me to wash his feet and provide a bed in the middle of my way to the market to fetch flowers for you, hence the delay.

(The daughter of the rich man of Gamaka happened to be the wife of the lad Ghosaka four existences ago. On hearing about the youth she was assailed by uncontrollable affection for him.)

The daughter of Gamaka rich man, accompanied by the maid, went to the bed-room and found the Ghosaka lad in sound sleep. She noticed a note tied to the edge of his waist-cloth, and out of curiosity, she tried to detach it quietly and read the content thereof. She discovered that the youth had brought a note that would cause his own life. She got it torn into pieces and wrote another one in substitution for the original one before the lad woke up:

Dear labour supervisor ... I am sending my son to you. My boyhood friend, Gamaka rich man has a daughter who has attained the age of puberty: I want you to collect all the yields accrued from our own estates and regroup them into lots of one hundred each kind for presentation at the matrimonial ceremony between the daughter of Gamaka rich man and my own son, and I wish you to act as my duly accredited representative on that happy occasion.

I also wish you to give me an account of the matrimonial ceremony with a statement of expenditure incurred in connection with the marriage, in due course.

Kosambi Rich man

Kosambi Country.

She got the fresh note nicely stamped with a fabricated seal and tied it to the edge of the waist-cloth of the lad as though nothing untoward had happened to it during his sound sleep.

Ghosaka lad spent for a day in that house and resumed his journey after taking leave from the rich man. On arrival at the place of the labour supervisor, he promptly handed over the note with the information that the contents of the note should be translated into action at once. The labour supervisor, after reading the note, summoned all the villagers and addressed the gathering: "My dear men .... although you do not seem to care much about me, my own master, the rich man of Kosambi, has entrusted me with the responsibility of arranging on his behalf, a matrimonial ceremony for his son Ghosaka and the daughter of Gamaka rich man. It connoted that, all the products issued from this area should be collected and grouped into lots of one hundred each kind for presentation to the couple as his gifts.

When every thing was set, he arranged for the matrimonial ceremony to be performed in a traditional manner and sent a report to the rich man of Kosambi to the effect that the matrimonial ceremony had been conducted and that every thing had been done in compliance with his instructions, with a detailed statement of accounts attached thereto.

On hearing the news, the rich man of Kosambi felt like one suffering from burns and uttered: "Alas! I have been ruined beyond redemption." He suffered both from physical and mental agony and was eventually attacked with acute dysentery, and, yet he had not given up the idea of denying the estate to Ghosaka lad by hook or by crook. He therefore wrote a note with ulterior motive and sent it to the lad. The note reads: "Why have you, my son, stayed there long after your marriage: I want you to come back home urgently".

Upon receipt of the letter, simple minded Ghosaka made preparations for the return journey. The daughter of Ghamaka rich man perceived that the simpleton Ghosaka never knew that it was she who was responsible for his present luxurious life. So, she tried to detain him by her own clever tactics. She convinced him by saying: "My dear man... don't be so hasty; one should make necessary arrangements before one goes to the place of one's relatives" She had thus delayed his early departure for good reasons.

Rich man of Kosambi, with an undaunted will, sent another note stating that he had broken down in health through acute attack of deadly dysentery and he is in a state of hopelessness and the situation warranted his immediate return.

The daughter of Ghamaka rich man could not help revealing, by that time, the true aspects connected with their union and other things at stake.

"My dear man .... rich man of Kosambi is not your own father, though you have all along regarded him as your father. He had sent you to his labour supervisor with a note containing express instructions to kill you right away. I personally destroyed that fateful note and got it substituted by a fresh one of my own design that brought about our union. He did not call you for nothing but to expose that you are not his successor. You should wait until his death."

Soon afterwards rumour that "Kosambi rich man had died" was afloat and the couple made preparations to go there with attendants. The intelligent wife warned her husband to enter the building with great caution and to post escorts around the house before hand. She accompanied her husband as he entered the house, raising her hands and crying as if lamenting. She found her way to the rich man who was lying in a dark corner and struck his chest with her head, as if in great sorrow sending the dying man already weak with ailment to an early death.

After the cremation of the corporeal relics (*sarīrajāpana*) of the rich man of Kosambi, Ghosaka induced by generous bribing the intimate servants of the deceased to tell outsiders that he was the son of the late old man.



### **Title of rich man of Kosambi**

Seven days after the death of the rich man of Kosambi, King Udena considered that he had to find a person to succeed him desirable qualifications to earn the title of a rich man of Kosambi. He ordered his royal servants to find out if the late rich man had a son or not. All the intimate servants of the late rich man unanimously reported that the deceased rich man had a son by the name of Ghosaka, who was worthy of succeeding his father.

King Udena conferred the title of the rich man of Kosambi on Ghosaka complete with insignia of office.

When Ghosaka became the Rich man of Kosambi, his wise and intelligent wife said. "My dear lord ... although we were of lowly origins, we have become great and glorious by virtue of our meritorious deeds of the past, and let us therefore try and keep it up by performing meritorious deeds with redoubled zeal and enthusiasm. Her husband readily accepted her good proposals, and the couple mutually agreed to spend one thousand pieces of money every day in humanitarian acts, *nibaddha dana* without any breach or breakage through out their lives.

(This is an account of the rich man of Kosambi compiled in the light of Anguttara Commentary Vol. I).

### **Buddha kept the ninth vassa in Kosambi**

There were three distinguished rich men in Kosambi country before the time of the Fully Self-Enlightened Buddha. They were Ghosaka, Kukkudha, and Pavarika who were boyhood friends. They looked upon five hundred hermits as their teachers (in the absence of a Buddha) and looked after them well. All the hermits used to take up residence at Kosambi during the rains lasting four months and retreated to the forests of Himalayas in summer and winter seasons lasting eight months.

Years rolled by, and one day, they felt exhausted after crossing a vast barren land without water on their way from the Himalayas to Kosambi. They eventually came upon a huge banyan tree and naturally entertained the hope that "from the look of the banyan tree, there should be a guardian deity powerful enough to provide them with water.

The guardian deity of the banyan tree thought it would be well to fulfill the need of the hermits, and he caused a stream of water, about six inches in volume, to flow from the fork of his tree. When the hermit saw the silvery water they received it with their cups and quenched their thirst. After quenching their thirst, they began to think that it would be a good thing if the guardian deity could also provide them with food, since they happened to be in the thick of a forest far away from the villages. Whereupon, the guardian deity offered them celestial gruel suitable for the hermits.

The hermits thought, since the guardian deity had provided them with food and water, they now had a desire to see him in person. The hermits asked him: "O deva .... you are enjoying such pleasure; therefore, we wonder what kind of deeds of merit you had done in your previous existence? The deity replied: "I had observed the eight precepts for half a day in my previous existence".

This will be further explained: This guardian deity of the banyan tree was one of the servants of Anathapindika in his previous life. It was customary amongst the occupants of the house of Anathapindika at all levels, to keep precepts on every sabbath day. One early morning (of a sabbath day) a workman was required to go to the place of work to perform his duties. When Anathapindika took a list of the recipients of food for that day, he discovered that the work man was the only one who had gone to the forest for work that day. So he allowed the cook to draw food for the evening just enough for that workman. The cooking woman drew the allotted ration and kept it ready prepared for him. On his return, the cook gave him his share of food kept in reserve for him.

When the workman found that the whole house was unusually quiet that day, he enquired about the unusual silence and the empty messing

room from the cook, "All the occupants of the house are observing precepts, it being a sabbath day" was her reply. He asked her again: "Is it true .... mother?" She nodded her head, saying "Yes, it is". "Dear mother .... please enquire from the rich man if one could keep sabbath for the remaining part of the day."

The cook obliged him by putting his question to the rich man, who replied "It might mean keeping sabbath for half a day but not for a full day, but it is tantamount to keeping sabbath and observance of precepts."

On hearing the words of the rich man, the work man washed his mouth and made formal vow to observe precepts and went to his place and kept sabbath till he fell asleep. He died of exhaustion on the following morning and was reborn as a guardian deity of a huge banyan tree on the fringe of a forest.

On hearing the full account of his previous existence, the hermits asked the deity: "You have said about the Buddha, the Dhamma and the Sangha .... which we have never heard before. Is it true that a fully Self-Enlightened Buddha hath arisen?" When the deity answered in the affirmative, the hermits asked: "Where is that Buddha residing at present?" The deity said "The Tathagata has been residing at the Jetavana monastery in the Savatthi country".

The hermits left, saying: "Dear deity of the banyan tree... we are going to pay homage to the Buddha", and they arrived at Kosambi en route to Savatthi. The three rich men extended cordial reception to the hermits and invited them to receive food on the following morning. There was a feasting festival on a grand scale on that day.

As soon as they had taken meal, the hermits said as a token of courtesy, "We are going ...." Surprised by such words, the rich men asked: "Revered Sirs .... it is quite unusual that you uttered such words when you have stayed only for a day on this occasion, though you usually stayed for one, two, three or four months on the previous occasions; we pray that you enlighten us the reason why you depart so early in the day?" Whereupon, the hermits replied: "Rich men... you have, indeed, said the truth: The Fully Self-Enlightened Buddha hath

arisen already, and death is a matter of certainty, though we know not how and when? Therefore we are in great haste to reach the presence of the Buddha" The rich men asked for permission to go along with the hermits.

Hermits said a few words of encouragement in response to their request: "You might stay behind and come afterwards as you all are saddled with worldly affairs that restrict your movements. We will go ahead of you". They left Kosambi and found their way to Savatthi without stopping too long on the way. On their arrival at Savatthi, they went immediately to the Tathagata who fed them with sweet Elixir of Dhamma. The hermits attained Arahattaship through Path-knowledge acquired by hearing the preaching of the Tathagata.

### Three rich men attained Sotapanna

The three rich men left Kosambi, each with five hundred carts fully loaded with gifts of all sorts for offering, and arrived at Savatthi in due course. They occupied a spot in the vicinity of Jetavana monastery and erected temporary charity booths before they went to pay homage to the Tathagata. On their arrival at the feet of the Tathagata they sat at suitable places. The Tathagata preached discourses in harmony with their dispositions, with the result that all the three of them attained Sotapanna. They made offerings of gifts on a large scale for fifteen days in succession. They cordially requested the Tathagata to do them honour by his visit to Kosambi. The Tathagata said in response: "Buddhas naturally prefer places of seclusion!".

They enthusiastically replied: "This is understood... Exalted Lord! and added "Kindly honour us by your visit on receipt of our formal intimation in due course" and after making three rounds by the right side of the Tathagata, they wended their way home, building resting centres at every one yojana's distance between Savatthi and Kosambi. On arrival at Kosambi, they publicised the arising of the Fully Self-Enlightened Buddha far and wide. Each rich man constructed big monasteries in their own garden lands at great costs, in anticipation of the arrival of the Tathagata.

Three monasteries were named after their donors viz., one donated by Ghosaka as '*Ghositarama*', one by Kukkudha as '*Kukkudharama*', one by Pavarika in his mango garden as '*Pavarikambavana*'.

When every thing was ready, those three rich men despatched a cordial address of invitation to the Tathagata through a special messenger.

### **The Buddha helped brahmin Magandhi & wife attain emancipation**

The Tathagata, on his way to Kosambi, in the company of many bhikkhus, perceived that brahmin Magandhi and wife were predestined to attain Arahathship. He, therefore, diverted his route from the main road towards the direction of the market-town of Kammasadamma in Kuru country.

Brahmin Magandhi returned early after spending almost all night outside the village in offering lights, according to their custom. On his way to the village to receive food in the morning, the Tathagata noticed Magandhi coming from the opposite direction at a distance. The Tathagata grasped the opportunity of making his presence known to the old brahmin. On seeing the Tathagata, Magandhi thought to himself: "I have all along been looking for my daughter a suitable bridegroom, who is as charming as she is, and assuming the form of a recluse. This recluse is charming and good looking, he is a match to my daughter" With this idea, he went back straight to his house.

(There was a link in the chain of his births, being a recluse in one of his existences. Therefore Magandhi had a natural inclination towards a recluse.)

Old Magandhi told his wife: "Dear one, I've never seen such a recluse before; the one whom I've seen has golden colour; he has the appearance of the great Brahma. He is really a match to my daughter (Magandhi) Get my daughter Magandhi dressed up hurriedly". As they were busy with dressing up their daughter, the Tathagata had left a pair of foot-prints (*Pada ceti*) at the spot where the Lord had first seen the old brahmin, and entered the town to receive alms-food.

(N.B. The impression of foot-prints of the Buddha stands on the spot of his own choice but not on any other place. At the same time, Lord's foot-prints are visible only by the privileged persons and nothing could stand in their way of seeing them: no bull elephant, no torrential rain, no violent destructive storm could destroy these foot prints (Dhammapada Commentary).

The old brahmin, wife and daughter went to the place where the old brahmin had caught sight of the Tathagata, but they could not see him as the Lord had gone into the village by that time. Old brahmin grumbled at the way in which his wife had taken so long in dressing their daughter that the recluse had gone away. The wife asked the brāhmin "Let him be gone, but do tell me to which direction has he gone?" The old brahmin retorted: "He's gone that way", and eventually they found the foot-prints of the Lord. The old man said: "Here are his foot-prints, he must have gone towards that direction".

On seeing the foot-prints, the old brahmin's wife thought 'this brahmin is really ignorant; he is not intelligent enough to know the intricacies of the treatise of Veda and to ridicule her husband, she made this caustic remark: "O brahmin, you are such a fool as to have said that you would give away our daughter to that person whose foot-prints are quite different from those worldlings with stains of passion (*rāga*), malice (*dosa*) and delusion (*moha*). Brahmin, look at his foot-prints which characterize those of a Fully Self-Enlightened Buddha, who had broken open the enveloping dome of defilements; just look at those foot-prints with care."

*Rattassa hi ukkuṭikaṃ padam bhavē  
duṭṭhassa hoti avakāḍḍhitaṃ padam  
mūḷassa hoti sahasāmpīḷitaṃ  
vivaṭaccha dassa imīdisaṃ padam*

- the foot-print of one with strong lust does not touch the ground in the middle;

- the foot-print of one with great amount of anger is more marked at the heels;

- the foot-print of one with great amount of delusion is marked by impression of its toes and heels

The foot print, we are seeing is free from all this and it is therefore evident that it belongs to the Omniscient. One who had done away with all forms of defilements.

The old brahmin felt uneasy in mind by his wife's caustic remarks and complained: "O woman, you are rude and aggressive". While they were thus engaged in arguments, the Tathagata had taken the meal in the company of bhikkhus and he made his appearance at a place the brahmin could easily see him.

When the brahmin Magandhi saw the Tathagata coming from a distance, he scold his wife and said: "The person whom I spoke of is he", and so saying, he approached the Lord and made things plain to the Lord:

"O recluse! I have been looking for you all over the places since earlier part of the day: there is no one in the whole world who is as pretty as my daughter, and there is no one in the world as beautiful as yourself. I wish to give you my daughter to attend upon you as a house wife."

The old brahmin spoke up directly and simply. Whereupon, the Tathagata said, in response to his offer:

"O big brahmin, I had no desire whatsoever for the three charming daughters of Mara of the celestial plane of Vasavatti, who stood by my sides and wooed and tempted me by love-making talks full of sweet charms and (you might imagine) how could I have any desire for your daughter, Magandhi!"

and recited the following verse:

*Disvāna Tanhaṃ Aratiṃ Ragañca  
nāhosi chando api methuna samim  
kimevidam muttakarīsa punnaṃ  
pādāpi naṃ sanphusitum na icche*

Although the three charming daughters of King Mara, namely Tanha, Arati, and Raga approached me under the banyan tree, 'ajapala' with firm determination to tempt me to enjoy filthy sensual pleasure by mutual co-operation with them, I had not the least desire to yield to their wishes nor there was the slightest taint of sensual passion in me. In the same way, I have not the slightest taint of sensual desire on seeing this young Magandhi whose physical body is full of filth, such as, excreta, urine etcetera. I have not the slightest desire to touch her even with my feet. The Tathagata uttered this stanza as though he was communicating not with the brahmin but with a different person.

#### **Young woman Magandhi harboured resentment**

Magandhi, the daughter of the brahmin Magandhi, harboured resentment towards the Buddha for insulting her by comparing her physical body with a collection of filth, such as ordure, urine and what not. "He should have rejected me in a simple manner that does not effect my dignity. I vow to revenge this insult, as and when opportunity occurs, hereafter." Thus Magandhi had sowed the seed of enmity against the Tathagata.

#### **Brahmin Magandhi & wife attained Arahatship after becoming Anagamis**

The Tathagata did not give any heed to the resentment harboured by the young woman, Magandhi, and proceeded to preach the Dhamma to the old brahmin, Magandhi, in harmony with his disposition (for full particulars, please refer to Suttanipatta Pali Text (Burmese translation), *Magandiya Sutta*). Magandhi and wife attained Anagami Ariyaship at the conclusion of the discourse. In due course, the couple considered that, no useful purpose will be served to continue on living the household life (after attainment to the exalted state of *Anagami*) for



any length of time, and they entrusted their young daughter, Magandhi, to her paternal uncle, Magandhi, before they received ordination. They fully attained Arahatship free from *asavas* by virtue of observance of precept for bhikkhus.

### **Buddha accepted the offering of three monasteries**

After emancipating Magandhi and wife, the Tathagata resumed his journey to the country of Kosambi and arrived there in due course.

When the three rich men heard of the arrival of the Tathagata in the company of bhikkhus, they arranged for reception of the Lord on a grand scale and conducted him to the monasteries. On arrival at the monasteries, they sat at appropriate places and after paying their respects, addressed the Bhagava. "Most Exalted Tathagata... the three monasteries have been built intended to be offered to all the members of the Noble Order. We humbly request for favour of your acceptance of the three monasteries for use by Sangha arriving from four quarters of the compass." The Tathagata was pleased to accept them, as requested by the donors. The rich men then invited the Tathagata for the performance of feasting ceremonies next day and made their departure.

(As a matter of course, facts connected with slave girl Khujjuttara, Queen Samavati, and Queen Magandhi need to be included here to complete the picture. But facts connected with Khujjatara and Samavati will be given when we come to deal with the Jewel of Sangha later. Full account of Magandhi may please be referred to Dhammapad commentary (Burmese translation) It is proposed to deal here only with certain pertinent facts that warranted inclusion in these chapter)

The Tathagata took up residence in the monasteries donated by the three rich men and kept up the ninth vassa in the country of Kosambi.

### Magandhi's evil acts

At the time the Tathagata was keeping up the ninth vassa in Kosambi, the young woman Magandhi had become the Chief Queen of King Udena. This will be clarified: Magandhi was left by her parents, to the care of her paternal uncle Cula Magandhi before they received ordination. King Udena made her his queen after consultation with her uncle Cula Magandhi. A separate chamber with five hundred maids of honour was allotted her by the king. Magandhi had thus been a queen of King Udena by the time. The Tathagata kept the ninth vassa at Kosambi!

Having come to understand that the Tathagata had arrived at Kosambi, she caused all the wretched, reckless, starving drunkards to be summoned, and she bribed and instigated them to call the Tathagata by several names as taught by her. When the Tathagata entered the city on the following day, in response to the invitation of the three rich men to a feasting ceremony, those wretched, reckless drunkards reviled the Tathagata calling several ill names as taught by Magandhi.

Venerable Ananda implored the Tathagata: to leave the place, "Most Exalted Lord ... let us not continue our stay at a town where we have been abused, let us shift to another town! Whereupon, the Tathagata replied: "Dear Ananda ... Buddhas are totally indifferent to the eight worldly vicissitudes and all those boisterous and abusive noises are bound to die down within a period of seven days and no more; the abusers will be liable to pay for their own demerit; you need not fret and bother yourself by such short-comings!" (This is an abridged form of exposition in Anguttara Commentary, Dhammapada Commentary, 2:23 *Nāga Vagga*, preface to *Atta danda vatthu* gives more detailed exposition).

### Extraordinary volitional efforts of the three rich men of Kosambi

The three rich men invited the Tathagata into the city and made offerings of all kinds on a large scale. The Tathagata took residence at their monasteries in rotation and received offerings in the same manner. In other words, when the Buddha occupied Gositayama monastery on a

certain day, he would receive alms-food from Ghosita's house on the following day. In the same manner the Buddha received alms-food from Kukkudha and Pavarika, in order of succession. (Dhammapada Commentary).

After a lapse of one month, it dawned on the three rich men:-

Buddhas have arisen for the purpose of safe guarding sentient beings and promoting their well being; we should see to it that all the citizens should also take shares in meritorious deeds.

They accordingly afforded opportunity to all the citizens to participate in meritorious deeds, with the result that all the citizens made offerings in their respective streets, quarters or by formation of charitable societies from that time.

#### Erruption of a great dispute amongst the Sangha

When the Tathagata was residing in the Ghositarama monastery, there arose a dispute between a bhikkhu who was versed in the Codes of Conduct (*Vinaya*), and another bhikkhu who was versed in Discourses (*Suttas*), who were living in the same monastery. One day, the one versed in *Suttas* entered the privy and came out, leaving certain amount of water in the cup usually kept in the privy for common use. The bhikkhu versed in *Vinaya*, on entering the privy after him, saw the amount of water that was left in the cup; he came out and asked the one versed in *Suttas*: "Friend... did you leave some amount of water remaining this cup?" The one versed in *Suttas* replied "Friend ... yes, I have" with all sincerity. The one versed in *Vinaya* complained: "Well, friend... don't you know that such an act is tantamount to commission of a guilt (*Āpatti*)?" The one versed in *Suttas* replied: "No ... I don't, my friend". Then one versed in *Vinaya* explained: "Friend, to leave any amount of water in the cup is an offence (*Appatti*)".

The bhikkhu versed in *Suttas* said: "If I am guilty of an offence, I am prepared to remove the offences by confessing". Whereupon, the bhikkhu versed in *Vinaya* explained: "Friend, if such an act was committed through forgetfulness and without any volition there lies no

fault." On hearing this, the bhikkhu versed in *Suttas* formed the idea that he had not committed the offence of leaving behind some water in the cup.

(Herein, the bhikkhu versed in *Vinaya* had thought that, "such an offence (leaving remaining amount of water in the cup) does not amount to a guilt (*Apatti*) by reason of absence of mind, devoid of volition": As a matter of fact, such an offence is tantamount to a guilt, *Dukkata Apatti* no matter whether such an act was committed through forgetfulness or without volition).

The bhikkhu versed in *Vinaya* told his disciples that the bhikkhu versed in *Suttas* did not know when he was guilty of an offence, to decry the one versed in *Suttas*. And when the disciples of the bhikkhu versed in *Vinaya* met the disciples of the one versed in *Suttas*, the former told the latter that their teacher had no knowledge of the guilt he had committed. When his disciples brought this news to his knowledge, the bhikkhu versed in *Suttas* said: "That bhikkhu versed in *Vinaya* himself told me that I was not guilty of that offence, and now he had changed his words and accused me of being guilty of that offence. He has told a lie".

The disciples of the bhikkhu versed in *Suttas* went and told the disciples of the bhikkhu versed in *Vinaya*: "Your teacher is a liar". The quarrel thus began! The bhikkhu versed in *Vinaya* managed to obtain the support of his own associates and charged the bhikkhu versed in *Suttas* with the offense of not seeing the fault as fault (*āpattiya adassane ukkhepaniyakam*) and suspended him with a formal resolution.

The bhikkhu, who was thus suspended, being well informed and of social standing, approached his friends and associates and said: "As a matter of fact, that was a case where there was no fault, not a case where there was fault. I am unfallen, I have not fallen. I am unsuspected, I am not suspended." (although they have suspended me) I am not guilty, I was suspended by a formal act which was not legally valid. I would beseech you to stand by me as my partisans on account of the rule, on account of discipline, *Dhamma Vinaya*. He thus gained

many friends, supporters, and associates. A messenger was also sent to bhikkhus in the villages and country to explain the situation. Thus the bhikkhus in the country who were his associates also became his partisans.

The disciples of the suspended bhikkhus versed in *Suttas* went to those who suspended them and complained by way of refutation: "Friends... that is a non-guilty case, it is not a case entailing any guilt (*āpatti*). Wherefore, the bhikkhu versed in *Suttas* was not guilty of any offence. He is unsuspected though he has been suspended by a formal act which was not legally valid.

The bhikkhus involved in suspending, in turn, told the suspended bhikkhus that, it was a case of guilt (*āpatti*), it was not a non-*apatti* case, the bhikkhu versed in *Suttas* was, therefore, guilty of an offence; it was not that he was not guilty; therefore he deserved to be suspended by a formal act of suspension which was legally valid: Friends.. do not pursue his course, do not attend upon him any more. But their appeals fell on the deaf ears of the bhikkhus versed in *Suttas*; they continued on attending upon the suspended bhikkhu, following him wherever he went.

### **Buddha Exhorted partisan Bhikkhus of the rival groups**

An unknown bhikkhu approached the Tathagata and reported with due respect all what has been stated above. Whereupon, the Tathagata uttered "The Order of bhikkhus is divided; the Order of bhikkhu is divided" twice in succession and went to bhikkhus who had suspended the bhikkhu versed in *Suttas* and addressed them from a reserved seat:

(Bhikkhus had by then not actually been divided, but the Buddha had said it in anticipation of the imminent danger of division in due course of time. For instance, one might have said "the rice grains have ripened" (matured) when one noticed the break of rains ushering in the season for harvesting, hence the utterance!)

The Tathagata addressed them:-

Bhikkhus .... you should not, through pride and vanity, think of suspending or expelling a bhikkhu on account of a simple ordinary matter. Let us suppose that a certain bhikkhu might be guilty of an offence (*āpatti*) though he did not think that it was an offence, on the one hand. On the other hand, there might be bhikkhus who held it to be an offence (*āpatti*). Bhikkhus if those bhikkhus know concerning that bhikkhu: "This Venerable one is well-informed, well read in Pali Text, well versed in *Dhamma Vinaya* and *Pāṭimokkha*, intelligent and wise, experienced, conscientious, scrupulous and desirous of three training practices; (1) If we expell this bhikkhu for not seeing the offence, if we do not carry out the Observance together with this bhikkhu, and carry out the Observance without this bhikkhu, by doing so, there will be dispute, strife, brawls, there will be schism in the order, there will be altercation in the order, dissention in the order, differences in the order." Bhikkhus, knowing this, bhikkhus should not suspend or expel such a bhikkhu for not seeing an offence to ward off schism and promote unity.

Bhikkhus .... you should not, through pride and vanity, think of suspending or expelling a bhikkhu on account of a simple ordinary matter. Let us suppose that a certain bhikkhu might be guilty of an offence (*āpatti*) though he did not think that it was an offence, on the one hand. On the other hand, there might be bhikkhus who held it to be an offence (*āpatti*). Bhikkhus if those bhikkhus know concerning that bhikkhu: "This Venerable one is well-informed, well read in Pali Text, well versed in *Dhamma Vinaya* and *Pāṭimokkha*, intelligent and wise, experienced, conscientious, scrupulous and desirous of three training practices; (2) if we expell this bhikkhu for not seeing the offence, and do not perform *Pavāraṇa* ceremony (inviting one another to pardon) together with this bhikkhu; if we perform *Pavāraṇa* without this bhikkhu. (3) if we do not carry out a formal act of the order (*Saṅgha kamma*) together with this bhikkhu; if we will carry out a formal act of the order without this bhikkhu (4) if we do not sit down on a seat together with this bhikkhu; if we sit down on a seat without bhikkhu. (5) if we do not sit down to drink gruel together with this bhikkhu, if we sit down to drink gruel without this bhikkhu (6) if we do not sit

down in a refectory together with this bhikkhu; if we sit down in a refectory without this bhikkhu; (7) if we do not dwell under the same roof with this bhikkhu; if we dwell under one roof without him (8) if we do not pay respect according to seniority, greet or worship with joined palms, together with this bhikkhu, if we will pay respect according to seniority, greet or worship with joined palms without this bhikkhu, by doing so, there will be dispute, strife, brawls, there will be schism in the order, there will be altercation in the order, dissention in the order, differences in the order." Bhikkhus, knowing this, bhikkhus should not suspend or expel such a bhikkhu for not seeing an offence to ward off schism and promote unity.

After preaching the above discourse for unity of Sangha to the bhikkhus who had suspended the bhikkhu, the Tathagata went over to the disciples of the suspended bhikkhu (who was well-versed in *Suttas*) and delivered a discourse:-

Bhikkhus .... When you have committed an offence, you should not deem it that amends should not be made for the offence, thinking, "We have not committed an offence".

Bhikkhus .... supposing a certain bhikkhu might be guilty of an offence (*āpatti*), though he did not think it was an offence, on the one hand; and on the other hand, there might be bhikkhus who held it to be an offence (*āpatti*).

Bhikkhus, if that bhikkhu who thinks he has not committed an offence knows concerning those bhikkhus: "These Venerable Ones are well informed, well read in Pali Texts, well versed in *Dhamma Vinaya* and *Pāṭimokkha*, intelligent and wise, conscientious, scrupulous and desirous of three trainig practices. Either because of me or because of any one else these bhikkhus should not take a wrong action through selfish desire, ill-will, through ignorance, through fear.

If these bhikkhus suspend me for not seeing an offence and (1) if they do not carry out the Observance together with me, if they carry out the Observance without me; (2) if these bhikkhus do not perform *Pavarana* ceremony together with me, if they perform *Pavarana* ceremony without me, (3) if they do not carry out a formal act of the order

(*Sangha kamma*) together with me; if they will carry out a formal act of the order without me (4) if they do not sit down on a seat together with me; if they sit down on a seat without me. (5) if they do not sit down to drink gruel together with me, if they sit down to drink gruel without me (6) if they do not sit down in a refectory together with me; if they sit down in a refectory without me; (7) if they do not dwell under the same roof with me; if they dwell under one roof without me (8) if they do not pay respect according to seniority, greet or worship with joined palms, together with me, if they will pay respect according to seniority, greet or worship with joined palms without me, by doing so, there will be dispute, strife, brawls, there will be schism in the order, there will be altercation in the order, dissention in the order, differences in the order." Bhikkhus, knowing this, the bhikkhu, should confess the guilt even out of faith in the Sangha to ward off schism and promote unity.

After delivering this discourse for unity of Sangha, the Tathagata rose from the seat and departed.

(N.B. The bhikkhu versed in *Suttas* had honestly expressed his desire 'to confess and to ask for pardon' if he had committed an offence when the bhikkhu versed in *Vinya* made a complaint at first. When he was told subsequently that 'any offence committed though thoughtlessness and without volition does not amount to offence or sinful act' he sincerely thought he was free from guilt.

Had the Tathagata decided to blame those (versed in *Vinya*) for suspending the bhikkhus versed in *Suttas* on such grounds, they would have accused the Buddha as taking sides with their opponents, thus exposing themselves to the risk of committing an offence against the Buddha, a demerit that could direct them to realms of woes.

Again, the bhikkhu versed in *Suttas* had knowingly left certain amount of water in the cup and, as such, he was guilty of infringement of a light offence, *dukkata āppatti*. His disciples had expressed their opinion that such a judgment was legally invalid, through attachment to their teacher.



Had the Tathagata decided to approve the judgment of those versed in *Vinya* on such grounds, the disciples of the bhikkhu versed in *Suttas* would naturally accuse the Buddha of taking sides with their opponents thus exposing themselves to the risk of committing an offence against the Buddha, a demerit that could direct them to realms of woes.

(It should be borne in mind therefore that the Tathagata had thus refrained from putting blame on any of the rival groups, in the interest of peace and tranquillity and delivering discourses for unity of the Sangha, made his departure from the place.)

### Expounding on two *nānā saṃvāsa* and two *samānā saṃvāsa*

Now at that time, bhikkhus who had been suspended carried out the Observance and performed the formal act *Sangha-kamma*, in the Sima (within the boundary) of the same monastery whereas those Sangha who had expelled the former carried out the observance and performed the formal *Sangha-kamma* having gone out-side the boundary of the monastery.

One of the bhikkhus of the latter group approached the Tathagata with profound respect and addressed the Bhagava:

"Most Exalted Lord: .. those bhikkhus who had been suspended carried out the Observance and performed the formal act *Sangha-kamma*, in the Sima (within the boundary) of the same monastery whereas those Sangha who had expelled the former carried out the observance and performed the formal *Sangha-kamma* having gone outside the boundary of the monastery."

Whereupon the Tathagata gave the following answer to that bhikkhus:

Dear bhikkhu ... in case where those suspended bhikkhus carried out the Observance and performed other *Sangaha-kamma* in accordance with the procedure for a motion and proclamation, *ñatti kammavācā*, laid down by me, in the Sima of the monastery, their performances must be held to be quite in order, legally valid.

Dear bhikkhu .... in the same way, if you the suspending bhikkhus who have suspended the former carried out the Observance and performed other *Sangaha-kamma* in accordance with the procedure for a motion and proclamation, *ñatti kammavācā*, laid down by me, in the Sima of the monastery, your performances also must be held to be quite in order, legally valid.

Dear bhikkhu .... What is the reason for this? The suspended bhikkhus belong to a different communion from yours (not associated with you) and you belong to a different communion from theirs. (not associating with them).

### Two kinds of *Nānā Saṃvāsa*

Dear bhikkhu... There are two grounds for belonging to a different communion, *Nānā Saṃvāsa* (1) one's own effort; one makes oneself belong to a different communion. (2) being suspended by the Sangha for not seeing own offence (*apatti*), for not making amends, for not abandoning wrong view. Thus there are these two grounds for belonging to a different communion.

### Two kinds of *Samānā Saṃvāsa*

Dear bhikkhu... there are two grounds for belonging to the same communion, *Samānā saṃvāsa*: (1) One's own effort, one makes oneself belong to the same communion (2) the whole Sangha lifts the Suspension and restore (*osaraniva Kamma*) the bhikkhu who was suspended (*Ukkhepaniya Kamma*).

Thus there are two grounds for *Nānā-saṃvāsa* and two grounds for *Samānā saṃvāsa*, exhorted the Tathagata.

(N.B. There are two groups or two types of bhikkhus, namely, (1) lawful bhikkhus (*Dhammavādi*) who suspended the guilty bhikkhus (2) Unlawful bhikkhus who are suspended for being guilty of one or the other offence (*Adhammavādi*): Should a bhikkhu, residing with one group or the other, decide after scrutinizing the views of both the groups of bhikkhu, that the bhikkhu, who are suspended are unlawful

bhikkhu, and the bhikkhu, who suspended them are lawful ones, he himself has made himself of different communion with the suspended bhikkhus and of the same communion with the suspending bhikkhus.

### Conduct of bhikkhus in dispute

Now at that time, bhikkhus fell into dispute, quarelling and causing trife at the refectory in the villages. They behaved unsuitably towards one another in physical action and in speech; they came to blows. People looked down upon them, criticized them. Well-conducted and modest bhikkhus reported this unhappy state of affairs to the Tathagata who sent for the disputing bhikkhus. Having made enquiries and having rebuked them, the Tathagata gave an appropriate talk and addressed them:

Bhikkhus, when the Sangha is divided, not be having according to rules, if there is discord, you should sit down separately, thinking "We cannot at least behave unsuitably towards one another in physical action and in speech; we cannot come to blows."

Bhikkhus, when the Sangha is divided, but if it is behaving according to rule and if there is friendliness, you may sit down next to one another."

These are the guide-lines given to the rival bhikkhus for observance, when there is disension amongs the Sangha.

### Discourse on the story of Dighavu

The two rival groups of bhikkhu went on quarelling, making strife falling into disputes, in the midst of the Sangha wounding one another with the weapon of the tongue. The Sangha was unable to quell the dispute.

Then a certain bhikkhu approaced the Tathagata; then having approached, having paid obeisance to the Tathagata, he stood at a suitable place and reported the matter to the Tathagata, requesting him to approach the quarrelling bhikkhus.

Whereupon, the Lord went to the bhikkhus and exhorted them:

Bhikkhus... it is not at all right and proper for you to be quarrelling, fighting and opposing one another. Enough! no disputes, no quarrelling, no contentions.

Whereupon, a bhikkhu of the suspended group, who had the welfare of the Lord at heart, addressed:-

"Most Exalted Tathagata, .... Let the Lord of the law wait, let the Bhagava remain unconcerned, intent on abiding in peace for the present. We will be responsible for these disputes, quarrels and strifes." This was his appeal to the Tathagata..

The Buddha exhorted them twice in the same strain, and the bhikkhu of the suspended group repeated his appeal for two times in succession.

(N.B. The suspended bhikkhu was a well-wisher of the Buddha. He took pains to appeal to the Tathagata not to trouble himself about the matter at a time when the flame of anger was at its pith.

But the Tathagata perceived that the two rival groups would be back to their senses once the anger was removed, and so out of compassion for these bhikkhus the Buddha delivered a discourse on the life story of Dighavu with that end in view:

### The story of Dighavu

Once there was a King of Banares, by the name of King Kasi, who had great amount of wealth, a big army, war chariots, elephants, horses, infantry, a vast expansion of land, a big treasury, and fully stocked granaries. The King of Kosala, by the name of Dighiti was poor having only a small amount of wealth, a small army, limited number of war chariots, elephants, horses and infantry, a small treasury and granaries. Bhikkhus .... King Brahmadata alias Kasi King prepared for war against King Dighiti, and marched towards Kosala with a great army comprising war chariots, elephants, horses, infantry.

### **The weak succumbed to the strong**

On hearing the alarming news, King Dighiti of Kosala weighed in his mind: "King Brahmadata of Kasi is rich, owns enormous amount of wealth, has a great army, comprising war chariots, elephants, horses, infantry, a big treasury, a vast expansion of land and granaries, whereas, I am comparatively poor, having a small amount of wealth, a small army and I am sure to be defeated by the first attack launched by that King: it would be wiser to evacuate than to get defeated," Therefore, taking his queen, he fled from his city long before the enemy reached it.

Bhikkhus .... King Brahmadata took possession of King Dighiti's troops, chariots, territory, treasuries and granaries, and reigned over his newly conquered land. Dighiti, the ex-King and his queen arrived at Benares in due course, and took refuge at a potter's house on the fringe of the City in the guise of wandering ascetics.

### **The Queen conceived a child and had a craving for particular things**

Bhikkhus .... after some time, the queen of King Dighiti became pregnant, developing a strong desire for certain particular things: to see at sunrise a fourfold army, fully arrayed, fully equipped standing on level ground and to drink the washings of swords..

The queen made it known to her husband, King Dighiti of Kosala, that she had conceived a child and that she had a strong desire to see a fully equipped army at sun-rise, and to drink water used in washing swords. Whereupon, the King of Kosala said: "Dear queen... how will it be possible for us to see a fully equipped army and to get water used in washing swords, when we are in a humble condition!" The queen replied: "Your Majesty, I will die if my wishes are not fulfilled".

### **A far-sighted philosopher and friend**

At that time, King Dighiti's boyhood friend was the Brahmin priest of Brahmadata, King of Kasi. Bhikkhus, .... Dighiti, King of Kosala went to see his boyhood friend the Brahmin priest and told him, "My dear friend .... your friend, the queen, is in a family way, and she has a

strong desire to see a fully equipped Army standing in a vast and level plain, and to drink water used in washing swords". Whereupon, the Brahmin said: "Your Majesty... in that case, I should like to see the queen".

Bhikkhus .... the queen went to see the Brahmin priest. When the Brahmin noticed the queen coming from a distance, he got up and arranging his upper garment over one shoulder and with his hands clasped announced joyously: "Indeed, a King of Kosala is in your womb" for three times in succession. And he assured the queen "Be happy, good queen; you will get chance at sun rise to see the fully equipped fourfold army arrayed on a level ground and drink the washings of the swords."

Bhikkhus .... the Brahmin priest went to King Brahmadata of Kasi and addressed: "Your Majesty... the signs which I can see are such that a fully equipped army must appear on a vast plain at sun-rise and the royal swords are to be washed then" The King ordered his courtiers to carry out the instructions given by the Brahmin priest.

The queen of King Dighiti had her strong desires fulfilled (as arranged by the Brahmin): she had seen a fully equipped army standing on a vast plain and drunk the water used in washing the swords. Bhikkhus, she gave birth to a baby son in due course and was named Dighavu.

Bhikkhus .... when prince Dighavu had grown to an age of discretion, it occurred to King Dighiti "The King Brahmadata of Kasi had hitherto done much harm to us; he had seized our army, war chariots, elephants, horses, and territories including small villages; deprived us of our treasuries and granaries. He would do away with three of us once he found out our whereabouts; it would be safe for our son, Dighavu, to stay outside the city. He accordingly arranged for Dighavu to stay aloof from them at a place outside the boundaries of the city. Bhikkhus... prince Dighavu learnt various arts and science of the time during the period of his self-exiled life.

### A disloyal court barber

Bhikkhus .... a barber of King Dighiti of Kosala had free access to the palace of the King of Kasi. Bhikkhus .... when the barber saw the King and queen of Kosala taking refuge in an old hut of the potter under the guise of ascetics on the outskirts of the city, he went to King Brahmadata of Kasi and reported: "Your Majesty .... King Dighiti and his queen have been taking refuge in a hut of a potter under the guise of ascetics on the outskirts of the city". Bhikkhus.. King Brahmadata ordered his attendants to bring the King and Queen of Kosala to him. The attendants did as they were bid.

Bhikkhus .... King Brahmadata of Kasi gave orders to his servants, "Courtiers .... fasten the hands of King Dighati and queen at their backs tightly, shave their heads bald with razer, beat a drum that produces harsh and broken sound, take them from street to street, from cross road to cross road, beating them all along the way, and finally get them out of the city by the southern gate to be cut up into four pieces. Their remains must be discarded to the four quarters. The executioners did as they were ordered by the King.

### King Kosala's Doctrine of peace

At that time, prince Dighavu had a longing to see his parents. He thought to himself: "It is quite a long time that I have not seen my parents, I had better go and see them now" He, therefore, entered the town and came face to face with his ill-fated parents, with hands fastened tight at their backs, their heads, shaved bald, being, (beaten up) paraded from street to street, from cross road to cross road to the unbearable sounds of a drum. He was greatly shocked and choked with a deep sense of sorrow, but he managed to go near his parents with strained emotions.

Bhikkhus .... when King Dighiti saw his son, Dighavu coming from a distance, he uttered words of advice meant for his son:

My dear son .... Dighavu .... do not look far and do not look close either;

My dear son, Dighavu .... revenge does not promote peace;

My dear son, Dighavu .... Only non-resentment gives peace.

When King Dighati uttered such words of advice, the courtiers misunderstood him and said:

"This King Dighiti of Kosala had lost his head; where is his son, Dighavu? Whom is he addressing as "My son, Dighavu .... do not look far, and do not look close, either. My dear son, Dighavu .... revenge does not promote peace; My dear son, Dighavu .... only non resentment gives peace".

When King Dighiti heard of their remarks, he retorted: "My dear men... I am not voicing through loss of head, in fact, wise men will understand the meaning of what I meant ".

King Dighiti uttered the same words of advice for three times and the executioners made the same comments for three times. King Dighiti gave the same explanation to them, to show that he was mentally sound and that it was meant for wise men who would understand, meaning his son.

Bhikkhus .... the executioners went on punishing the royal couple all along the route and finally took them out of the city via the south gate, as instructed by their King. King Dighati and queen were cut into fours and their severed limbs discarded to the four quarters. The executioners went back into the city after posting guards at the place of execution.

### **Prince Dighavu's clever arrangement**

Bhikkhus .... Dighavu went into the city and came out with some liquor for presentation to the guards, who soon got drunk and fell into deep slumber. Dighavu collected a pile of fire-wood and placed the remains of his royal parents on top of the pile and cremated them in a traditional way. Raising his clasped hands in a respectful manner he made three right-hand rounds about the pile of bon-fire.



### **King Brahmadata was greatly shaken**

At that time, King Brahmadata was in the upper chamber of his palace; he caught sight of Dighavu, through the window, in the act of circumambulating the funeral pyre three times, with his palms joined and raised toward it. It at once occurred to him, the man must be one of the nearest relatives or kinsmen of Dighiti, and the one who would certainly do some thing against one". He was greatly annoyed that no one was thoughtful enough to bring such a case to his notice.

### **Prince Dighavu served as an Elephant keeper**

Bhikkhus .... prince Dighavu went into the jungle and mourned over the loss of his royal parents, weeping to his heart's content for a while and re-entered the city. He went to the elephant stable near the palace and requested the royal elephant master to employ him as a trainee. His request was readily granted.

Bhikkhus .... prince Dighavu used to get up early and sing sweet songs and play harp harmoniously at the elephant shed every morning. On hearing the singing and playing of the harp, King Brahmadata asked his courtiers as to who was the singer and player of the harp early in the morning every day. The courtiers gave the King full description of the singer and player of the harp.

The King then ordered his men to bring the singing lad who played the harp, so well.

### **Prince Dighavu was appointed as an inmate of the palace**

When the courtiers brought Dighavu before the King, he was asked: "Youthful lad .... is that you who sing sweet songs and play the harp so well at the elephant stable early in the mornings every day?" The prince gave his answer in the affirmative. Then the King ordered him to sing and to play his harp in his presence.

Bhikkhus .... prince Dighavu sang songs sweetly in harmony with the tuning of the harp in compliance with the royal orders. The King was greatly delighted with his performance and ordered the boy to serve him as one of the attendants. The prince undertook to serve as an

attendant to the King. In due course, he was upgraded to a confidential position of trust in consideration of the five qualities that he possessed (1) getting up earlier than the King, (2) going to bed after the King, (3) always being alert and willing to serve, (4) doing all that would please the King, (5) habit of speaking well and affectionately.

### Prince Dighavu honoured his father's words

Bhikkhus .... one day, King Brahmadata of Kasi ordered prince Dighavu to harness the royal chariot: "Dear lad .... harness the chariot, we will go into the forest of deers". The prince replied "Very well... your Majesty", and when every thing was set, he reported the matter to the King: "Your Majesty... the chariot is ready, and it is up to your Majesty to decide when to leave "The King started off for big game in the forest followed by a company of his army.

Prince Dighavu drove away the royal chariot at such a great speed that it eventually got cut off form the royal followers. When they had gone far enough, King Brahmadata ordered prince Dighavu: "Youthful lad .... we have been cut off from the party, I am tired and you might unharness the chariot, so that I might take some rest. The prince unharnessed the royal chariot and sat cross-legged on the ground. The King lay down to relax with his head rested on the lap of the young lad. He soon fell into a slumber through tiredness.

Bhikkhus .... when the King was in sound sleep, prince Dighavu's mind began to work:

"This King Brahmadata of Kasi country had done much harm to us. He had forcibly seized our army, elephants, horses, chariots, territories, treasuries and granaries. It was he who had assassinated my parents; the opportunity to revenge on him has presented itself now".

"He drew his sword out" and bhikkhus .... and his father's words of advice crossed is mind:-

"My dear son, Dighavu .... do not look far, and do not look close, either: My dear son, Dighavu .... revenge

does not promote peace; My dear son, Dighavu .... only non-resentment gives peace."

It would not be right for me to go against my father's advice and replaced the sword in its sheath.

For a second time, for a third time, Prince Dighavu drew his sword out to wreak vengeance on the old enemy and for the second and third times he replaced his sword in the sheath, remembering the advice given by his royal father.

Then Brahmadata, the King of Kasi frightened and agitated alarmed unsteadily got up all of a sudden from his sleep. Whereupon, prince Dighavu asked him: "Your Majesty .... what has caused you to get frightened, agitated and alarmed?" The King replied: "Youthful lad .... I dreamt in my sleep that I was running away for life through fright from the son of King of Kosala who was chasing me with a sword."

Bhikkhus .... then prince Dighavu held the head of King Brahmadata with his left hand and drew out the sword with his right hand and said: "Your Majesty .... the son of the late King of Kosala is no other person than myself. You had done much harm to us, you have forcibly seized our army, elephants, horses, chariots, territories, treasuries and granaries. It was you who have assassinated my royal parents. Now, it is my turn to revenge on you!"

Whereupon, King Brahmadata touched prince Dighavu's feet with his head and entreated him for mercy by granting him life: "Dear son, Dighavu .... please grant me life." He thus entreated for mercy three times in succession. Then the prince replied: "How will it be possible for me to grant life to a King! It is a king who should grant me life." "Well then, dear Dighavu, you grant me life and I will grant you life".

Bhikkhus ..... Brahmadata, the king of Kasi and Prince Dighavu granted life to one another, and they took hold of one another's hands. They vowed to do no harm to one another. Then, the King asked Dighavu: " My dear son.. please get the royal chariot harnessed and let us return". The prince said "Very well... your Majesty". When every thing was set, he reported that every thing was ready and it was up to his Majesty to leave as and when he so wished.

### The King had returned

Bhikkhus .... once the King had mounted the chariot, prince Dighavu drove the carot with accelerated speed and they caught up with the army in no time. King Brahmadata of Kasi accompanied by his troops then returned to the city. On arrival at the royal palace, the king had the councilors and ministers assembled and addressed them: "Good Sirs, .... what would you do if Dighavu, the son of King Dighati, could be found now?"

Then, some said: "we would cut his hands off", others said; "we would cut off his feet", again others said, "we would cut off his hands and feet", .... ears .... nose .... ears and nose; we would cut off his head.

"The King, pointing his finger, said: "This is prince Dighavu, son of the late King Dighiti of Kosala: Nothing could be done against him now; just as he has granted me life, so also, have I granted him life."

Thus proclaimed King Brahmadata of Kasi.

### Prince Dighavu's doctrine of peace

King Brahmadata of Kasi than asked prince Dighava:

My dear son .... your father is believed to have left four sets of words,

My dear son .... Do not look far and do not look close, either! Revenge does not promote peace; only non-resentment gives peace.

My dear son, Dighavu... what did your father mean?

Prince Dighavu gave the following reply in response to the King's query:

- (1) Your Majesty .... my father had advised me 'Not to look far': This should be understood to mean "One should not be at enmity with other people for any length of time".
- (2) Your Majesty .... my father had advised me 'Not to look close, either': this should be understood to mean: "Not

to shorten the term of friendship, but to strengthen and prolong ties of friendship".

(3&4) Your Majesty... my father had, advised me: "My dear son .... enmity could not be brought to an end by any act of revenge: You can only do away with enmity by avoidance of revenge:

Your Majesty, in case I assassinated you for killing my parents, your well wishers would undoubtedly try to kill me. That would not end the chain of events for my well wishers would turn against your well-wishers, and the endless chain of events would go on for ever and for ever!

Now that your Majesty had granted me life and I have done like wise, the question of enmity or revenge would no more arise and so my good old father had said:" My son .... revenge does not pay: Harbour no resentment and be happy" with that end in view!

Thus prince Dighavu interpreted the meaning behind his father's advice on end of strife.

To this end, the wise men of the olden days had also left the following lines for our guidance:-

- 1 Don't prolong the cause of enmity;
- 2 Don't shorten the term of friendship;
- 3 Friendliness eliminates enmity;
- 4 Resentment begets revenge!

#### **Prince Dighavu regains his father's kingdom**

Bhikkhus .... when prince Dighavu had explained the underlying meaning of his father's advice, King Brahmadata of Kasi said: "My dear men .... it is indeed, wonderful: such a marvellous thing had never occurred before; this Prince Dighavu is so wise that he could explain us in extensor what his father had uttered in abridged form! Thus King of

Kasi spoke highly of prince Dighavu and formally returned the possessions of his father (late King Dighiti of Kosala) comprising army, elephants, horses, chariots, territories, treasuries and granaries, and above all, he gave away his daughter, who had come of age, to prince Dighavu.

### **Buddha's Exhortation**

"Bhikkhus .... it will be seen that, even those kings in arms could come to friendly terms through forbearance and kindly disposition! Bhikkhus .... when those of you who have become members of the Order within the domains of my instructions that are good in the beginning, good in the middle and good at the end, cannot forgive and act in friendly way, how can you expect to uphold the dignity and maintain the nobility and purity of my teachings! "Then the Tathagata repeated for the third time the exhortation he had given before: "Bhikkhus, it is not at all right and proper for you to be quarrelling, fighting and opposing one another. Enough! no disputes, no quarrelling, no contentions." At this last exhortation also, the bhikkhu who belonged to the suspended group addressed the Bhagava as before: "Most Exalted Tathagata .... Let the lord of the law wait, let the Bhagava remain unconcerned, intent on abiding in peace for the present. We will be responsible for these disputes, quarrels and strifes." The Tathagata then considered "There useless people (without hope of achieving the Path and fruition) are really incorrigible. It's not easy to bring them to senses" and departed from that place.

End of the story of Dighavu



(This story has been compiled from Vinaya Mahava Pali Text. *Kosambi Kakkhandhaka*. For further particulars, please refer to *Pancaka Nipatta, Dighiti Kosala Jataka and Kosambiha Jataka*.)

**Ten Stanzas of Exhortation**

The Tathagata entered Kosambi early in the morning for alms food and after his meal returned to the monastery. The Tathagata then had his lodging kept in order and carrying the robe and the alms bowl, he stood in the midst of the bhikkhus and gave the following exhortations in ten stanzas:

*Puthusaddo Samajano,  
Na bālo koci mañiatha,  
Sanghasamin bhijja mānasmīṇ,  
Nānan bhiyo amannayur.*

These bhikkhus, with foul mouth and rude manners, have boisterous, cheerless voices; they are of the same type of persons with impure hearts; there is no one amongst them who knows his own folly or foolishness: Above all, none of these bhikkhus has realized that dissension amongst the members of Order has arisen because of him (his conduct).

*Parinmuthā paṇḍitabhāsā,  
vācāgocara bhāṇino,  
yāvicchanti mukhāyāmaṃ,  
yena nītā na taṃ vidū.*

Those bhikkhus, with foal mouth and rude makness, are greatly infatuated by delusion, intent only on quarrelling and bowling under the guise of wise and intelligent persons. (they do not dwell in contemplative mood)

They opened their wide mouths and uttered abusive language without any sense of shame or dread of blame; (none of them keep silent as a gesture of regard and respect for the Sangha). They are ignorant of the fact that such acts of quarrels and conflicts invariably lead to a state of shamefulness; they do not perceive that ill-will (anger) leads them on to such shameful acts.

*Akkocchi maṃ avadhi maṃ,  
ajini maṃ ahāsi me,  
ye ca taṃ upanayhanti,  
veraṃ tesam na sammati.*

If you harbour resentment against a person for having abused you, tormented you, over powered you, robbed or deprived you of your property; and if you do not care to forbear against that aggressor in the interest of peace and tranquillity, the flame of enmity will not die down, but it will keep on burning up to the time of dissolution of a world system.

**"Forbearance should be the batch of a bhikkhu"**

*akkocchimam avadhi mam,  
ajinimam ahāsi me,  
ye ca tam nupanayhanti,  
veraṃ tesūpasammati.*

If you do not harbour any resentment against a person who has abused you, who has tormented you, who has over-powered you, who has robbed or deprived you of your property, through forbearance and equanimity, the flame of enmity is bound to dwindle to a vanishing point for lack of fresh fuel!

*na hi verena verāni,  
sammanīdha kudācanam,  
averena ca sammati,  
esa dhammo sanantano.*

In this world, the flame of animosity cannot be extinguished by harbouring resentment and taking revenge on one another. To wash ordure by means of ordure will not be of any avail! Ordure could be cleaned by means of pure water. In the same manner, the flame of animosity could only be extinguished, and peace and tranquillity restored, by forbearance and loving kindness. This is the beaten track that all the Buddhas and Pacceka Buddhas have hitherto followed.

*Pare ca na vijānanti,  
mayamettha yamāse .  
Ye ca tatha vijānanti,  
tatho sammanti medhagā.*

Amongst the masses of bhikkhus, the unintelligent and quarrelsome bhikkhus are ignorant of the fact that they are on their march towards



the Kingdom of Death with the movement of time! Whereas, those intelligent and thoughtful bhikkhus, amongst the masses of bhikkhus, are fully alive to the fact that all conditioned things are getting closer to the Jaws of Death with the progress of time. Consequently, quarrel and conflicts are extinguished and peace and tranquillity prevailed.

*Aṭhicchimā pāṇaharā,  
gavāssadhanahārino .  
raṭhaṃ vilumpamānānaṃ ,  
tesampi hoti saṅgati ,  
kasmā tumhā ka no siyā .*

When friendship could be fostered and tranquillity established by peaceful means, with the Kings, who had mercilessly broken the bones and limbs of our parents through malice, assassinated them, robbed us of our cattles and worldly possessions of our parents by brute force; I personally do not think why you bhikkhus, my own beloved, sons like you, cannot foster brotherly feeling among yourselves, and reestablish a state of tranquillity and stability among yourselves! it is a possible matter.

*Sace labhetha nipakaṃ sahāyaṃ ,  
Saddhiṃ caraṃ sādhuvivahāri dhīraṃ .  
abhibuyya sabbāni parissayāni ,  
Careyya tenatthamano satimā .*

When a mindful person obtained a friend-in-the Dhamma, who is accomplished in the three training practices (Sikkha). who is self-composed; prudent and wise; he should take delight in associating with him, and strive, to over come the external enemies, such as, elephants, leopards and tigers, and extirpate the internal foes, such as greed, hatred and delusion, leaving an ascetic life in search of Truth.

*No ce labhetha nipakam sahāyam  
saddhiṃ caraṃ sādhuvihāri dhīram  
rājāva ratṭham vijitam pahāya  
eko care matangaraññeva nago*

Should a mindful person fail to obtain a friend-in-the Dhamma who is accomplished in the three training practices (Sikkha), who is self-

composed, prudent and wise, he should strive after the Ultimate Truth all alone by way of ascetic life, after the manner of those ancient monarchs who abdicated their thrones, abandoned their countries and renounced the world, such as, Maha Janaka and Arindama, or like a bull elephant of Matanga breed which roams the forest all alone.

*Ekassa caritaṃ seyyo,  
nathi bāle saḥāyathā .  
eko care na ca pāpāni kayirā,  
appossukko mātaṅgarāññeva nāgo .*

To wander all alone, leading the life of an ascetic, and striving after Ultimate Truth deserves praise and admiration. There is no prospect whatsoever for the acquisition of faith and insight or development of *sila*, *samadhi* and *panna* by association with lowly ignorant persons. One should strive, single handed, after Ultimate Goal, like a bull elephant wandering all over the forests without the cares of the world! No evil acts should be performed.

The Tathagata delivered this Discourse in ten Stanzas, while standing in the midst of members of the Order (Sangha), after which, the Bhagava proceeded all alone to the village of Balakalonaka.

**End of Chapter Twenty Seven.**



Thus ended the Third Volume of MAHA BUDDHA VAMSA.



## Index

### A

A disloyal court barber, 468

Abhidhamma at Tavatimsa, 357

*Agama saddha*, 407

*Ajivaparissuddhi Sila*, 17

*Ajjasaya Sampatti*, 203

*Ajjasaya vippatti*, 202

*Akanittha Brahma*, 195

*Akanittha Brahmas*, 58

An account of Uggasena's past deeds, 221

*Ana Patimokkha*, 14,

*Anagata Nana*, knowledge of the future, 222

Ankura Deva and Indaka Deva, 341

Anupiya mango grove, 95

*Arahatta-magga Nana* of all Buddhas, 57

*Assannasa Brahmas*, 52

*Atanatiya Sutta*, 205, 207

*Attadanda Sutta*, 243

*Atthuppattika sutta nikkhepa*, 257

Authority, 207

F.61 *Avaha*, 121

a debate between me and Samana Gotama, 283

a full discourse on the *Buddhavamsa*, 59

a liberal Dana of his own life, 164

a thought-process of the Buddha is very fast, 357

a voice of eight features, 58

*abhisamacarika sila*, 211

absorbing interest with flood of joy (okkantika piti), 121

adassane ukkhepaniyakam, 457

addressed by Gharani, 326

*adhi sila, adhi citta and adhi panna*, 17

advisor (Ovadacariya), 87

after careful consideration using one's intellectual faculty, 116

after due observation and consideration with one's eye of wisdom, 116

after such retrospection and deliberation, 118

*agocara thana*, 81

*ahivata roga*, 191

all conditioned things, 71

an unbroken line of we  
Buddhas, 79

an unparalleled nobility of  
appearance, 78

anathapindika, 125

*anto mandhala*, 208

*aparihaniya Dhamma*, 191

*attajjhasaya sutta nikkhepa*, 257

*aturita carika*, 307

*aturita* mode of travelling, 46

automatic admission to the  
Order, 274

avert the war by going to the  
scene of hostilities, 225

**B**

*Bhumma Devas*, 208

Bodhisatta was born as a quail,  
240

Bodhisatta Brahmin Sankha,  
208

Brutal Acts of the rich man of  
Kosambi, 439

Buddha Exhorted partisan  
Bhikkhus of the rival  
groups, 458

Buddha gave a handful of hair to  
Maha Sumana deva at his  
request, 430

Buddha's Ascension to  
Tavatimsa, 338

Buddha's declaration to perform  
miracles, 319

Buddha's journey to  
Savatthi, 132

Buddha's rate speech is 128  
times greater than that of an  
average person, 357

Buddha's Third visit to Sihala  
Island, 434

Buddha's three visits to Sri  
Lanka, 428

Buddha's visit to Nagadipa  
Island, 430

*Buddhavamsa*, 54

balavasaddha, 122

behave like common dogs and  
jackals of the forest, 224

beings from the cycle of  
rebirths, 63

*buddhavisaya*, 58

**C**

*Catusacca Dhamma Katha*, 90

*Chabaggi monks*, 138

Cincamana swallowed by a  
fissure appearing in the  
earth, 372

Cincamana's Wily tactics, 370

Cincamanavika, 369  
Citta, a wealthy householder, 70  
Come dear Sudatta, 125  
Conduct of bhikkhus in  
dispute, 464  
Creation of an image with true  
likeness of the Buddha, 258  
Creation of Buddha's own  
double, 337  
Creation of the Jewelled  
Walk, 51  
*Cula Saccaka Sutta*, 301  
*chaphassayataniya*, 421  
compassion for all beings, 52  
could women folk attain  
Ariyaship, 271  
country of Malla, 95  
*craving (tanha)*, 4  
**D**  
Dakkhin Vibanga Sutta, 91  
Deathless *Nibbana*, 2  
*Desana Nana*,  
Descent at the gate of Sankassa  
town by triple stairways, 355  
*Dibbacakkhu Abhinna*, 53  
Disapamokkha, 89  
Discourse on end of Strife, 226

Discourse on *Latukika*  
*Jataka*, 233  
*Duddubha Jataka*, 232  
*Dukkhapatipadakhippabhinna*, 12  
dark-blue female fly, 235  
demonstration of the Twin  
Miracle in the sky, 51  
descents of the Khattiya  
lineage, 80  
destroy all forms of pride,  
vanity, 63  
discourse of Cula  
Rahulovada, 65  
discourse on the practice of  
meditation, 110  
discourses in harmony with the  
inclinations of the Audience,  
265  
display of the Twin Miracle, 49  
**E**  
Eight Vassa kept up at the town  
of Susumaragira, 395  
Eruption of a great dispute  
amongst the Sangha, 456  
Erythirina Indica tree, 52  
*Etadagga*, 47  
*Etha Bhikkave*, 7  
Expounding of *Maha Saccaka*  
*Sutta*, 301

Expounding of *Maha Samaya Sutta*, 250

Expounding of Parosahassa

Expounding of Saraputta Sutta, 362

eight thoughts of a great being (*Mahapurisa vitakka*), 110

emancipating eighty four thousand sentient beings on each day, 198

eminence in emancipation, 298

eminence in insight, 298

energetic effort at meditation (*padhana*), 64

eminence in practice, 298

enjoy the five sensual pleasures with ease and comfort, 100

essential meaning of the Four Noble Truths, 3

exhaustive exposition of his own attributes, 57

exposition of the golden coloured body, 294

extinguish all suffering, 63

## F

Failure and Success of one who administers *Paritta*, 201

Failure and success of one who listens to *Paritta* recitation, 202

Five Elements of effort (*Padhaniyanga*), 404

Five Eyes, 363

Five kinds of dust, 368

Five verses of appreciation for donation of the Monastery, 143

Foul accusation in front of four kinds of Audience, 371

Founding of Vesali, 187

Four accomplishments of a listener, 201

Four accomplishments of a reciter, 199

Four causes of lamentation, 366

Fourth *Rupavacara* (*kiriya*) Jhana, 258

faculties are fully clear and serene, 3

fearful and offensive sense-objects are there that are harmful to a noble bhikkhu, 363

female devotee Nandamata, 70

female skylark, 234

figuratively speaking, Path and Fruition are counted as suffering, 281

five Auspicious Ceremonial rites and rituals, 83

five great investigations, 56

five kinds of dangers, 364

flowers of the Indian coral tree, 52

four 'Immensities', 55

four golden pots, namely, Sangha, Ela, Uppla, Pundharika, 85

four sublime abodes, 418

fully developed, intensive rapture or zest suffusing the whole body and mind (pharana piti), 121

Ghositarama, 450

Glories and attributes of Buddhas, 57

Great Assembly (Mahasamaya), 247

gave birth to Prince Nanda, 83

good families of Anga and Magadha, 46

great elected rulers in unbroken succession from the beginning of the world cycles, 80

## H

*Hatthalavaka*, 70

he created a Buddha after his own image, 352

heavenly musicians (*Gandhabba*), 36

## I

*Iddhividha abhinna*, 46

*Indriyasavara sila*, 17

Infinite Attributes of the Buddha, 304

Initiation of Rahula to novicehood, 85

Instructor (Pabajjhacariya), 87

*iddhi visaya*, 58

in praise of the glorious personality of the Buddha, 76

infinitesimal fraction of time intervals, 59

inheritance of seven supramundane treasures of the Ariyas, 86

interest amounting to thrilling point (ubbega piti), 121

## J

Janapada Kalyani, 146

Jatzka, 360

Jetavana monastery, 129



## K

- Kala Buddha Rakkhita  
Mahathera, 305
- Kaludayi, a birth-mate (of the  
Tathagata), 19
- Kandamba White Mango  
Tree, 322
- Katha vahana, 400
- King Bimbisara, 127
- King Bimbisara, 162
- King Candhapajjota, 398
- King Devanapiyatissa, 430
- King Kosala's Doctrine of  
peace, 468
- King of Baranasi, 187
- King of Kosambi, 437
- King Ugdena, 396, 397
- King Suddhodana attained  
Arahatship, 267
- Kimnara*s, 36
- Kokanda, 398
- Kolita*, the future Chief Disciple, 2
- Kukkudharama, 450
- Kunala Jataka*; Five, 244
- Kuru country, 450
- Kusala Dhamma, 357
- Kutagara monastery, 279

*katha*, 63

knowledge of the past  
existences, *pubbhenivasa*  
*abhinna*, 74

## L

- Law of good action, 357
- Licchavi after their soft,  
delicate, thin skin, 188
- Licchavi kings, 190
- Licchavi princes, 283
- List of rains-retreat observed by  
the Buddha, 105
- Loka Vivarana Patihariya*, 333
- life of a Universal Monarch, 243
- like a mighty lion king roaring, 58
- like the full moon amidst stars  
and planets, 78
- lived like animals in the hollow  
of Kola trees, 224

## M

- Magandhi's evil acts, 455
- Maha Karuna Samapatti*, 283
- Maha Mandhala*, 308
- Maha Moggallana's  
unwholesome life of the  
past, 414
- Maha Saccaka Sutta*, 301
- Maha Samata, 377

- Maha Samaya Sutta*, 267  
Mahadhmmapala Jataka, 89  
*Mahakiriya Nanasampyutta Adhitthan javand*, 258  
Mahanama, 96  
Mahapajapati gotami's requests for ordination of women, 269  
Mahasamaya Sutta was held in high esteem by Devas and Brahmas, 262  
Mahasamaya Sutta, 262  
*Mahavira*, 23  
Mahiyangana *cetiya*, 430  
*Mandarava* flowers, 52  
*Mangala Sutta*, 65  
*Mangala, Avaha*, 83  
*Mangala, Chattussapana*, 83  
*Mangala, Gharappavesana*, 83  
*Mangala, Kesavissajjana*, 83  
*Mangala, Pattabandha*, 83  
Mara Dusi's heinous acts, 416  
Mara entered the belly of the Venerable Moggallana, 412  
Miraculous display of iridescence in six colours, 335  
Most Exalted Chief of the Munis, 43  
Mount Gijjakutta in Rajagaha, 53  
made obeisance to him to her heart's content, 82  
maintained her loyalty and dignity now, 82  
*majjhima mandala*, 208  
market-town of Kammasadamma, 450  
mastery over the mind, (*cittissariya*), 59  
may you give me my heirloom, 85  
momentary joy, (*khanika piti*), 121  
moral precepts in fulfilment of the noble duties required of a Universal Monarch, 95  
my ancestors are the Buddhas, 80  
my height is sixteen hand-lengths, 70  
my permanent bhikkhu attendant, 69  
*N*  
Nacked ascetic Jambuka, 173  
*Nagas, Garudas, and Kimmaras*, 52  
*Natkammavaca*, 133  
Nibaddha Dana, 446

Nigrodha ī ark, 49  
*navakamma*, 133  
not proper places whence to  
receive alms, 81  
novice, samanera, 87  
**O**  
Obeisance made by the royal  
father, 51  
*Odata kasina*, 50  
One's own mallee brings about  
one's own ruin, 441  
Ordination of the Six Princes  
and Upali, the barber, 96  
*Ovada Patimikkha*, 14  
*Ovada Patimokkha*, 13  
*Ovada Patimokkha*, 15  
*Ovada Patimokkha*, 17  
occasion for a great Dhamma  
Exposition, 59  
*odata kasina*, 333  
one thousand hermits headed by  
Aggidatta, former court-  
Brahmin of King Kosala, 166  
ordination through faith  
(saddhapabbajita), 135  
other Myanma recordings of  
rains-residences, 108

**P**  
*Paccayasammissita Sila*, 17  
*Pacekabodhisattas*, 11  
Pada ceti, 451  
*Paduma lilies*, 52  
*Parajjhasaya sutta nikkhepa*,  
257  
*Paramattha Metta Parami*, 62  
*Parami Dana*, 60  
*Parami Dana-paramattha*, 60  
*Parami Danaupa*, 60  
*Parami Nekkhamma-*  
*paramattha*, 61  
*Parami Paramattha Khanti*, 62  
*Parami Paramattha Panna*, 61  
*Parami Paramattha Viriya*, 61  
*Parami Sila-paramattha*, 61  
*Parami sacca Paramattha*, 6?  
*Paranimmita Vasavatti*, 413  
*Paritta*, 199  
Parittas that possess unique  
power, 203  
*Patimokkhasanvara sila*, 17  
Patthama Bodhi, 17  
Pavarikambavana, 450  
*Payoga Sampatti*, 203  
*Payoga vippatti*, 202

Perfections (*parami*), 55  
Permission given for ordination  
of women, 268  
*Phandana Jataka*, 227  
Points of special interest worthy  
of note, 280  
Power of Buddhaisatta's  
*Metta*, 379  
Preaching of Sariputta Sutta,  
357  
Prince Ananda, 96  
Prince Anuruddha, 96  
Prince Bhaddiya, 96  
Prince Bhagu, 96  
Prince Bodhi took Refuge in the  
three Gems, 403  
Prince Bodhi's object of laying  
the white carpet, 401  
Prince Devadattha, 96  
Prince Dighavu honoured his  
father's words, 471  
Prince Dighavu regains his  
father's kingdom, 474  
Prince Dighavu served as an  
Elephant keeper, 470  
Prince Dighavu's doctrine of  
peace, 473  
Prince Jeta, 130  
Prince Kimila, 96

Prince Nanda, 83  
Princess Sumana, 140  
Promoter of well-being of all  
beings, 52  
Propounding of Maha Paduma  
Jataka, 373  
Protector of interests of all  
beings, 52  
Pucchavasika sutta nikkhepa,  
257  
*paccatavedaniya*, 421  
past of the stage of granting  
favors, 88  
penetrative knowledge, 6  
pervaded through with five  
grades of joyful  
satisfaction, 121  
practice of severe austerities,  
*dukkaracariya*, 69  
preaching *Ovada*  
*Patimokkha*, 66  
prince Uda Culabhaya, 430  
promoting faith and devotion, 47

## Q

Quails brought to destruction  
through dissension, 241

## R

*Ratana Sutta*, 197

Residence at Mt. makula during  
the sixth lent, 307

Richman Ghosaka of  
Kosambi, 435

*Rukkha Dhamma Jataka*, 237

*Rupa-vacara Kiriya*, 333

*Rupavacara Brahma* worlds, 52

reciting the *Paritta* all over  
Vesali, 197

remained mindful with full  
comprehension, 56

remove various kinds of grief,  
sorrow, 63

repulsiveness of material food  
(*Ahare patikula*), 419

reveal in full the life story of a  
Buddhisatta, 53

ripe in wisdom and capable of  
protecting herself, 82

## S

*Sacca Magga*, 4

*Sacca Nirodha*, 4

*Sacca Paramattha Adhitthana  
Parami*, 62

*Sacca Samudaya*, 4

Saccaka addressed the  
Tathagata, 284

Saccaka came to realize, 286

Saccaka had a presage, 295

Saccaka had discovered his  
grave mistake, 288

Saccaka presented his view, 285

Saccaka remained completely  
silent, 288

Saccaka saw Sakka under the  
guise of an ogre, 289

Saccaka started questioning,  
284

Saccaka went into Manavana  
forest, 284

Sacrifices(*caga*), 55

Sakka descended to solve the  
problem, 372

Sakka's erroneous idea, 338

Sakyan Princes received  
ordination, 95

Sakyans of Koliya, 223

Samaneri Cira's Address, 327

*Sammaparibbajaniya Sutta*, 260

*Sammaparibbajaniya Sutta*, 267

*Sammasana* practice, 11

*Sammasanacara*, 9

*Sammasanmbodhisattas*, 11

*Sammukkamsika Dhamma  
Desana*, 126

*Sanjaya and his disciples*, 6

- Sanjikaputta, 399, 407, 408  
Sankha, 210  
*Sannipata*, 12  
Santusita, 354  
*Savaka Parami Nana*, 11  
*Savaka Parami Nama*, 9  
Sectarian challengers utterly destroyed, 325  
Sermon of *Dhammacakka*, 65  
Sixteen forms of doubt  
*vicikiccha*, 54  
Story of Sumana, Flower seller of Rajagaha, 159  
*Sukhatipadadandabhinna*, 11  
*Sukhatipadadandhabhinna*, 12  
*Sukhatipadakhippabhinna*, 12  
Sundari, 385  
Susima, 210  
*sankusamahata*, 421  
*sarirajapana*, 445  
seclusion (*sappaya senasana*), 17  
sectarian teachers, 125  
seizing his pair of insteps with both hands and all her strength, 82  
seven precious Treasures, 95  
shower of lotus-leaf rain,  
*pokkharavassa*, 73  
sixteen states of knowledge, 9  
sixty verses of invitation, 45  
slight sense of interest  
(*khuddaka piti*), 121  
step-mother Mahapajapati Gotami, 83  
strive for the purity of your bodily action, of verbal action, of mental action, 118  
strive hard for the attainment of Nibbana, 71  
sufficing condition (*upanissaya paccaya*), 110  
*supatitthita lakkhana*, 75  
supernatural power of unveiling the world (*lokavivarana Abhinna*), 53  
supernatural powers (*Vijjadhara*), 36  
supernormal power derived from the Fourth Jhana, 50  
T  
Takkasila, 210  
Tavatimsa Deva realm, 52  
Ten kinds of person who should not be worshipped, 136  
Ten Stanzas of Exhortation, 476  
*Teparivatta dhamma desana*, 291

- The Buddha expounded the Ratana Sutta, 197
- The daughter of Ghamaka rich man, 443
- The female Chief Disciples, 70
- The first diaster, 191
- The four Avijahitathana (four sacred places), 357
- The fundamental principle of a administering *Paritta* recitation, 199
- The main beneficial results, 300
- The original cause of wicked Cincamana's accusation, 384
- The Sectarrians' Schemes and Pretences, 320
- The Six Sectatian Teachers, 312
- The Stroy of Prince Bodhi, 396
- The second disaster, 191
- The story of richman's son Uggasena, 214
- The story of Wandering Assetic Saccaka, 279
- The Twin Miracle of fire-water, 50
- The ten Contemplations or reflections, 366
- The third disaster, 192
- The Venerable Ananda, 111
- The Venerable Assaji, 280
- The Venerable Devadatta, 111
- The Venerable Sariputta preached Abhidhamma to Five hundred Bhikkhus, 353
- The Venerable Sariputta's Feat of Intellectual Power, 277
- The weak succumbed to the strong, 466
- Three occasions of the Buddha's teaching *Dhammabhisamaya*, 13
- Three types of individual worthy of veneration, 137
- Title of rich man of Kosambi, 446
- Tittira Jataka*, 135-
- Turita carika*, 307
- Two forests with the name of Mahavana, 267
- Two forms of Patimokkha, 14
- Two kinds of Journey, 307
- Two kinds of Nana Samvasa, 462, 463
- Two kinds of Samana Samvasa, 462, 463
- Two qualities of Arahats, 249
- Two types of *cetanas*, 181
- teaching according to Buddha's free will, 257

- teaching according to occasion or prevailing circumstance, 257
- teaching according to the wish of the audience, 257
- teaching in the form of an answer to a particular question, 257
- ten 'Narasiha' stanzas, 76
- ten kinds of *caga*, 55
- ten *paramis* extended into thirty categories, 55
- ten thousand Universes trembled, 56
- the Ambalattika Rahulovada Sutta, 111
- the *Arahatta-maggaphala*, 2
- the *Avici* plane, 58
- the abstract term (*nippriyaya*), 281
- the attributes of Sariputta, 360
- the Candakinnari Jataka, 81
- the Crown of the three worlds, 60
- the *cintamani* ruby capable of fulfilling every wish, 66
- the city of Vesali, 190
- the congregation of powerful devas at Vesali, 196
- the Eight Special Rules, Garudhamma, 272
- the Elixir of Deathlessness, 63
- the Final End like a torch extinguished, 71
- the Four Great Exertions (*sammappadhana*), 59
- the famine disaster, 192
- the figurative term (*pariyaya*), 281
- the General of the Dhamma, 352
- the glorious attributes of the Tathagata, 47
- the glory and grace of a Universal Monarch, 88
- the golden stairway on the right hand side, 355
- the grace and splendour of the physical appearance of the Tathagata, 90
- the havoc caused by the evil spirits, 192
- the intense enthusiasm and devotional faith, 54
- the might and glory of Buddhas, 50
- the miracle of unveiling of the Universe, 333
- the noble lay devotee Khujjutara, 70



the outbreak of the epidemic, 192

the Path and Fruition, 6

the pair of Chief Disciples, 7

the power of wielding influence upon elephants,

the practising ground for development of knowledge of impermanence, 9

the preceptor (*Uppajjhaya*), 87

the province of a Buddha, 54

the question of beatitude, *Mangala*, 65

the real nature of a Self-Enlightened Buddha, 50

the recitation and preaching of Ratana Sutta in Vesali, 193

the ruby stairway in the middle, 356

the Sakyan family members, 49

the sacred places termed Avijahitathana, 357

the silver stairway on the left-hand side, 356

the story of Canda Kinnari, 83

the story of Dighavu, 464

the story of Kappata, 153

the successful dedication of the Monastery, 145

the Truth of Suffering (*Dukkha Sacca*), 4

the three disasters, 192

the three trainings, 17

the unpleasantness of the physical body (*asubha*), 419

the virtues and consistency of Princess Yasodaya's love, 82

the warmth of affectionate love of a father, 85

the wealthy man Anathapindika, 119

the work and business of human affairs, 100

three eminent qualities, 297

three kinds of *cariya*, 55

three salient characteristics of conditioned phenomena, 71

trainees (*sekkha*), 68

## U

Udena, 437

Uggssena became an acrobatic artist, 217

Ukkhepaniya Kamma, 463

Upali, the barber, 103

*Upatissa and Kolita*, 1

*Upatissa*, the future Chief Disciple, 2

*Upekkha Paramattha  
Parami*, 62

*Uposatha*, 15

unpleasant, undelightfulness,  
unsatisfactory nature of the  
world (*Anabhirati*), 419

unsatisfactoriness and  
insubstantiality, 9

unsubstantiality and  
impermanent nature of the  
conditioned phenomena  
(*anicca*), 419

## V

*Vajji* country, 189

Vasuladatta, 398

*Vattaka Jataka*, 240

*Veluvana* Monastery, 5

Venerable Anuruddha, 109

Venerable *Assaji*, 2

Venerable Maha Moggallana  
and Pindola, 316

Venerable *Maha Moggallana's*  
Attainment of Arahatsip, 8

Venerable Sariputa, 109

Venerable *Sariputta's*  
Attainment of Arahatsip, 8

Venerables Bhagu and  
Kimila, 111

Victor of the five Maras, 52

Victory over Wandering Ascetic  
Saccaka, 275

*Vipassana Bhumi*, 9

*Vivaha*, 121

vain and devoid of the essence  
of permanence, genuine  
happiness and substance, 71

*vedana kamatthana*, 9

veluvana monastery, 104

virtues through practice  
(*cariya*), 55

*visabhaga Puggala*, 15

## W

War between the Sakyans of  
Kapilavatthu, 223

Wealthy man Nakulapitu & wife  
attained Sotapatti, 395

What is meant by one Dhamma,  
278

wanderer *Diganakha*, 9

wandering ascetics, *Sanjaya*, 1

water of this Rohini stream is the  
actual cause of it, 226

wealthy man Nakulapitu, 395

what could that illumination be,

what is the actual cause of your  
strife, 226

what is the value of water of this  
Rohini stream, 226

wife Nakulamatum, 395

**Y**

*Ye dhamma hetuppabbhava*, 5

Young woman Magandhi  
harboured resentment, 453